

1962

PONTIAC

**HYDRA-MATIC
SHOP MANUAL**

PONTIAC MOTOR DIVISION

1962 HYDRA-MATIC MANUAL

This manual contains complete information for properly servicing both Roto Hydra-Matic and Super Hydra-Matic transmissions used in 1962 Pontiac cars.

Information on the Roto Hydra-Matic transmission is located in the forepart of the manual and that covering the Super Hydra-Matic is in the rear of the manual.

Arrangement of material is similar for both transmissions with appropriate table of contents at the front and alphabetical index at the rear of each transmission section.

PONTIAC MOTOR DIVISION
GENERAL MOTORS CORPORATION
PONTIAC 11, MICHIGAN

ROTO HYDRA-MATIC TRANSMISSION

This part of the 1962 Hydra-Matic Shop Manual describes the fundamental principles of the Roto Hydra-Matic transmission and contains complete instructions for operating and servicing the unit.

A basic understanding of the principles of operation and use of the diagnosis and testing guide in rear of manual will aid the service man in quickly determining the cause of any malfunction.

The step by step procedures in the manual are appropriately illustrated to assist the service craftsman in doing a quality job.

Adjustments and certain minor services are performed with the transmission in the car; major repairs or reconditioning require removal of the transmission from the car.

The Titles in Table of Contents on the right hand side of this page register with black tabs at the beginning of each section. An Alphabetical Index at the rear of manual should be used to locate specific information on servicing the unit.

Table of Contents

| TITLE | PAGE |
|---|------|
| DESCRIPTION AND OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS | 3 |
| FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES | 6 |
| PERIODIC SERVICE RECOMMENDATIONS | 38 |
| ADJUSTMENTS WITH TRANSMISSION IN CAR | 39 |
| MINOR SERVICE AND REPAIRS | 41 |
| REMOVE TRANSMISSION | 46 |
| REMOVE UNITS FROM CASE | 47 |
| DISASSEMBLY, INSPECTION AND ASSEMBLY OF UNITS | 56 |
| INSTALL UNITS INTO CASE | 81 |
| INSTALL TRANSMISSION | 90 |
| TESTING AND DIAGNOSIS | 91 |
| SPECIFICATIONS | 96 |
| SPECIAL TOOLS | 99 |
| INDEX | 100 |

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

| SUBJECT | PAGE | SUBJECT | PAGE |
|--------------------------------|------|---------------|------|
| Operating the Roto Hydra-Matic | 3 | Serial Number | 5 |
| Hydra-Matic Drive Fluid | 4 | | |

ROTO HYDRA-MATIC DRIVE

The Roto Hydra-Matic drive consists of a fluid coupling, which replaces the conventional clutch, combined with a hydraulically controlled automatic transmission having three speeds forward and one reverse. Gear shifting is automatic and is controlled by the requirements of road conditions encountered and the wishes of the driver.

OPERATING THE ROTO HYDRA-MATIC

The Hydra-Matic drive is convenient to operate in that the driver need only select, by use of the control lever and indicator segment (Fig. 1), the speed range in which he wishes the car to operate. The speed ranges are clearly shown on the indicator segment, and are illuminated when the instrument panel lights are turned on. The speed ranges are designated as follows:

P—Parking and starting

N—Neutral and starting

▲DR (D on floor shift cars)—For all normal forward driving

DR▲ (S on floor shift cars)—For faster acceleration when driving in congested traffic and for engine braking in hilly terrain.

L—For controlled power

R—Reverse

TO START ENGINE

1. Place control lever in P or N position. Starter is inoperative in any other position.

2. Engine Cold—Depress accelerator pedal to floor once and release (this presets automatic choke and throttle).

Engine Warm—Hold accelerator pedal about half open.

3. Turn ignition key to right to engage starter, release as soon as engine starts.

NOTE: At temperatures below 0°F. it may be



Fig. 1 Indicator

necessary to hold the accelerator pedal down slightly while starting.

Do not pump the accelerator at any time. Avoid racing the engine during the warm-up period. Should the engine flood, hold the accelerator pedal to the floor forcibly while starting the engine.

COLD WEATHER

In cold weather (0° F. and colder) the engine must idle with the control lever in P (park) or N (neutral) position until engine and transmission are warmed up. This can more safely be done in the P (park) position as the transmission will then keep the car from rolling on a grade or incline. When engine is cold and running at fast idle, the car will creep when the control lever is moved to a driving position. A slight application of the foot brake or parking brake will hold the car until motion is desired.

OPERATING IN DR RANGE

DR range has two driving positions, each marked by an arrow. The control lever can be moved at will from one arrow position to the other when traveling at any car speed on dry roads where traction is good.

The left hand arrow position in DR range is provided for all normal forward driving; it reduces engine speed, provides better driving comfort and improves fuel economy. When driving in this range, extra performance can be obtained by fully depressing the accelerator pedal. This will cause the transmission to shift down into third stage. The car speed determines the amount the accelerator pedal must be depressed to cause this shift. At a speed of about 35 mph or less the accelerator pedal need only be partially depressed to cause the shift and at speeds

of 35 mph to 65 mph it is necessary to completely depress the pedal. The transmission will automatically return to fourth as car speed increases or the accelerator pedal is released. Refer to figure 140 for shift speeds.

The right hand arrow position in DR range is provided for improved performance at medium car speeds and is very useful when driving in congested traffic or in hilly terrain where engine braking is required. In this range the transmission is prevented from shifting into fourth (except at very high car speeds). It is also effective when ascending or descending long mountain grades.

When driving in either DR range at a car speed of less than 25 mph an extra burst of power can be obtained by completely depressing the accelerator pedal. This will cause the transmission to shift down to second stage. The transmission will automatically return to third or fourth, depending on the DR range being used, as the car speed increases or pedal is released.

Placing the selector lever in the right hand arrow position in DR range is also recommended when starting out with a hot engine after parking, or idling for an extended period, during extremely hot weather. Under these conditions the application of the overrun band in drive right will prevent the engine from stalling if there is excessive vapor in the fuel lines. After a short distance of operation, the control lever may be placed in drive left position if desired.

Acceleration in left hand DR range—The shift points from second to third and third to fourth (direct drive) will occur at progressively higher car speeds depending on the amount the accelerator pedal is depressed.

Caution Against Coasting in Neutral—Do not coast with the control lever in the N (neutral) position. It is unlawful in some states and sometimes is harmful to the transmission.

Stopping the Car—Leave the control lever in the driving position selected and release the accelerator pedal. The engine is then left "in gear" which helps to slow down the car. For further stopping effort apply the brakes in the conventional manner. **CAUTION:** When the driver leaves the car, with the engine running the control lever should always be in P (park) position. This precaution prevents movement of the car, should the accelerator pedal be accidentally depressed by a passenger and also will keep the car from rolling on a grade or incline.

OPERATING IN L RANGE

L (low) range prevents the transmission from shifting above first speed. L range is provided for pulling through deep sand or snow and ascending or descending steep grades where traffic signs call for placing the transmission in second or third.

The control lever can be moved from either DR position to L at any car speed. The shift into second will not occur at a car speed above approximately 45 mph.

CAUTION: Do not shift into L range on slippery roads as a skid may be induced.

REVERSE

To engage reverse, simply move the control lever to the R position. Moving lever between L and R while applying light accelerator pedal pressure permits rocking the car when required to get out of deep snow, mud or sand. Avoid engaging reverse at speeds above 5 mph.

PARKING

For additional safety when car is parked leave the selector lever in the P (park) position. Mechanical engagement of parts within the transmission will then keep the car from rolling. The selector lever must be raised to move it into or out of the P (park) position.

TOWING

A car equipped with Roto Hydra-Matic can be towed at speeds up to 30 miles per hour for distances up to 50 miles, if it is known there is nothing wrong with the transmission. When towing at speeds above 30 miles per hour, disconnect propeller shaft. Check oil level after towing and add fluid if required to bring to proper level.

PUSHING

Do not attempt to start the engine by pushing the car. The pump in the transmission is driven by the input shaft which does not turn when the engine is not running. Therefore, with no fluid pressure to operate the clutches, the transmission will not transmit power to the engine.

HYDRA-MATIC DRIVE FLUID

It is important to use only Automatic Transmission Fluid (Type A) identified by Armour Institute Qualification Number "AQ-ATF...". Fluids carrying

this identification followed by the letter "A" may also be used. This is an all-season fluid, ideal for year-round operation. No special additives to these fluids are required or recommended. **NOTE:** In cases of emergency, when the specified fluid is not available, any good quality 20 W engine oil will operate for a temporary period. When such oil is used, however, it should be removed as soon as possible and the transmission refilled with the recommended fluid.

Instructions for checking fluid level and for draining and refilling transmission are given on page 41.

SERIAL NUMBER

The serial number plate on Hydra-Matics used in Catalina and Grand Prix models is located on the left side of the transmission just ahead of the outer shift lever (Fig. 2). The serial number begins with the designation P-62, PE-62, PA-62 or PB-62. The PE-62 is used with the economy engine and the PA-62 is used with the 425A engine, tri-carbs, and the special police engine. Cars with 4-barrel carburetors

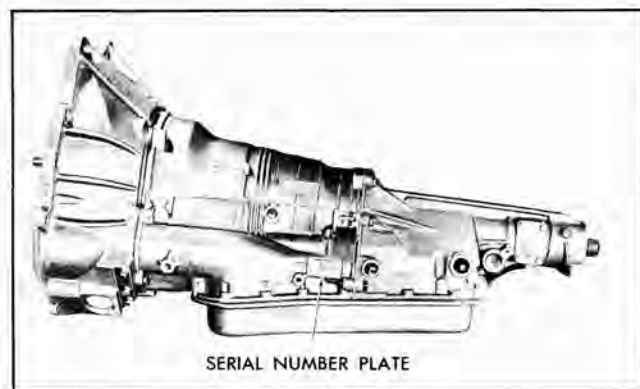


Fig. 2 Serial Number Plate

have the PB-62 transmission. All others use the P-61 transmission.

It is very important that any communication concerning Hydra-Matics always contains the transmission serial number and that all transmission parts returned to Pontiac Motor Division always be tagged with the transmission serial number.

FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES OF THE ROTO HYDRA-MATIC TRANSMISSION

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

| SUBJECT | PAGE | SUBJECT | PAGE |
|--|------|--------------------------------------|------|
| Planetary Gear Train | 6 | Power-Flow in Roto Hydra-Matic | 11 |
| Fluid Coupling and Torque Multiplier | 7 | Operation of Pump | 16 |
| Sprag Clutch | 8 | Governor | 18 |
| Roto Hydra-Matic Components | 9 | Accumulator | 19 |
| | | Control Valves | 21 |

PURPOSE OF A TRANSMISSION

The purpose of a transmission is to provide suitable gear ratios between the engine and rear wheels for all driving conditions. Gear ratios are obtained through planetary gears in the Hydra-Matic transmission.

PLANETARY GEAR TRAIN

A planetary gear train (Fig. 3) consists of three members:

1. A center or "sun" gear.
2. A planet carrier with three or four planet pinion gears.
3. An internal gear.

The center or "sun" gear is surrounded by and meshes with the planet pinion gears, which rotate freely on pins attached to a common bracket called the "planet carrier." A ring with teeth machined on the inside circumference surrounds the assembly and meshes with the planet pinion gears. This is called the "internal" gear, because of its internal teeth.

ADVANTAGES OF A PLANETARY GEAR TRAIN

1. A planetary gear train is compact and sturdy

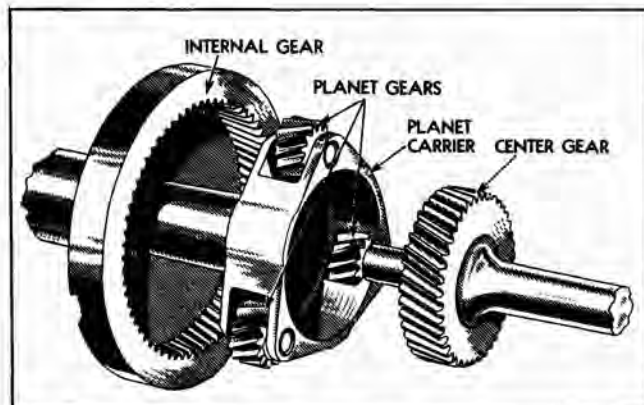


Fig. 3 Planetary Gear Train

because the load is distributed over several gears instead of only two as in the sliding gear type of gear train. Planetary gears are smaller and occupy less space, they can transmit more tooth load because there is more tooth area in contact at all times.

2. Planetary gears are always completely in mesh, thus there is no possibility of tooth damage due to gear clash or partial engagement.

3. The common axis for all members of the planetary train makes the unit more compact and facilitates its use as a coupling when any two of its members are locked together.

OPERATION OF A PLANETARY GEAR TRAIN

1. A planetary gear train can be used to increase power and decrease speed in either of two ways.

- a. One method of obtaining speed reduction (power multiplication) is to hold the internal gear stationary while power is applied to the center gear (Fig. 4). As the center gear turns, the planet pinion gears, which are in mesh with it, rotate on their respective pins. Since they are also in mesh with the stationary internal gear, they must "rotate around" inside the internal gear, carrying the planet carrier with them in the same direction of rotation as the center gear. The planet carrier then rotates at a speed less than that of the center gear, and the planetary gear train functions as a power-increasing, speed-reducing unit.

- b. The same result can be obtained by holding the center gear stationary and applying power to the internal gear. In this case, rotation of the internal gear causes the planet pinion gears to rotate on their respective pins and at the same time "rotate around" the center gear, thus rotating the planet carrier at a speed less than that of the internal gear. The gear train then functions as a power-increasing, speed-reducing unit.

2. A planetary gear train can be used to reverse

direction of rotation when the planet carrier is held stationary. In this instance, if power is applied to the center gear, the planet pinion gears rotate on their respective pins; but since the carrier is stationary, they act merely as idlers, transmitting power to the internal gear and causing it to rotate in the opposite direction.

In all of the examples described, one member has been held stationary, the power applied to another member, and taken off the third member.

3. A planetary gear train can be used as a coupling for direct mechanical drive when any two members are locked together.

Under this condition movement can not take place between the gears and the entire gear train will rotate as a unit.

4. When none of the members are held or locked together the planetary gear train will not transmit power; therefore it is in neutral.

FLUID COUPLING AND TORQUE MULTIPLIER

A fluid coupling is a hydraulic clutch used to transmit engine torque to the transmission. The use of the fluid coupling eliminates the need for a manual clutch and also provides a cushioning effect of the gear changes between the engine and the transmission.

The fluid coupling and torque multiplier consists of three members (Fig. 5) located within an oil filled housing. The drive and driven members are shaped like halves of a split torus, having a series of radially arranged vanes within them. The torque multiplier

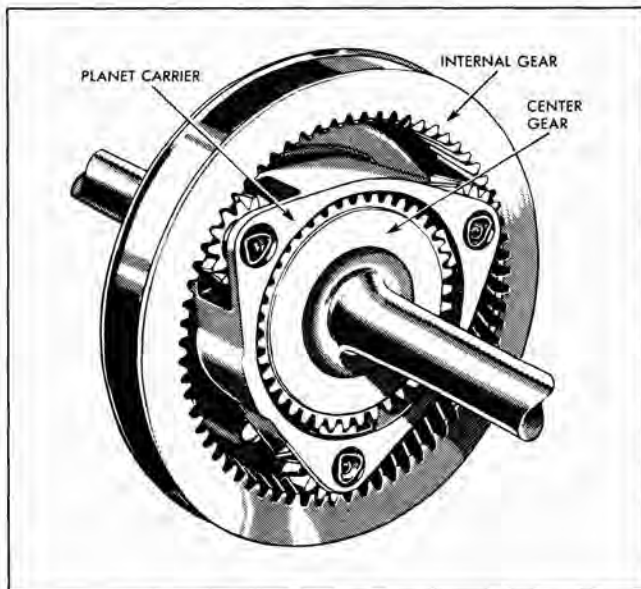


Fig. 4 Planetary Gears

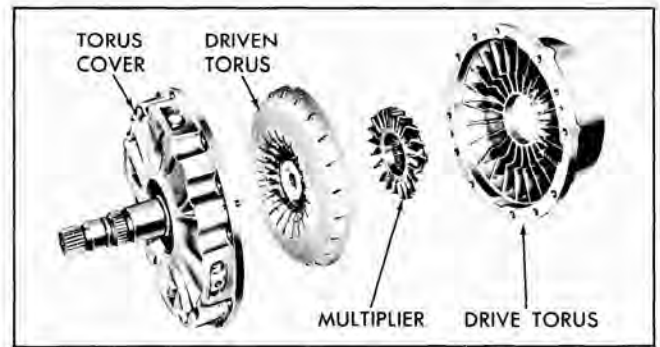


Fig. 5 Torus and Multiplier

consists of a series of curved blades mounted radially on a hub. The torque multiplier is located between the drive and driven coupling members.

The drive coupling member is connected to and driven by the engine, the driven coupling member is connected to the main shaft and rear unit sun gear, the torque multiplier is connected to the carrier shaft and output shaft.

OPERATION

STAGE 1—TORQUE MULTIPLICATION

- Step 1. The engine turns the coupling drive member thus causing the drive member to force the oil against the vanes of the driven member, forcing the driven member to turn (Fig. 6).
- Step 2. After the oil has acted on the driven member the oil is forced to the torque multiplier (Fig. 7).
- Step 3. The oil flow rushing out of the curved blades of the torque multiplier is then directed back to the drive member in such a way as to impart an additional driving force to the back side of the drive member

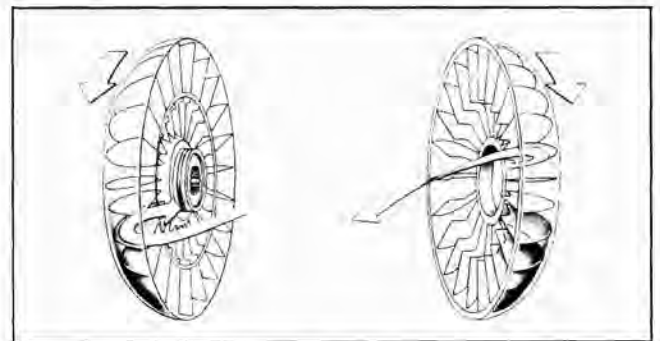


Fig. 6 Torus Operation—Step 1

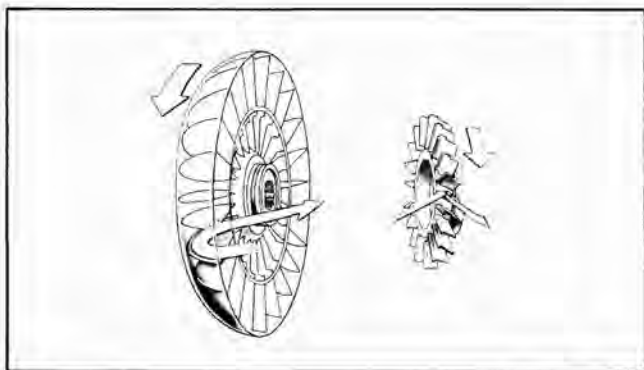


Fig. 7 Torus Operation—Step 2

vanes (Fig. 8). This additional driving force plus the energy added to the flowing oil from engine power, allows an even greater force of oil to be directed against the vanes of the driven member.

This causes the torque on the driven member to be multiplied.

STAGE 2—FLUID COUPLING

As the car accelerates, the difference in speed between the three components of the coupling decreases. As this happens, the flow of oil through the multiplier becomes nearly straight so that the effect of it becomes negligible. The over all ratio then gradually changes to 2.93:1 and the entire torus assembly becomes a simple fluid coupling.

In third stage the coupling is emptied and not used. Drive through the transmission is pure mechanical drive.

In fourth stage all three members of the fluid coupling are turning at approximately the same speed, therefore the torque multiplier is no longer effective. Because of the over all transmission design the coupling is required to carry only 40% of the engine torque.

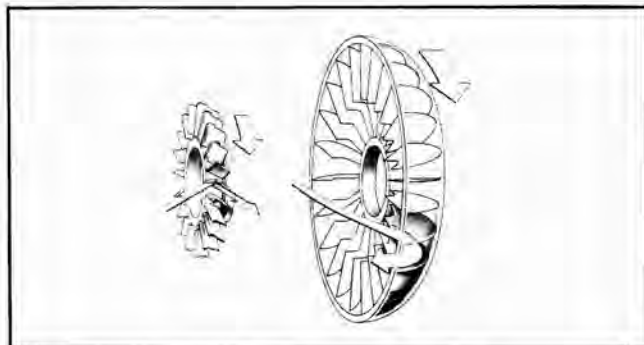


Fig. 8 Torus Operation—Step 3

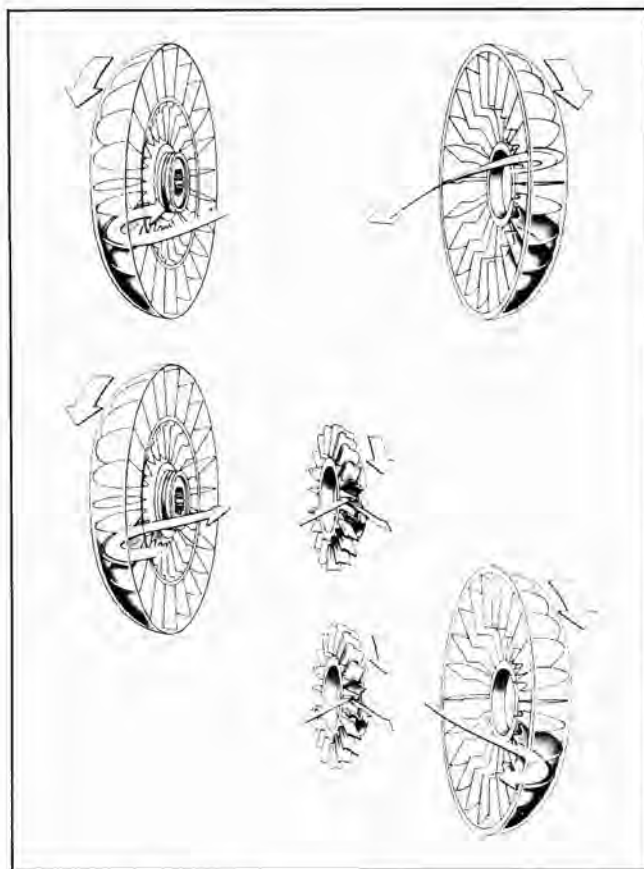


Fig. 9 Torus Operation—Combined Steps

During reverse operation the coupling and torque multiplier is again capable of increasing torque output from the engine by 1.3.

SPRAG CLUTCH AND ROLLER CLUTCH

A one way clutch allows rotation of a unit in one direction and locks the unit from rotating in the opposite direction. Sprag clutches are used in the Hydra-Matic to lock one member of each planetary gear set for reduction. In direct drive the sprag clutches allow free rotation.

Two types are used in 1962 production—the conventional sprag clutch and a new roller clutch.

A sprag clutch is a device having irregular members wedged between two concentric members and consists of three parts, the inner race, the sprag assembly, and the outer race (Fig. 11). The inner race is connected to the part which is to be held for reduction, or allowed to rotate for direct drive. The outer race is fastened to the transmission case and is stationary.

When torque is applied to the inner race in a counterclockwise direction as indicated by the dotted arrows, the sprags will be wedged between the inner and outer races. This wedging action, shown by the dotted sprags, locks the inner race from turning.

When torque is applied to the inner race in a clockwise direction as indicated by the solid arrows, the sprags will fall free. When the sprags fall free as indicated by the solid sprags, the inner race is allowed to rotate freely in a clockwise direction.

The roller clutch operates in a similar manner except that attempted counter-clockwise rotation of the inner race wedges the cylindrical rollers between the circular inner race and the ramps on the outer race. Clockwise rotation of the inner race will then cause the rollers to return to the lower part of the outer race ramp and thus provide free clockwise rotation.

ROTO HYDRA-MATIC COMPONENTS

It is possible to obtain only two forward speeds, reduction and direct, from one planetary gear train or unit when applying power at the same source (for

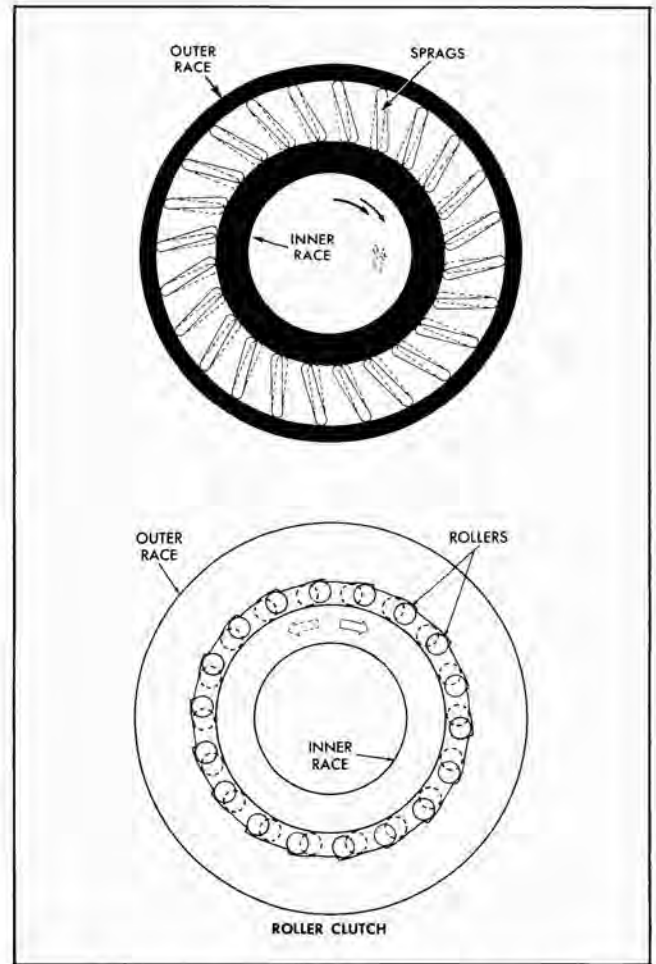


Fig. 11 Sprag Clutch and Roller Clutch

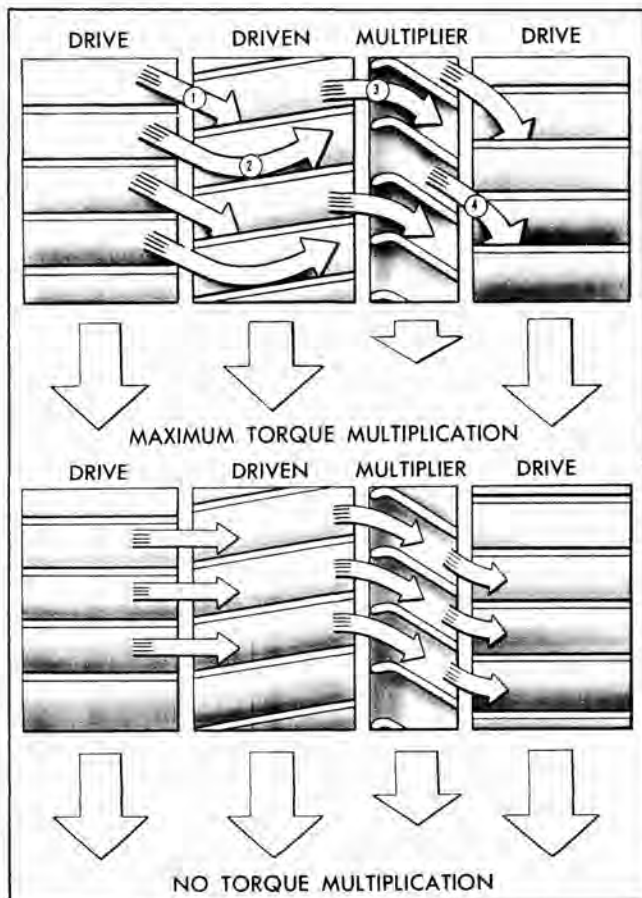


Fig. 10 Oil Flow Through Torus Members and Multiplier

example, the "sun" or center gear). As a greater variation of speed ratios is required to satisfactorily operate a vehicle, the Hydra-Matic contains two planetary gear trains and a torque multiplier arranged to provide four stages forward and one reverse.

Direct drive or reduction in each of the units is obtained hydraulically by controlling the front clutch and the fluid coupling as will be explained in the power flow section.

The overrun band, neutral clutch, and reverse cone clutch are also applied, when necessary, by hydraulic pressure.

The hydraulic pressure is maintained by a pump which is driven by the input shaft whenever the engine operates.

Oil pressure is directed to the proper places in the transmission by means of a control valve assembly. When the driver places the selector lever in the desired range, the control valve automatically directs oil to the proper places in the transmission.

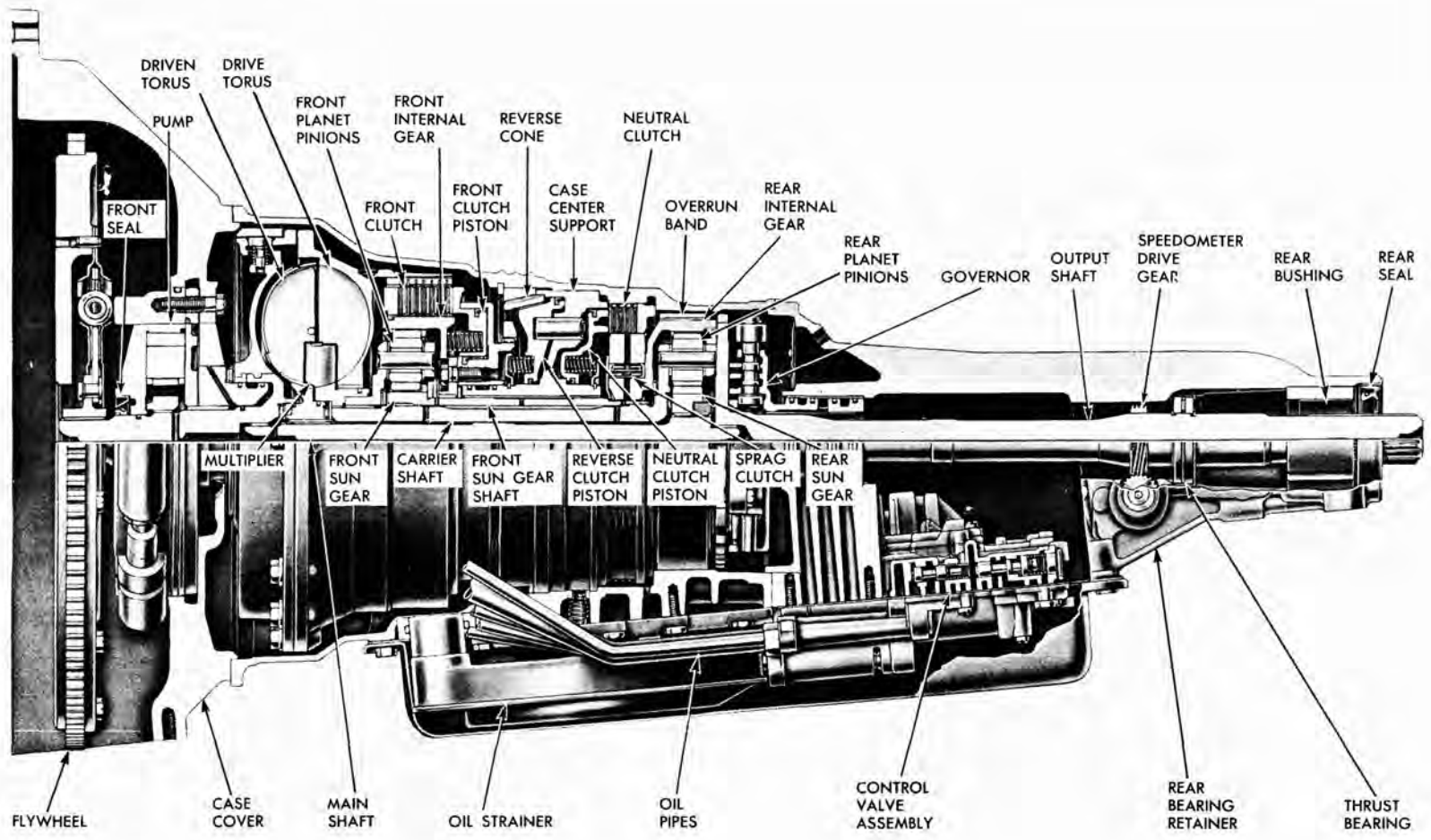


Fig. 12 Cross-Section of Roto Hydra-Matic Transmission

POWER FLOW IN HYDRA-MATIC TRANSMISSION

The power flow (parts that are rotating) for each transmission stage is indicated by arrows on illustrations 13 through 17.

The front sun gear shaft, the rear planet carrier shaft, and the main shaft are all concentric. In other words, the main shaft operates inside the rear planet carrier shaft which in turn operates inside the hollow front sun gear shaft.

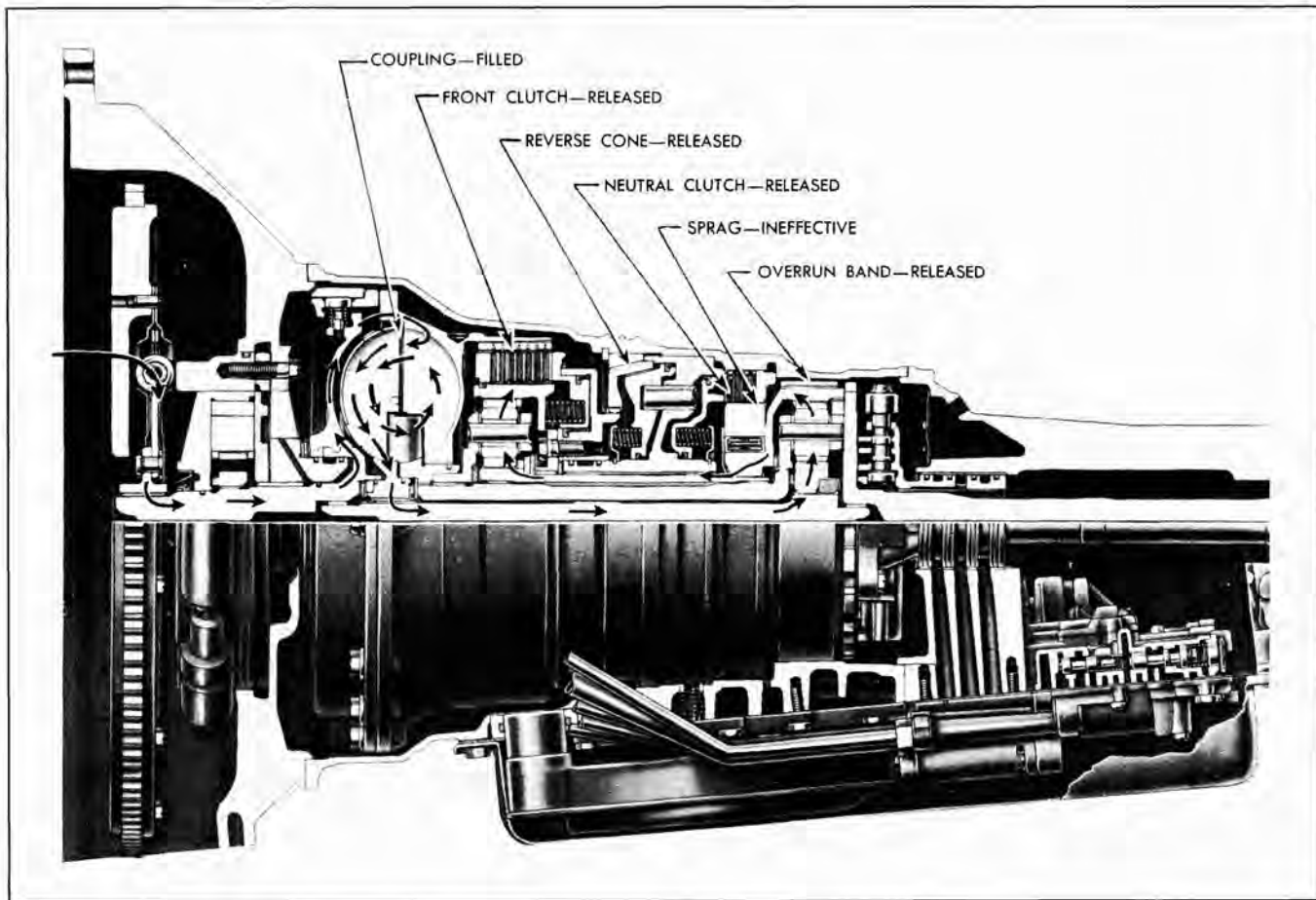


Fig. 13 Neutral—Engine Running

COUPLING —FILLED
FRONT CLUTCH —RELEASED

REVERSE CONE —RELEASED
NEUTRAL CLUTCH—RELEASED

OVERRUN BAND—RELEASED
SPRAG —INEFFECTIVE

Power from the engine (in a clockwise direction) is mechanically transmitted through the flywheel, damper assembly and torus cover to the drive torus member. The drive member directs the oil against the driven member causing it to turn the main shaft and rear unit sun gear clockwise.

In neutral the neutral clutch is released thus preventing the sprag assembly from being effective in holding the rear unit internal gear against turning counterclockwise. Therefore, as the rear unit sun gear turns clockwise, the rear unit pinions turn counter-

clockwise driving the rear internal gear counterclockwise.

The front unit sun gear is mechanically connected to the rear internal gear and is also turning counterclockwise; this causes the front unit pinions to rotate clockwise on their pins. The clockwise motion of the front unit pinions drives the front internal gear clockwise.

Because both the rear unit internal gear and the front unit internal gear are spinning freely, there is no transfer of torque from the front or rear units to the carriers or output shaft.

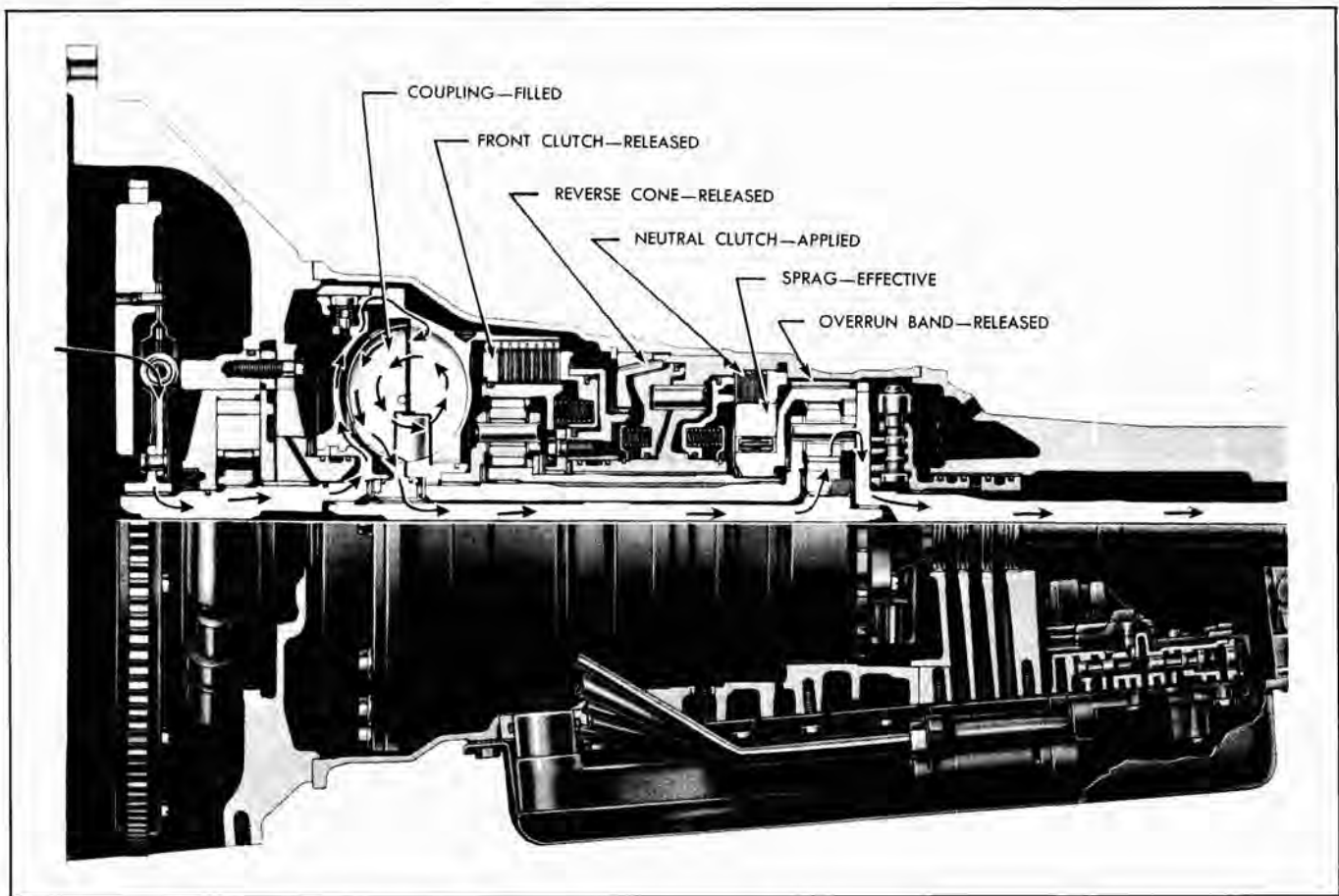


Fig. 14 First and Second—Drive Range

COUPLING —FILLED
FRONT CLUTCH—RELEASED

OVERRUN BAND—RELEASED
SPRAG —EFFECTIVE

REVERSE CONE —RELEASED
NEUTRAL CLUTCH—APPLIED

RATIO: First 3.50:1
Second 2.93:1

In first, power from the engine is mechanically transmitted through the flywheel, damper assembly and torus cover to the drive torus member. Engine torque is hydraulically transmitted through oil to the driven torus member. Oil from the driven torus member is directed against the torque multiplier which redirects the force of the oil back to the drive member in such a way as to assist in turning the drive member. Engine torque through the coupling is multiplied and applied to the mainshaft and rear unit sun gear.

As the car speed increases, the difference in speed between the drive torus, multiplier, and driven torus decreases so the multiplier ceases to be needed. As this happens, the torus assembly begins to function as a simple fluid coupling and the effective ratio of the transmission changes from 3.50:1 to 2.93:1, thus second stage.

The neutral clutch is applied locking the sprag outer race to the case, thus making the sprag effective for holding the rear unit internal gear stationary.

Coupling torque clockwise through the rear sun gear then attempts to drive the pinions and internal gear counterclockwise; however, because the sprag assembly holds the internal gear stationary, the output shaft through the pinions is compelled to rotate clockwise within the internal gear at a reduced speed and with increased torque.

As the rear carrier and output shaft rotate clockwise at reduced speed the front carrier, which is mechanically connected to the rear carrier, also rotates clockwise at a reduced speed. Because the sprag assembly is holding the front unit sun gear stationary against counterclockwise rotation, the carrier and pinions rotate the front unit internal gear clockwise at approximately one-half engine speed.

Because the front clutch is released the reduction in first speed is due to the rear unit gear reduction, times the coupling torque multiplication, less the .3 engine torque acting on the output shaft through the torque multiplier.

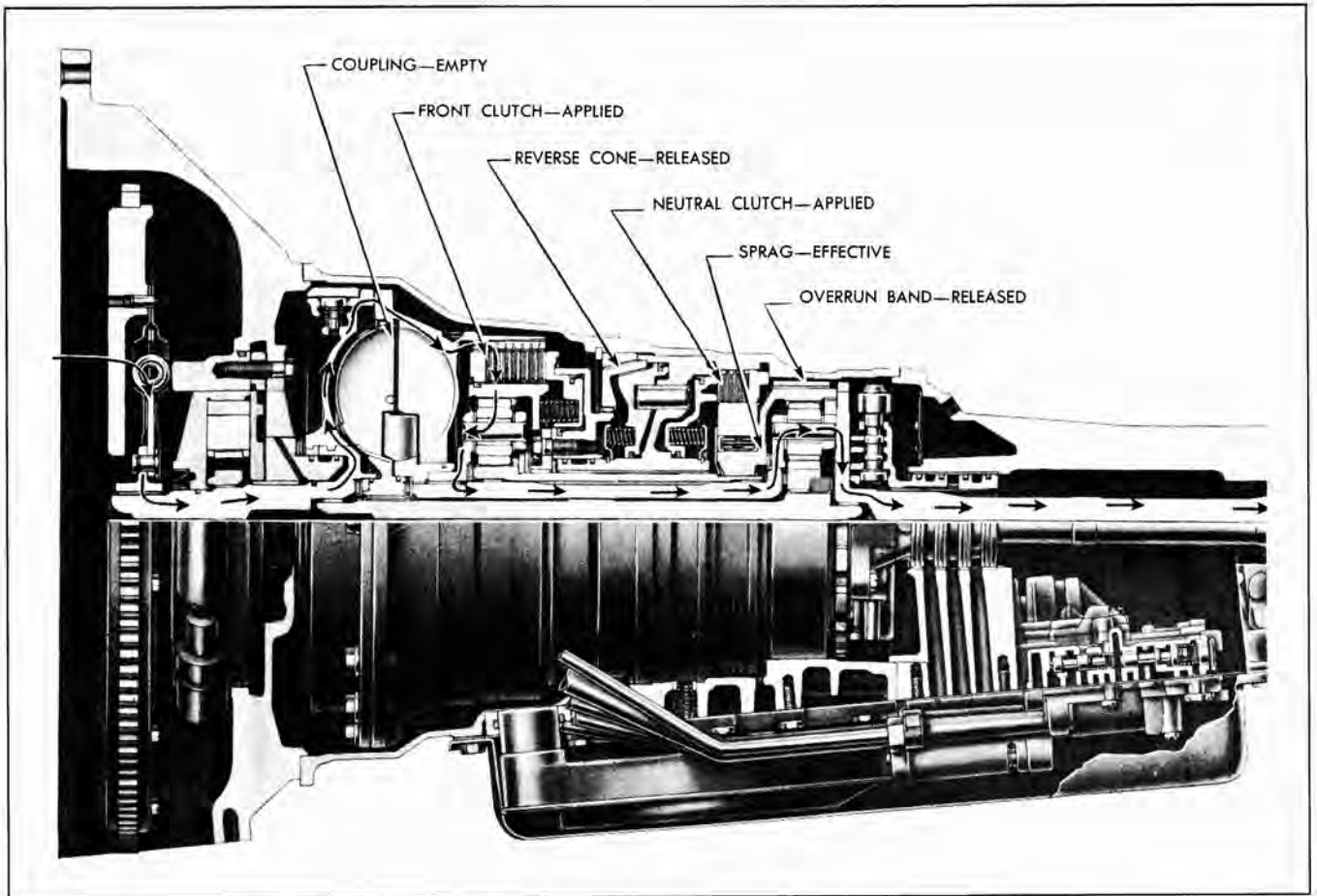


Fig. 15 Third—Drive Range

COUPLING —EMPTY
FRONT CLUTCH—APPLIED

OVERRUN BAND—RELEASED
SPRAG —EFFECTIVE

REVERSE CONE —RELEASED
NEUTRAL CLUTCH—APPLIED

RATIO: 1.56:1

Power from the engine is mechanically transmitted through the flywheel, damper assembly and torus cover to the drive torus member. The front clutch is applied and the coupling is empty so engine torque is mechanically applied to the front unit internal gear.

The front unit sun gear assembly is splined to the sprag inner race and is prevented from turning counterclockwise by the sprag when the neutral clutch is applied. Engine torque at the front internal gear is applied to the pinions, and because the sun

gear cannot rotate counterclockwise the planet pinions and carrier are compelled to revolve clockwise around the sun gear in reduction. The front carrier is splined to the rear unit carrier and shaft assembly which in turn is bolted directly to the output shaft.

As the output shaft and rear unit carrier turns clockwise in reduction, the pinions will drive the rear unit sun gear and driven torus in a clockwise direction faster than engine speed. Because the coupling is empty no power is transmitted and all torque multiplication in third stage is due to the front unit gear ratio.

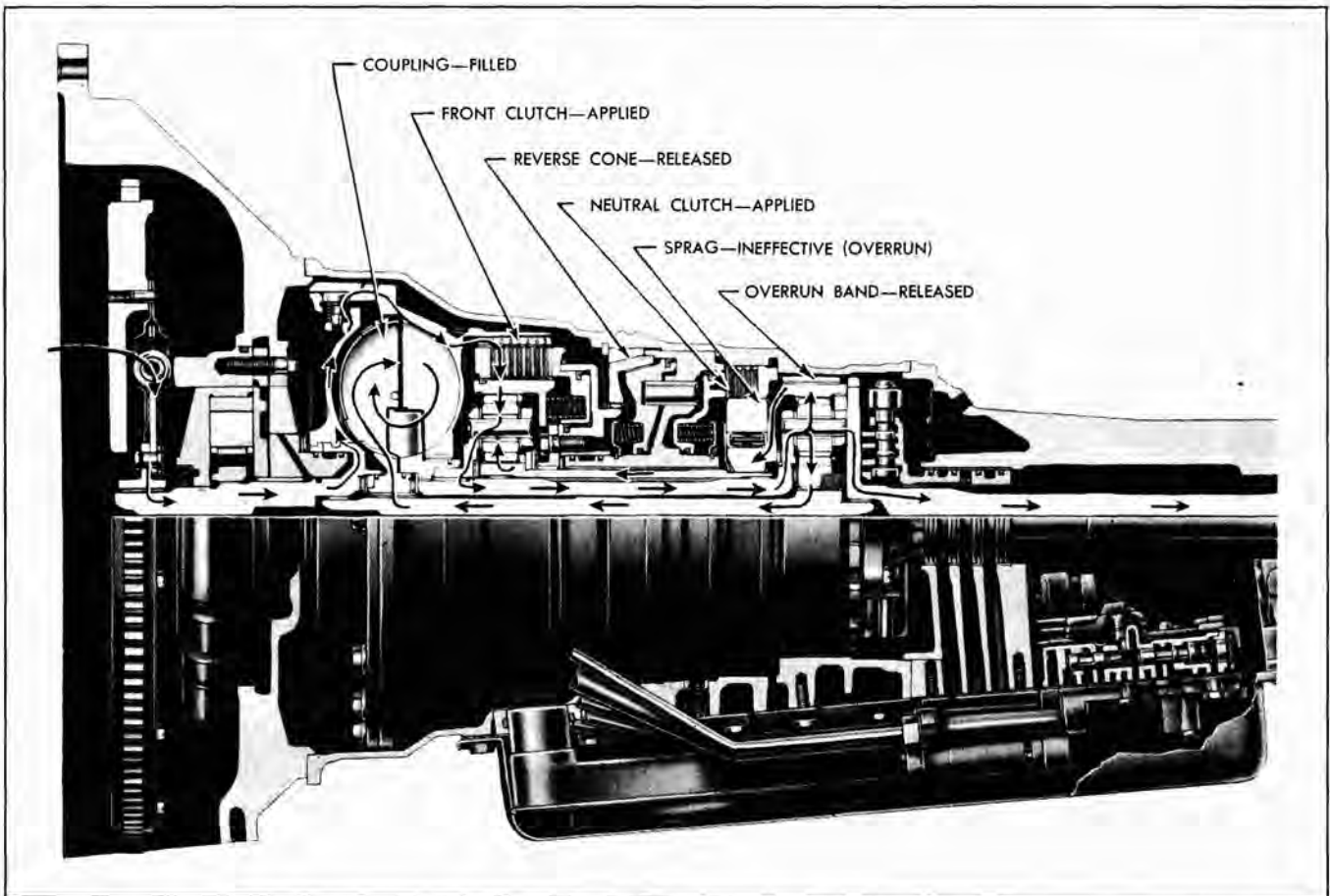


Fig. 16 Fourth—Drive Range

COUPLING —FILLED
FRONT CLUTCH—APPLIED

OVERRUN BAND—RELEASED
SPRAG —INEFFECTIVE
(OVERRUN)

REVERSE CONE —RELEASED
NEUTRAL CLUTCH—APPLIED

RATIO: 1:1

Power from the engine through the flywheel, damper assembly and torus cover is applied through the front clutch to the front unit internal gear. The front internal gear, through the pinions tends to turn the front sun gear against the sprag. This would cause the front carrier to run clockwise in reduction. The rear carrier then must also attempt to revolve clockwise in reduction. With the rear carrier rotating clockwise in reduction, and the rear internal gear tending to be stationary against the sprag, the rear unit pinions attempt to rotate counterclockwise on their pins, thus driving the rear unit sun gear and driven torus clockwise faster than engine speed.

However, because the coupling is filled, the coupling driven member and rear unit sun gear can not revolve faster than the drive torus which turns at engine speed. Therefore, the rear sun gear speed is slowed

down to approximately engine speed. In so doing, the rear unit pinions are slowed down in their rotation on the pinion pins. The carrier and pinions change the direction of load against the internal gear causing it to overrun the sprag and revolve with the carrier and sun gear at the same speed. Because the output shaft and carriers are connected to the torque multiplier in the coupling, the torque multiplier is also turning the same speed as the drive and driven member so that it has no effect in multiplying torque in the coupling.

Both carriers and the output shaft are common, the front sun gear and rear internal gear are common, and the front internal gear and rear unit sun gear are turning at approximately the same speed, thus the entire train must revolve as one common unit in direct drive.

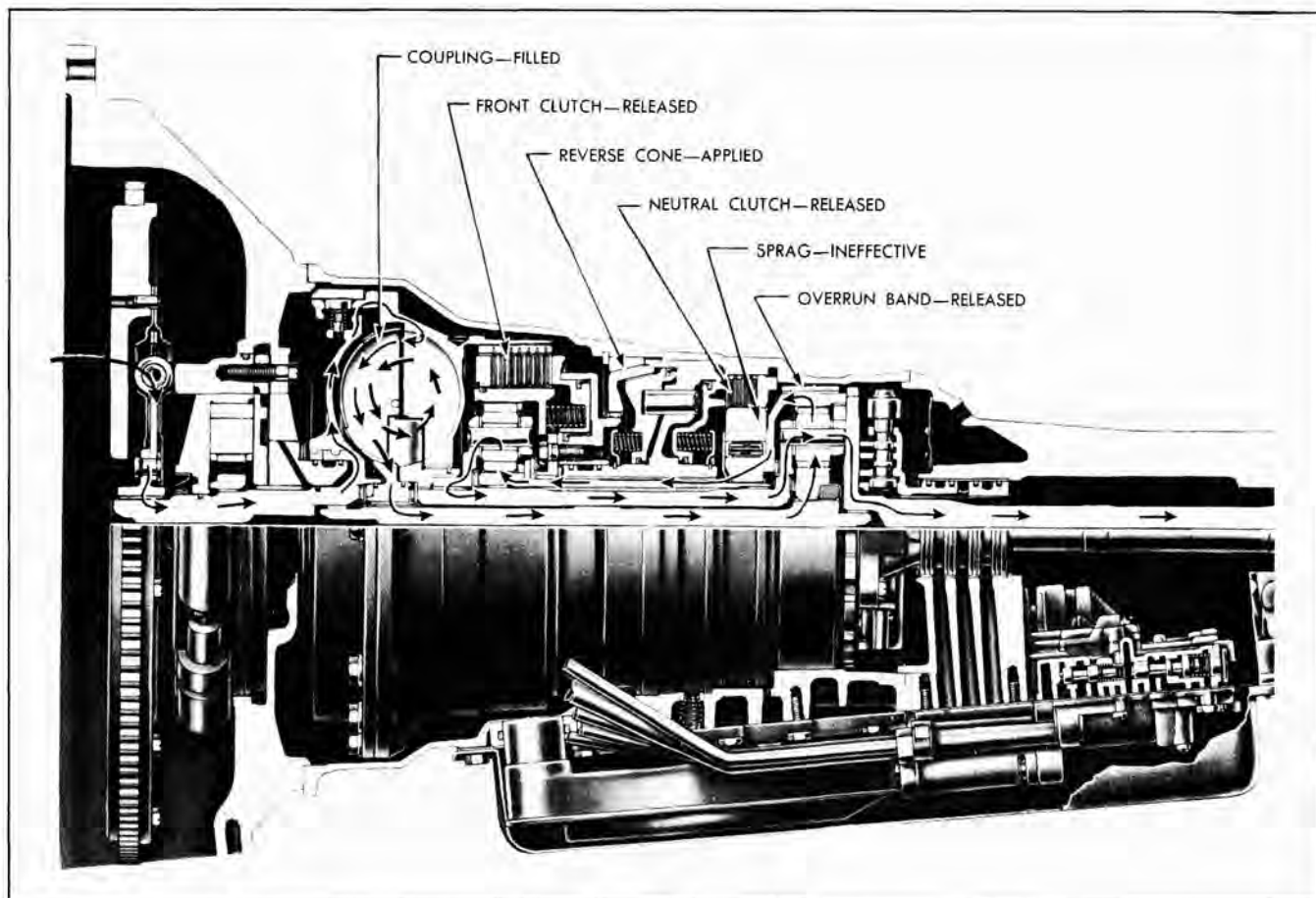


Fig. 17 Reverse

COUPLING —FILLED
FRONT CLUTCH—RELEASED

OVERRUN BAND—RELEASED
SPRAG —INEFFECTIVE

REVERSE CONE —APPLIED
NEUTRAL CLUTCH—RELEASED

RATIO: 3.53:1

Power from the engine is mechanically transmitted through the flywheel, damper assembly and torus cover to the drive torus member. Engine torque is hydraulically transmitted through oil to the driven torus member. Oil from the driven torus member is then directed against the torque multiplier which redirects the force of the oil back to the drive member in such a way as to assist in turning the drive member. Engine torque through the coupling is multiplied and applied to the mainshaft and rear unit sun gear.

The rear unit sun gear drives the rear unit pinions as idlers which in turn drive the rear unit internal gear in a counterclockwise direction. (The neutral clutch is released rendering the sprag ineffective for holding the internal gear).

Because the rear unit internal gear is turning

counterclockwise, the front unit sun gear is turning counterclockwise. The reverse cone is holding the front unit internal gear stationary so that the front unit pinions and carriers are compelled to walk around the front internal gear in counterclockwise direction in reduction. The output shaft is common with the front and rear unit carrier so the output shaft is turning counterclockwise in reverse in reduction.

The effect of the force of the oil in the coupling is such that the torque multiplier is imparting an additional .3 times engine torque to the carrier and output shaft in the reverse direction.

The total reduction in reverse is due to the 1.3 coupling torque ratio times the 2.42 gear ratio plus the .3 engine torque acting on the torque multiplier and output shaft in the reverse direction.

| Range | Stage | Coupling Filled | Front Clutch Applied | Reverse Clutch Applied | Neutral Clutch Applied | Overrun Band Applied |
|-------------|--------------|-----------------|----------------------|------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| Park | — | ✓ | | | | |
| Neutral | — | ✓ | | | | |
| Drive Left | First-Second | ✓ | | | ✓ | |
| | Third | | ✓ | | ✓ | |
| | Fourth | ✓ | ✓ | | ✓ | |
| Drive Right | First-Second | ✓ | | | ✓ | ✓ |
| | Third | | ✓ | | ✓ | ✓ |
| | Fourth | ✓ | ✓ | | ✓ | |
| Lo | First-Second | ✓ | | | ✓ | ✓ |
| | Third | | ✓ | | ✓ | ✓ |
| | Fourth | ✓ | ✓ | | ✓ | |
| Reverse | Reverse | ✓ | | ✓ | | |

Note: The transmission will shift into fourth while in Drive Right at very high engine r.p.m.; however, transmission will not shift out of Second in Lo.

Fig. 18 Review Action of Units

REVIEW ACTION OF UNITS

In order to diagnose transmission difficulties it is very important to know what happens in each unit during each shift. The preceding list of conditions (Fig. 18) is effective with the engine driving the car (car not coasting).

HYDRAULIC ACTION IN THE HYDRA-MATIC TRANSMISSION

The proper shifting of the transmission is controlled by hydraulic oil pressure. The direction of this oil pressure to the proper places in the transmission is accomplished by the control valve assembly.

The diagrams and text on the following pages explain how the transmission is hydraulically controlled for each shift and operating condition.

OPERATION OF THE PUMP

The transmission pump is of the variable displacement high capacity type and is engine driven.

A variable capacity type pump is one that will vary its output according to the oil flow and pressure requirements of the transmission. The effort required to drive the pump is only great when the demand for oil is great, consequently, large pumping capacity can be obtained at low pump speeds without having large pumping loads at high speeds.

The rotor of the pump is engine driven and carries vanes. Oil trapped between vanes at the suction or intake side is moved to the pressure side in greater quantity than oil from the pressure side is moved to the suction side (Fig. 19).

Variable output of the pump is obtained in the following manner.

When the slide is in the up position maximum volume will be delivered, when the slide is in the middle "neutral" position no volume will be delivered.

Two springs are located on the bottom of the slide. The longer spring keeps the slide in the up or prime position so that the moment the engine is started the slide will be in the prime position and full output will be obtained.

The small spring or inner spring acts as a bumper keeping the slide from returning to a full exhaust position if the demand for oil falls quickly.

MAIN LINE PRESSURE

Main line oil pressure from the pump is directed to the end of the pressure regulator valve. The valve will then move against the pressure regulator spring. The pressure regulator spring, having a predetermined value, will then produce a constant pressure. The lands on the pressure regulator valve direct pressure to both the top and bottom of the pump slide. Pressure to the bottom will force the slide into the up or

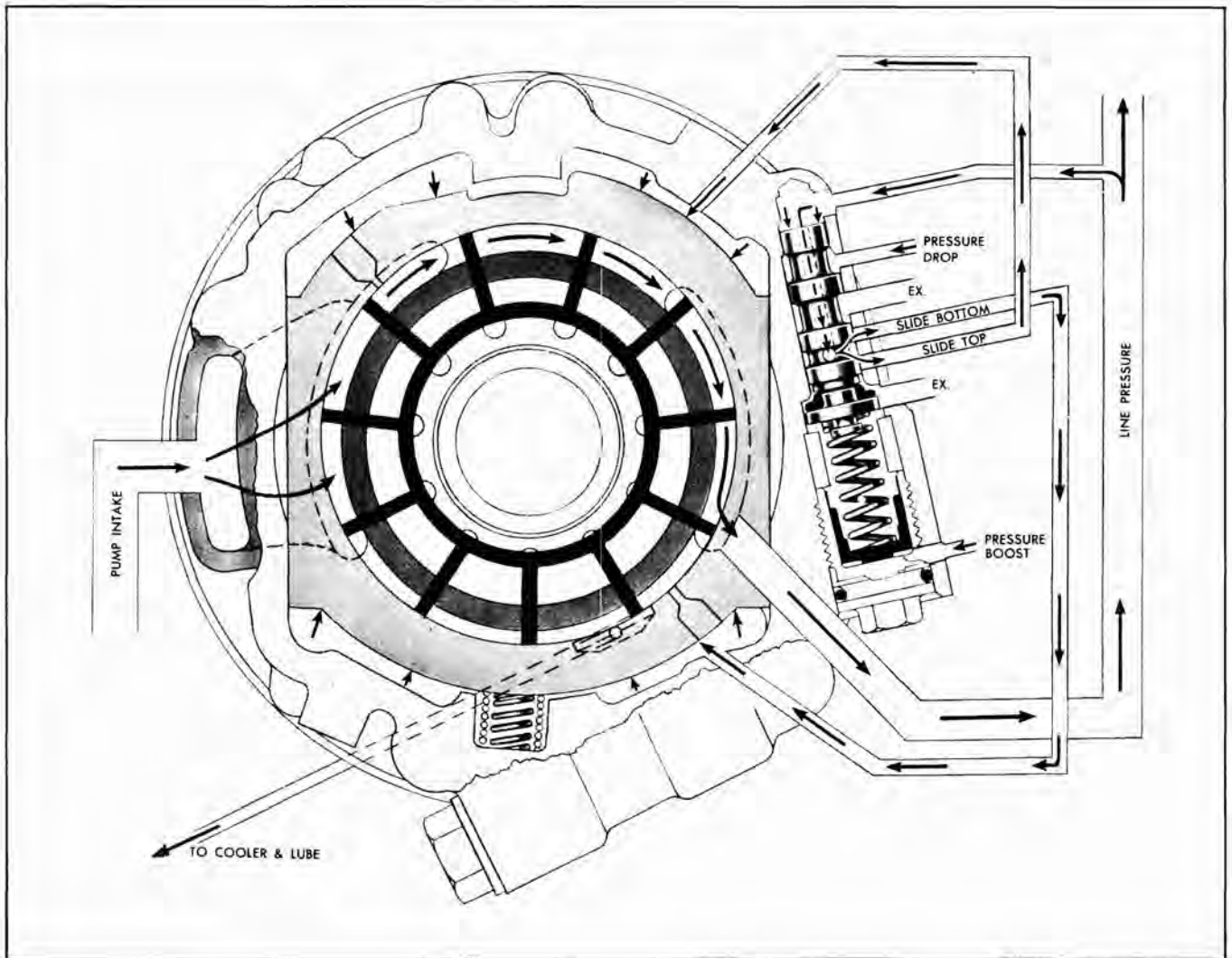


Fig. 19 Operation of Pump

pumping position. Pressure to the top of slide will force the slide downward to the neutral position.

When line pressure drops the pressure regulator spring will move the pressure regulator valve against reducing line pressure thereby moving the valve so that a feed hole in the valve indexes with a passage to the underside of the slide causing the slide to move upward to the prime position thereby causing pump output to increase.

Conversely if there is little or no oil demand from the transmission, pressure will increase and move the pressure regulator valve so that main line oil is directed to the top of the slide moving the slide to the down position reducing output.

Thus, it has been seen that the pressure regulator valve will produce consistent pressure determined by the pressure regulator spring.

HIGHER MAIN LINE PRESSURE

A higher pressure may be obtained by directing a pressure called line boost pressure behind the pressure boost plug, compressing the pressure regulator spring, which increases the spring load, thus raising pressure.

LOWER VARIABLE LINE PRESSURE

A lower pressure for certain types of operation may be obtained by directing line drop oil to the main line oil side of the pressure regulator valve. This will work against spring pressure sending line pressure to the top of the slide moving it toward the lower output position. This line drop oil will reduce main line pressure as the line drop pressure increases. Also, included in the pump is the coupling limit valve which is used to fill the coupling.

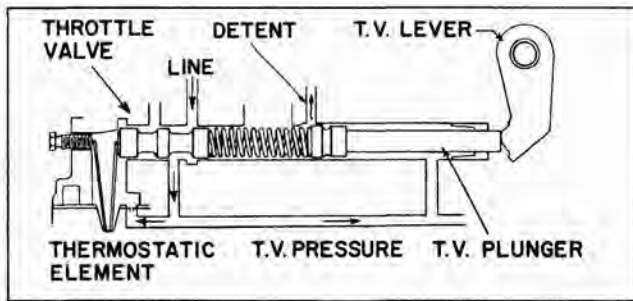


Fig. 20 Throttle Valve Operation

T.V. PRESSURE

Under some conditions it is desirable to provide for greater acceleration and or greater pulling power, such as climbing hills, etc. To accomplish this, higher shift speeds are required. This is accomplished by an oil pressure that will oppose the effect of governor pressure in opening the shift valves. This pressure, called T.V. is a regulated pressure and increases with throttle opening, which is regulated by the driver. Therefore, at the driver's option, the shift speeds can be raised or lowered to insure suitable shift speeds for operation under all driving conditions.

When the accelerator pedal is depressed, linkage connected with the carburetor and the accelerator pedal acts against T.V. plunger, opens the throttle valve and allows main line pressure to become regulated T.V. pressure (Fig. 20).

T.V. pressure is directed to the shift valves to assist spring pressure to hold the shift valve closed against governor pressure. Governor pressure increases with car speed until it can overcome spring and T.V. pressure causing the shift valve to open and the shift to occur.

THERMOSTATIC T.V. CONTROL

A bi-metal spring type thermostatic element is used to compensate for the effects of temperature on shift speed control, engine power output, and shift feel control.

The element is positioned behind the throttle valve and is adjusted by a screw to give an accurate spring value at a given temperature. Under cold oil conditions the element will expand, and apply a greater load against the throttle valve (Fig. 20).

This produces less T.V. pressure at a given throttle open. Less T.V. pressure allows some shifts to start

quicker and reduces the forces applying the front clutch. As the oil temperature rises toward normal the element will contract making it ineffective.

GOVERNOR OPERATION

The governor is a centrifugal type, rotating with the transmission output shaft to generate two speed-controlled oil pressures which are primarily used in the control valve assembly to initiate the shifts.

G-1 PRESSURE

As the governor rotates with the output shaft, centrifugal force acting on the G-1 or primary governor valve tends to throw the valve outward (Fig. 21). Main line pressure to the governor is then ported into the G-1 passage where it can act on the large land of the G-1 valve to provide a force in the opposite direction to the centrifugal force. The G-1 valve will then move to close off the incoming line pressure and allow G-1 pressure to exhaust until the force of G-1 pressure acting against the centrifugal force is equal to the centrifugal force. The G-1 valve continues to regulate against centrifugal force so that G-1 pressure increases with output shaft speed.

G-2 PRESSURE

The second governor valve is called the G-2 or secondary governor valve. As centrifugal force throws the G-2 valve outward, G-1 pressure is admitted to

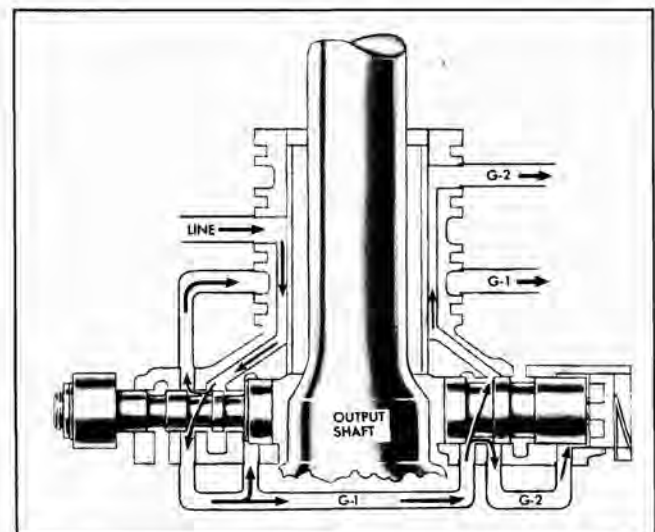


Fig. 21 Governor

the G-2 passage. G-2 pressure then acts against the large land of the G-2 valve to oppose the centrifugal force. G-2 pressure then increases with output shaft speed.

G-2 pressure is designed to be more sensitive at the higher car speeds.

FRONT CLUTCH ACCUMULATOR

The front clutch accumulator is a cushioning and timing device which enables the front clutch to apply smoothly under all throttle conditions. Regulation is necessary due to the varying torque loads that the front clutch is subjected to. For example, with light throttle conditions the front clutch can be applied quickly with a minimum of pressure, conversely with full throttle operation the front clutch is applied slower with greater oil pressure required.

The accumulator body contains two opposed sets of springs and pistons. One is called the upper accumulator piston and spring and the other lower accumulator piston and spring, with each piston acting against spring pressure.

When the front clutch is engaging, front clutch apply oil is also directed to the front clutch accumulator. Front clutch oil compresses the pistons against spring pressure, causing the accumulator to absorb an amount of clutch apply oil. During the initial application of the front clutch piston, a comparatively small quantity of clutch apply oil is diverted to the accumulator. When the clutch piston is stroked to its apply position, the accumulator pistons move against spring pressure and the amount of oil absorbed by the accumulator will increase thereby stopping the flow to the clutch. Since the pistons moving against their springs meet increasing resistance to their motion, the oil pressure applying the front clutch increases gradually to provide a smooth application.

When the pistons reach the ends of their strokes, the front clutch pressure rises to main line pressure to insure positive and complete engagement following the shift.

COMPENSATOR

Further control of front clutch pressure as produced by the accumulator is obtained by the primary and secondary compensator valves and springs. The purpose of these valves and springs is to provide pressure to the accumulator to help the lower accumulator piston spring to resist piston motion and thus further increase the front clutch pressure during shifting.

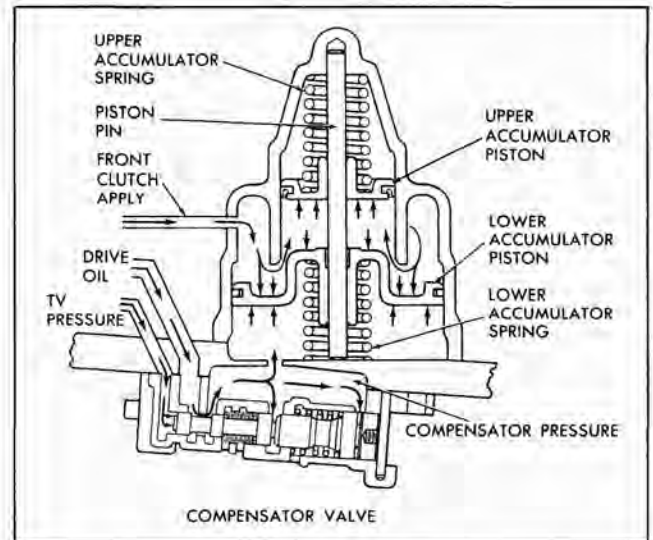


Fig. 22 Accumulator and Compensator

T.V. pressure, along with spring pressure, acts against the primary compensator valve allowing drive oil to enter the compensator line and fill the accumulator.

When T.V. pressure is low, the compensator pressure is low, and the secondary compensator valve is held against its stop by the secondary compensator valve spring. When T.V. pressure is high the secondary compensator valve is pushed against the primary compensator valve by higher compensator pressure. It then moves with the primary compensator valve. When the front clutch oil is fed into the accumulator, compensator oil is forced over to the compensator valves where it pushes open the primary valve and discharges compensator oil to exhaust. The resistance of the compensator valves to permitting compensator oil to be exhausted controls the compensator pressure which helps to control the front clutch pressure during a shift.

OVERRUN BAND SERVO

The overrun band and servo are used to obtain engine braking when coasting in first, second or third with the selector lever in the intermediate or low range position. Normally, when the engine is driving the transmission and vehicle, the sprag assembly is effective in holding the rear unit internal gear, or front unit sun gear stationary so as to obtain reduction. When the vehicle is coasting however, the rear wheels and transmission output shaft are driving the transmission. In this condition the sprag assembly

loses its effectiveness for holding the rear unit internal gear or front unit sun gear stationary, the transmission would then overrun and not provide the desired braking action.

To prevent the transmission from overrunning, the overrun band assembly is applied to the rear unit internal gear thus holding the rear internal and front unit sun gears stationary for the desired braking (Fig. 23).

An overrun band servo is used to apply and release the overrun band.

SERVO OPERATION

When the manual selector lever is in the Low Range position and the transmission is in first, second or third, overrun band apply pressure is applied to the overrun band servo.

FIRST STAGE

Band apply pressure acts against the servo piston moving the piston, servo springs, retainer and piston pin against the release spring to start the application of the band. When the band has been applied to the rear internal gear it begins to offer resistance to the travel of the piston pin.

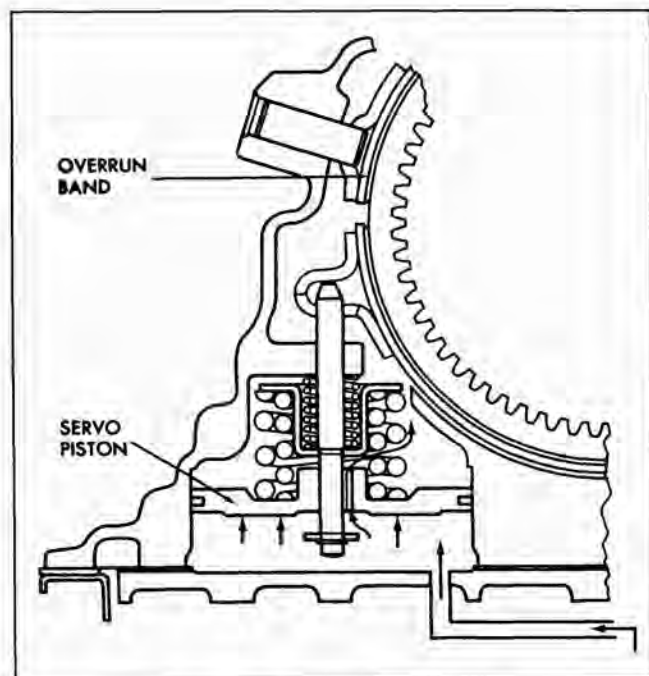


Fig. 23 Overrun Band Servo

SECOND STAGE

As band apply pressure continues to build up under the piston, the piston begins to travel up on the piston pin against the force of the servo springs. The piston then moves away from the washer which allows a small portion of the band apply pressure to bleed to exhaust through the bleed hole in the piston. Overrun band apply pressure under the piston then continues to build up at a slower rate and causes a greater force to be applied to the band. (See Fig. 23).

THIRD STAGE

When the piston travels up far enough to contact the servo spring retainer the bleed hole is sealed off again, this allows the band apply pressure to build up quickly again and causes the piston to apply its full force directly against the servo spring retainer and piston pin to give the final full apply force.

The design of the servo is such as to provide for a smooth gradual apply of the band under all driving conditions and oil pressures.

MANUAL VALVE

The manual valve distributes pressures to place the transmission in either neutral, drive left, drive right, Lo Range or Reverse. It is controlled mechanically through a linkage from the selector lever on the steering column.

2-3 VALVE

The 2-3 valve initiates the 2-3 and 3-2 shifts by sensing a balance between T.V. and G-1 governor pressures.

3-4 VALVE

The 3-4 valve initiates the 3-4 and 4-3 shifts by sensing a balance between T.V. and both G-1 and G-2 governor pressures.

COUPLING FEED LIMIT VALVE

This valve is located in the pump body and provides a direct feed to the coupling from the pump in first gear and reverse. It is controlled by coupling signal pressure but opens only when coupling signal pressure is greater than 72-75 psi.

COUPLING EXHAUST VALVES

The coupling exhaust valves are located in the torus cover assembly and they seal the coupling ex-

haust ports whenever coupling signal pressure is directed to close them.

COUPLING TIMING VALVE

The coupling timing valve controls the dump and fill of the coupling.

It is controlled by front clutch pressure on 2-3 shift and delays the dump of the coupling until clutch capacity is sufficient to carry the drive load.

On a 3-4 shift it is controlled by 2nd and 4th pressure and shifts immediately after the 3-4 valve.

PRESSURE BOOST VALVE

The pressure boost valve controls the flow to the line boost area of the pressure regulator valve. It is shifted by front clutch pressure and is timed to move after the clutch has assumed the drive.

LINE BOOST BALL CHECK

This ball check valve in the pump is located in parallel with an orifice to provide fast unrestricted flow to the pressure boost plug, and then sealing to provide a slow orificed bleed of pressure boost oil during the 3-4 shift.

PRESSURE DROP VALVE

The pressure drop valve controls the flow to the line drop area of the pressure regulator valve. It generates a varying pressure inversely proportional to T.V. pressure which results in a modulated line pressure.

3-2 DOWNSHIFT VALVE

The 3-2 downshift valve regulates the exhaust of the front clutch on throttle 3-2 downshifts. It is designed to allow the clutch to slip momentarily until the coupling is full enough to assume the drive without excessive engine flare.

FRONT CLUTCH EXHAUST VALVE

The front clutch exhaust valve controls the duration of front clutch slipping during a throttle 3-2 downshift. It provides a wide open clutch exhaust when coupling pressure is sufficient.

TV PLUNGER (DETENT VALVE)

The T.V. plunger initiates the 4-3 and 3-2 shifts. It is operated mechanically by the T.V. linkage.

REVERSE BLOCKER VALVE

The reverse blocker valve prevents a shift into reverse at speeds above 10 mph. It is controlled by G-1 pressure and provides a mechanical stop for the manual linkage.

3-2 CUTOFF VALVE

The 3-2 cutoff valve is a valve which senses drive conditions relative to overrun by shifting at about 17 psi T.V. pressure. It provides an immediate exhaust of front clutch oil on overrun or closed throttle 3-2 downshifts and provides a source for 3-4 boost oil on very light 3-4 upshifts.

3-4 BOOST VALVE

The 3-4 boost valve provides 3-4 boost pressure on light throttle 3-4 upshifts until the coupling reaches sufficient charge pressure.

NEUTRAL CLUTCH VALVE

The neutral clutch valve senses a balance between T.V. pressure and neutral clutch pressure to regulate the flow of neutral clutch apply oil. This insures a smooth but firm clutch application under all throttle conditions.

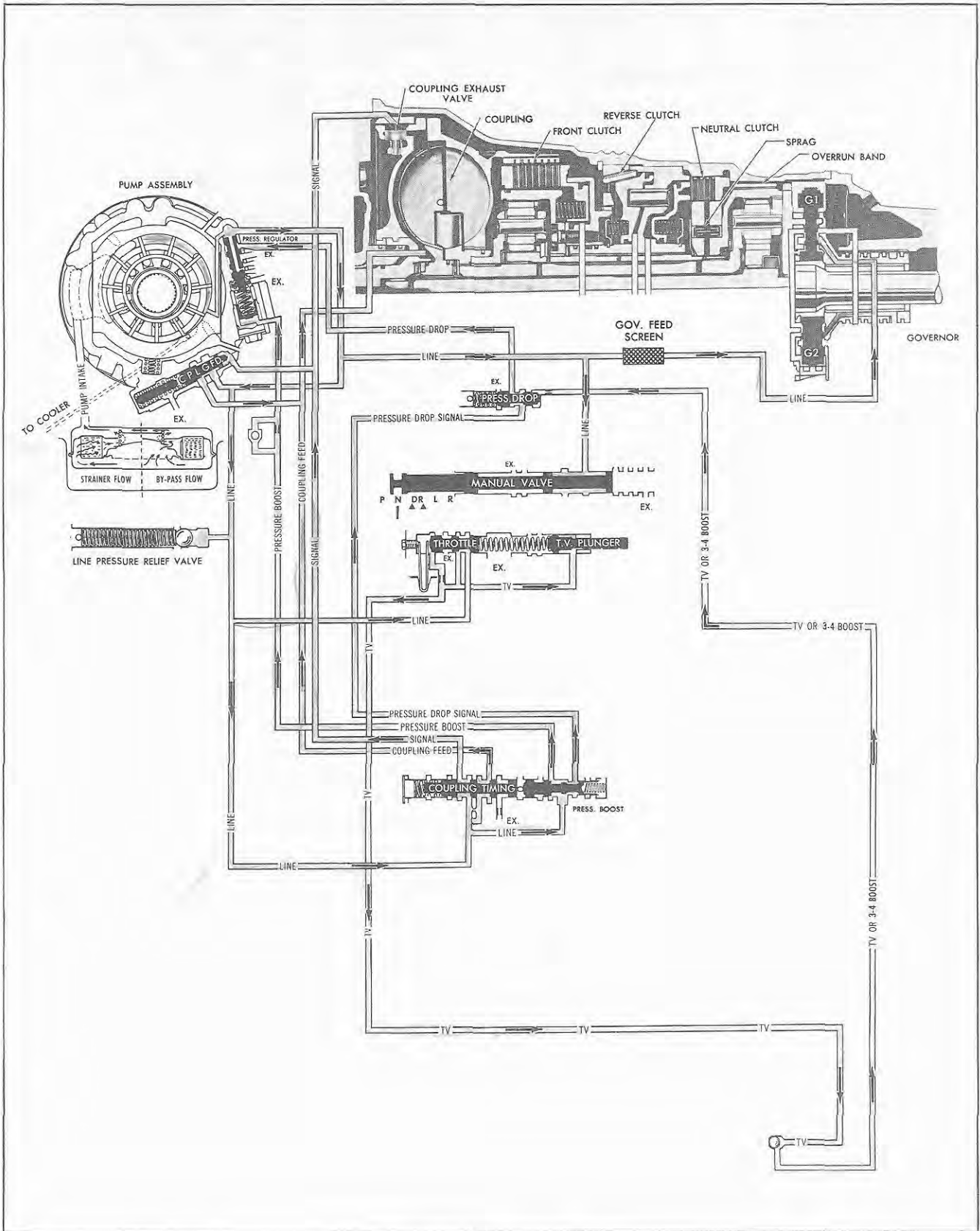


Fig. 24 Neutral-Engine Running

NEUTRAL—ENGINE RUNNING

COUPLING —FILLED
FRONT CLUTCH—OFF

REVERSE CONE —OFF
NEUTRAL CLUTCH—OFF

SPRAG —INEFFECTIVE
OVERRUN BAND—OFF

Whenever the engine is running line pressure is always directed to the:

1. Pressure Regulator
2. Pressure Relief Valve
3. Coupling Feed Limit Valve
4. Throttle Valve
5. Coupling Timing Valve
6. Manual Valve
7. 3-4 Governor Valve
8. Governor Assembly
9. Pressure Boost Valve

BASIC CONTROL

Line pressure through the coupling timing valve is directed into the signal passage. Signal oil closes the coupling exhaust valves and opens the coupling feed limit valve to provide coupling feed oil. Line pressure through the orifice at the coupling timing valve provides an additional source of coupling feed oil to fill the coupling. The neutral clutch is released, thereby rendering the sprag ineffective.

PRESSURE CONTROL

The pressure relief valve provides for the exhaust of excessive main line pressures at approximately 242 psi. This condition may occur only in the event of a malfunction in the pump or pressure regulator.

Line pressure to the throttle valve is regulated to a variable pressure called T.V. pressure. The throttle

valve, which regulates T.V. pressure, is controlled by the T.V. spring and throttle plunger, through adjustable linkage from the carburetor throttle. As the throttle is opened, the linkage depresses the throttle plunger to increase the force of the T.V. spring, thus causing the throttle valve to regulate T.V. pressure to a higher value. T.V. pressure is designed to vary with throttle opening and is used throughout the control system to activate or control different valves at various times in relation to throttle opening.

Line pressure through the pressure boost valve enters two passages to become pressure boost and line drop signal oil. Pressure boost oil is routed against the boost plug in the pressure regulator to give an increase in line pressure. Pressure drop signal pressure is routed to the pressure drop valve where T.V. pressure acting on the end of the pressure drop valve regulates pressure drop signal oil to a variable decreasing pressure which in turn is applied against the second land of the pressure regulator valve.

At closed throttle, line drop pressure is maximum thus causing the greatest drop in line pressure; at full throttle, line drop pressure is regulated to exhaust resulting in high line pressure. Line pressure then is controlled to vary in accordance to throttle opening from 132-180 psi.

Line pressure directed to the governor will be regulated to become two variable governor pressures: G-1 and G-2.

SUMMARY

The coupling is filled and the neutral clutch is released, thereby causing the transmission to be in neutral.

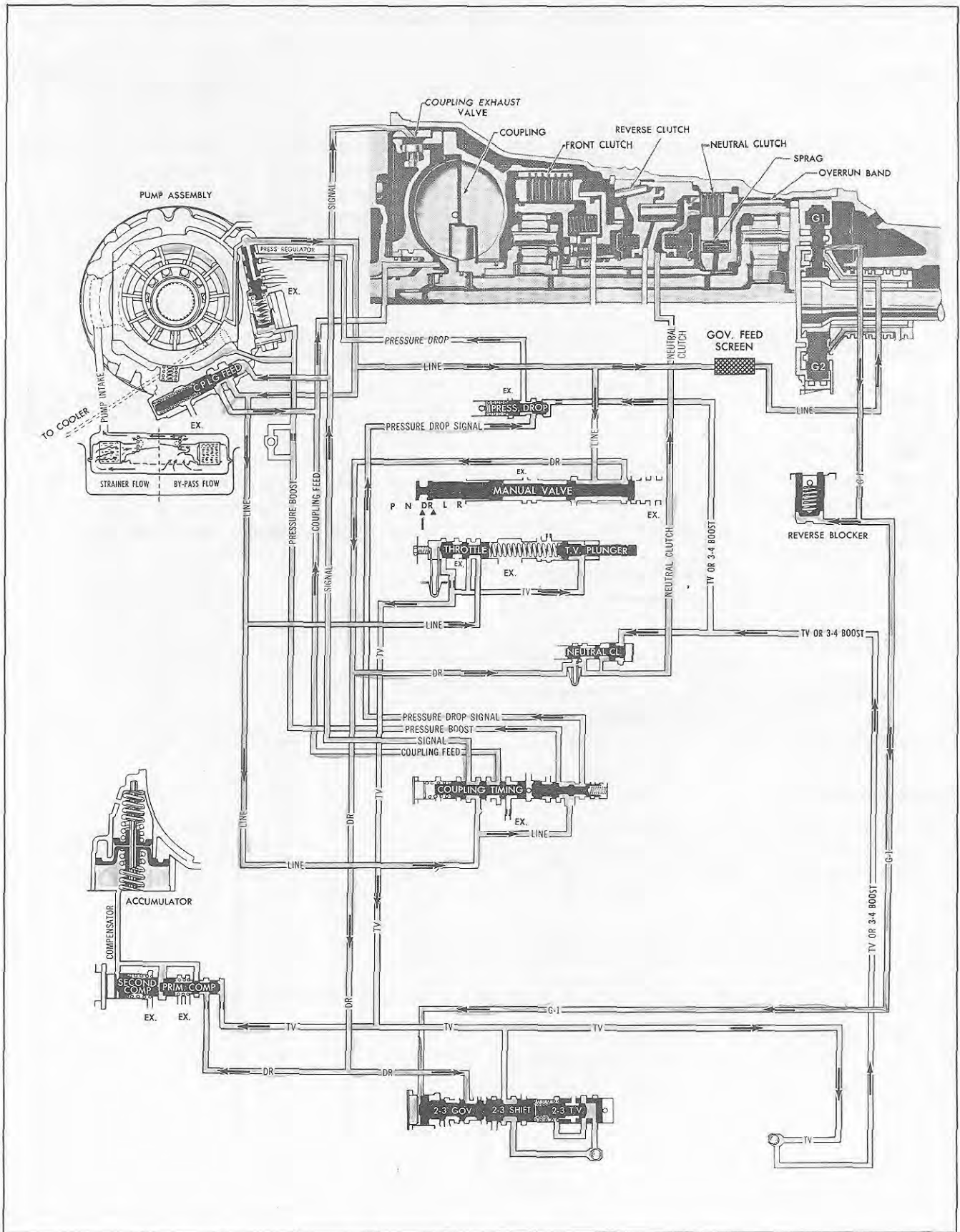


Fig. 25 First and Second—Drive Left

FIRST AND SECOND—DRIVE LEFT

COUPLING —FILLED
FRONT CLUTCH—OFF

REVERSE CONE —OFF
NEUTRAL CLUTCH—ON

SPRAG —EFFECTIVE
OVERRUN BAND—OFF

When the selector lever is moved to the drive position, the manual valve is repositioned to allow line pressure to enter the drive oil circuit. Drive oil then flows to the following:

- Neutral Clutch Valve
- 2-3 Valve Train
- Pressure Boost Valve
- Primary Compensator Valve

BASIC CONTROL

Drive oil to the Neutral Clutch Regulator Valve is directed into the neutral clutch apply passage. The neutral clutch valve senses a balance between neutral clutch apply pressure and T.V. plus spring pressure to regulate the flow of neutral clutch apply pressure to insure a smooth but firm clutch application under all throttle conditions. As the neutral clutch applies the sprag becomes effective for first stage.

PRESSURE CONTROL

Pressure control in first and second is identical to that in neutral. Line pressure will vary from 132 to 180 psi. depending on amount of T.V. pressure or throttle opening.

TIMING CONTROL

Drive oil and T.V. pressure are directed to the primary compensator valve. Drive oil flowing through compensator valves will become regulated to a pres-

sure called compensator. Increasing T.V. pressure (which increases with throttle opening) will cause compensator to regulate to an increasing value. Compensator pressure is then designed to vary with throttle opening but in such a way as to be proportional to engine torque. Compensator pressure is directed to the accumulator for use during the 2-3 shift.

FAIL SAFE FEATURES

To provide a safety feature, drive oil to the 2-3 shift valve is routed into first stage passage past two ball-check valves to the pressure boost valve. If for any reason the line boost valve has remained in the neutral or third stage position, 1st-2nd stage oil will flow past the pressure boost valve to become line boost oil which is necessary in first and second stage.

First and second stage oil flowing past one ball-check is resting on the coupling timing valve. Again, if for any reason the coupling timing valve should remain in the third stage position, 1st-2nd stage oil will flow past the valve to become coupling signal oil. This insures that the coupling can be filled in first and second stage regardless of the position of the coupling timing valve.

SUMMARY

The coupling is filled, the neutral clutch is applied and the sprag is effective placing the transmission in first.

THIRD—DRIVE LEFT

COUPLING—EMPTY
CLUTCH —ON

REVERSE CONE —OFF
NEUTRAL CLUTCH—ON

SPRAG —EFFECTIVE
OVERRUN BAND—OFF

As vehicle speed and G-1 pressure increases, the force of G-1 acting on the 2-3 governor valve will overcome the force of the 2-3 valve spring, 2-3 T.V. spring, and modulated T.V. pressure. This causes the 2-3 governor valve to open, which allows drive oil to enter the front clutch passage. Simultaneously shift T.V. to the 2-3 T.V. valve is cut off at the 2-3 valve, and first stage oil is exhausted through the 2-3 valve.

BASIC CONTROL

Front clutch oil from the 2-3 governor valve then is directed to the 3-4 valve for later use and, after passing an orificed one way check valve, to the:

- a. Front Clutch
- b. Front Clutch Accumulator
- c. Coupling Timing Valve
- d. Pressure Boost Valve

Front clutch oil to the front clutch applies the clutch, and moves the coupling timing valve against the spring cutting off line pressure to the signal passage. As signal pressure is cut off, the coupling exhaust valves open, thus allowing the coupling to empty and the coupling feed limit valve closes, cutting off coupling feed pressure to the coupling.

PRESSURE CONTROL

Front clutch to the pressure boost valve overcomes drive oil at the opposite end, thus moving the valve to cut off line pressure from entering the pressure

boost passage and pressure drop signal passage. Because line drop feed is now directed through the pressure boost valve into the pressure drop signal passage, line pressure will drop to a variable value of 74-105 psi. Front clutch oil is used on the pressure boost valve since it is a signal oil which notifies the pressure boost valve that the oil pressure in the clutch itself is sufficiently high to allow the clutch to carry third stage torque. Also, if the line pressure were not kept in a boosted condition temporarily, the neutral clutch would not have sufficient pressure to prevent its slipping before the transmission had completed the shift to third.

TIMING CONTROL

Front clutch oil is directed to the accumulator to provide a cushion for clutch apply pressure. Compensator pressure is also fed to the accumulator to control the amount of cushioning the accumulator will provide according to throttle opening. At light throttle, compensator pressure is low, thus allowing the accumulator to absorb a greater amount of clutch oil for greater cushioning. At heavy throttle, compensator assists the lower accumulator spring in acting against clutch pressure to give a firmer and smoother clutch application. Front clutch oil acting on the coupling timing valve times the movement of the valve and the resulting exhaust of the coupling to coincide with the application of the front clutch.

SUMMARY

The front clutch is now applied and the coupling is empty shifting the transmission into third.

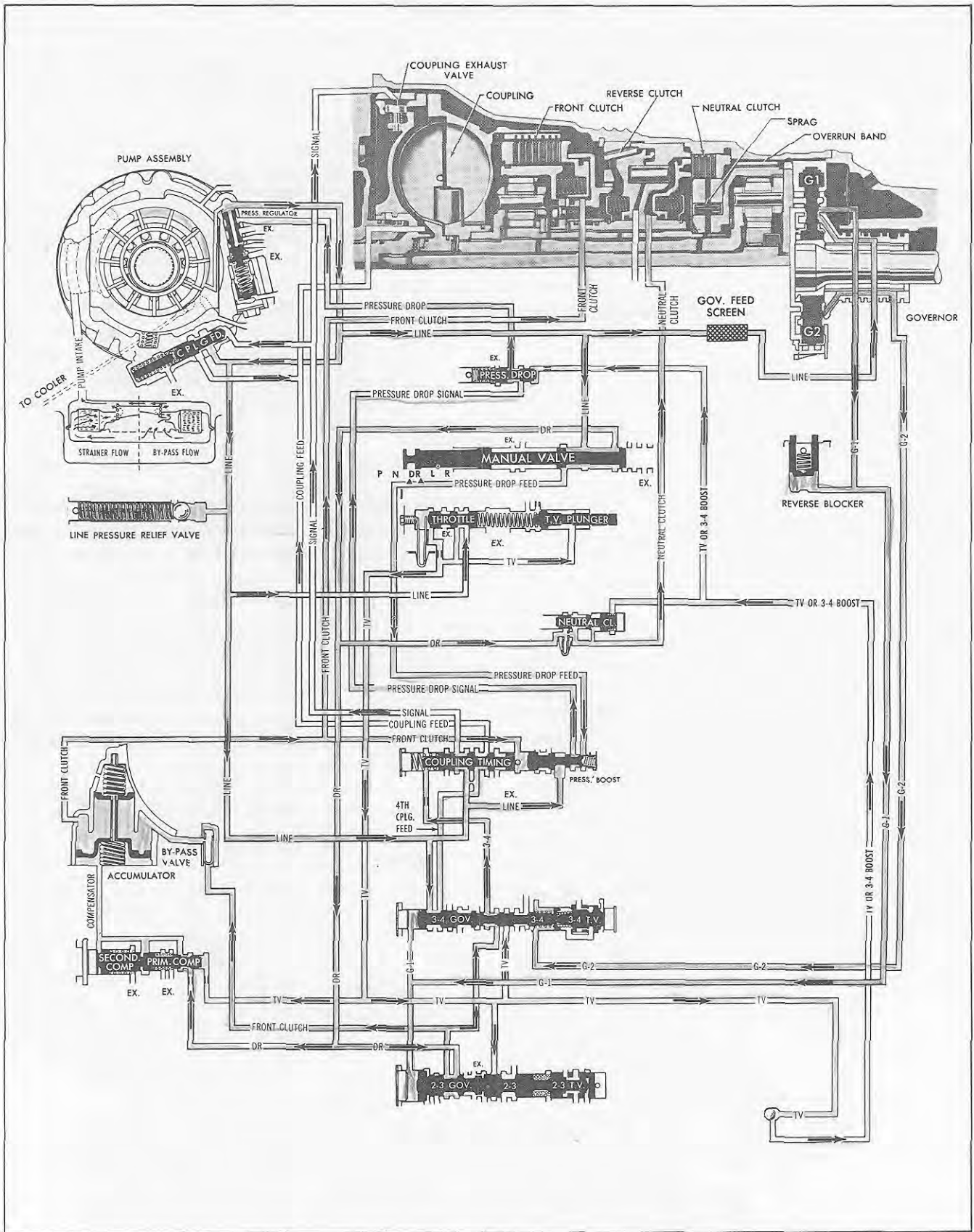


Fig. 27 Fourth-Drive Left

FOURTH—DRIVE LEFT

COUPLING —FILLED
FRONT CLUTCH—ON

REVERSE CONE —OFF
NEUTRAL CLUTCH—ON

SPRAG —OVERRUN
OVERRUN BAND—OFF

As vehicle speed increases further, G-1 and G-2 pressure and the 3-4 valve spring acting on the 3-4 valve train will overcome the force of the T.V. regulator spring and modulated T.V. pressure on the 3-4 valve. The valve will then open allowing front clutch pressure and line pressure to enter the 3-4 and 4th stage coupling feed passages respectively. T.V. pressure is now cut off from entering the shift T.V. passage.

BASIC CONTROL

3-4 oil will then reposition the coupling timing valve to allow signal pressure to close the coupling exhaust valves and open the coupling feed limit valve to provide coupling fill. Under some throttle conditions signal pressure may not be great enough to open the coupling feed limit valve. In this case, all coupling feed pressure comes from the coupling

timing valve. Fourth stage coupling feed pressure flows to the coupling timing valve where it provides an additional source for coupling feed pressure.

PRESSURE CONTROL

Under most driving conditions line pressure is not changed between third and fourth stage however, below approximately 28 psi T.V. pressure, the 3-2 cutoff valve opens against T.V. pressure to allow 3-4 pressure to enter the 3-4 transfer passage. This will cause a temporary boost in line pressure as described in DRIVE LEFT 3-4 LIGHT THROTTLE UP-SHIFT.

SUMMARY

The front clutch remains applied and the coupling is filled so the transmission is in fourth stage.

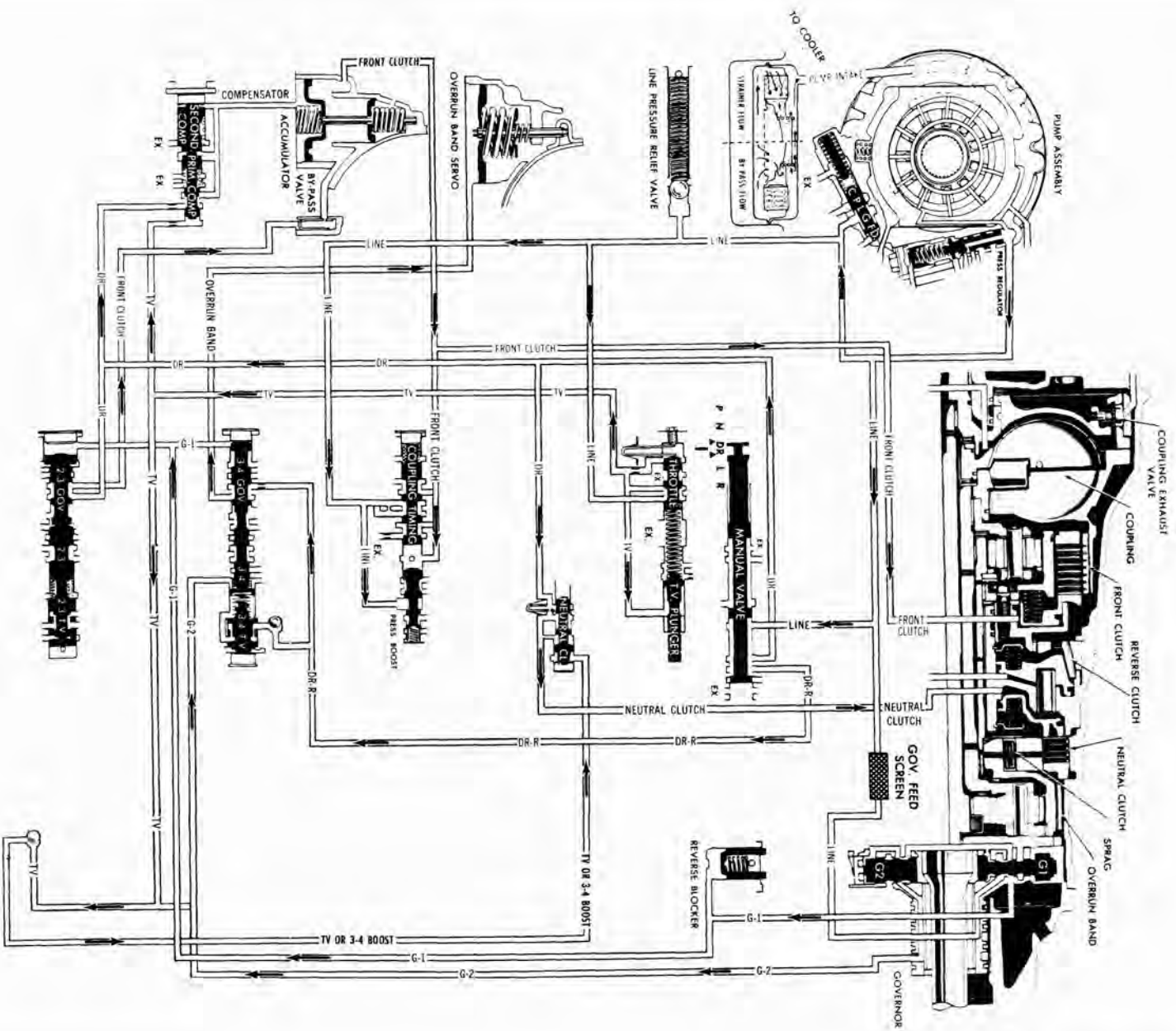


Fig. 28 Third-Drive Right

THIRD—DRIVE RIGHT

COUPLING —EMPTY
FRONT CLUTCH—APPLIED

REVERSE CONE —OFF
NEUTRAL CLUTCH—APPLIED

SPRAG —EFFECTIVE
OVERRUN BAND—ON

Oil flow in Drive Right range-third stage is primarily identical to that in Drive Left range third stage, with the following exceptions:

1. OIL PRESSURE

When the manual valve is in the right drive position the line drop feed passage is cut off. This stops the source of line drop pressure so that line pressure is constant at approximately 98-105 psi regardless of throttle opening.

2. INTERMEDIATE RANGE PRESSURE

Right drive range pressure from the manual valve

performs two functions. First, it is directed through the ball check against the large end of the 3-4 valve to prevent a 3-4 shift from normally occurring in the intermediate range.

As a safety feature, it is possible to obtain a 3-4 upshift in the intermediate range but only above the speed at which the normal drive range through detent 3-4 upshift occurs.

Secondly, it is directed through the 3-4 governor valve to apply the overrun servo and band for overrun braking in third.

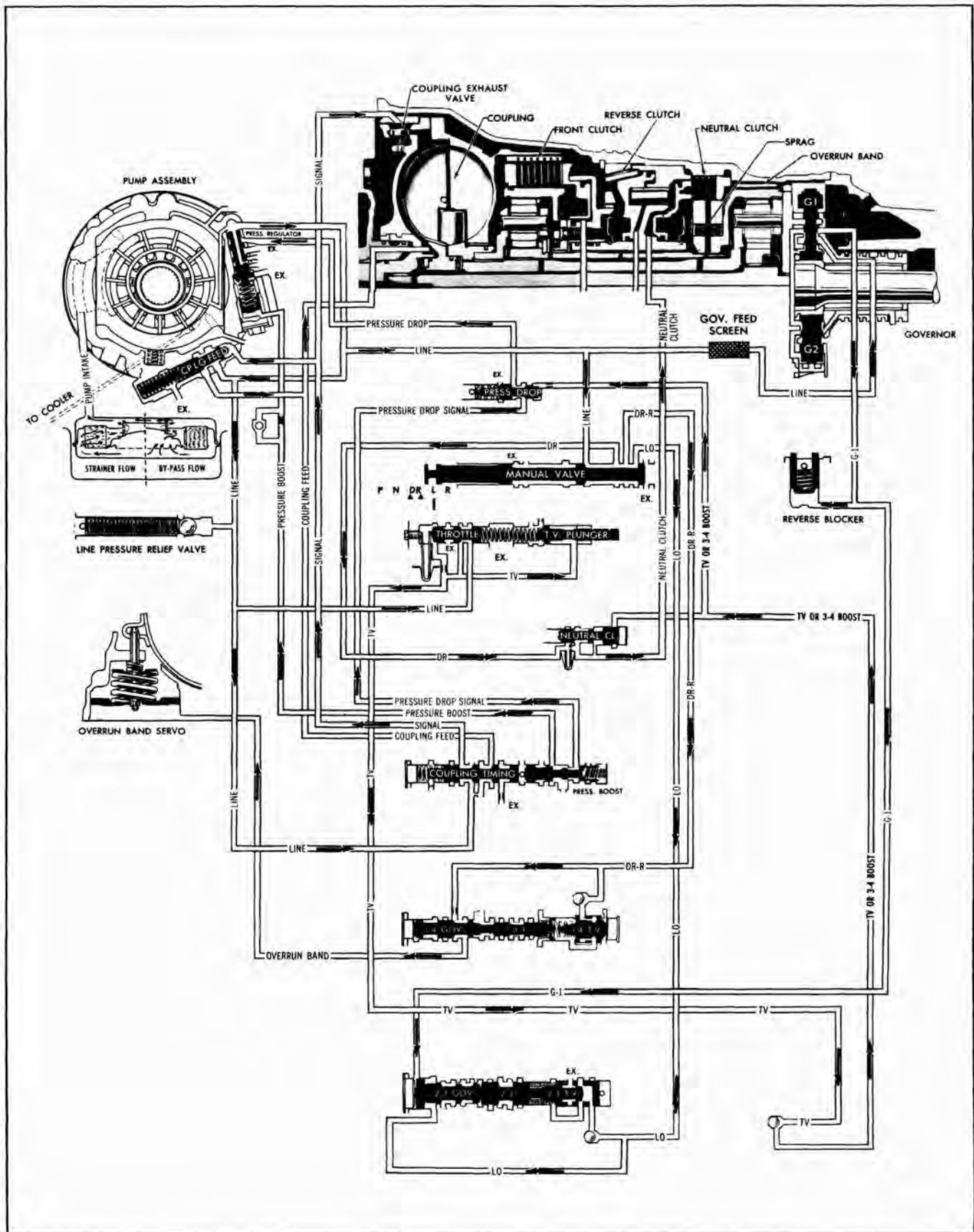


Fig. 29 First and Second—Lo Range

FIRST AND SECOND—LO RANGE

COUPLING —FILLED
FRONT CLUTCH—OFF

REVERSE CONE —OFF
NEUTRAL CLUTCH—ON

SPRAG —EFFECTIVE
OVERRUN BAND—ON

When the selector lever is placed in the Lo position, the Manual Valve is moved to uncover an additional source of pressure, Lo oil.

Lo oil is directed to two locations:

1. Against the large end of the 1-2 Governor Valve to work against the force of G-1 pressure.

2. Through the ball check valve, past the 2-3 T.V. regulator valve to act against the 2-3 valve to further assist in keeping the 2-3 valve closed against G-1 pressure.

The primary purpose of Lo oil is to provide a definite means of preventing a 2-3 upshift from occurring in the Lo range position.

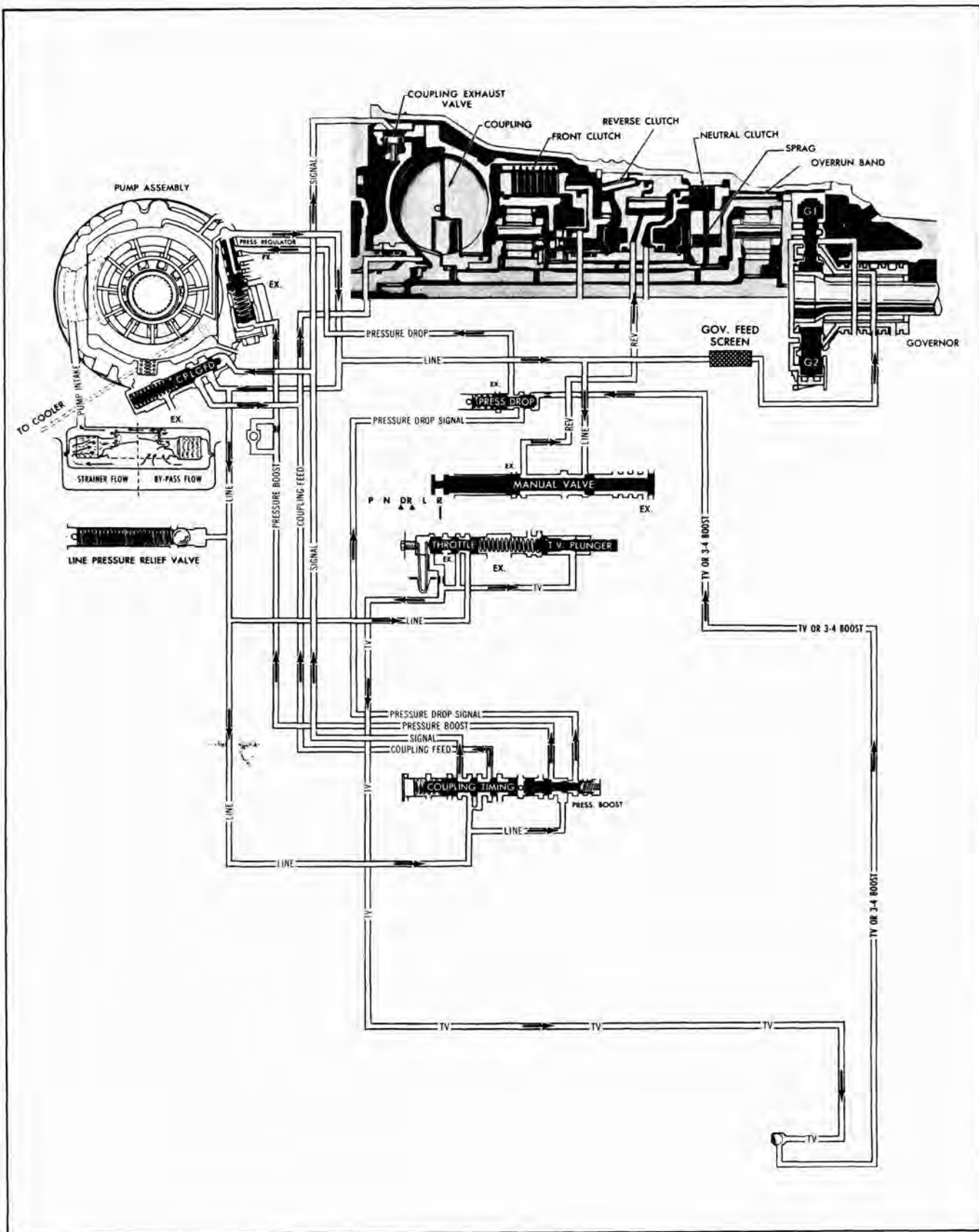


Fig. 30 Reverse

REVERSE

COUPLING — FILLED
FRONT CLUTCH — OFF

REVERSE CONE — ON
NEUTRAL CLUTCH — OFF

SPRAG — INEFFECTIVE
OVERRUN BAND — OFF

When the selector lever is moved to the Reverse position, the manual valve is repositioned to exhaust Drive, Intermediate and Lo Oil. Reverse pressure from the manual valve is allowed to enter the control system.

BASIC CONTROL

Reverse pressure applies the reverse cone.

Line pressure, through the coupling timing valve enters the signal passage to close the coupling exhaust valves and open the coupling feed limit valve for coupling fill.

PRESSURE CONTROL

Pressure control in reverse is identical to that obtained in neutral. Line pressure will vary from 132-180 psi. depending on T.V. pressure.

4-3
DRIVE LEFT—PART THROTTLE ~~2-2~~

COUPLING—EXHAUSTING

4-3
~~3-3~~ At vehicle speeds below approximately 35 mph a downshift can be obtained by depressing the accelerator a given amount. When the accelerator is depressed sufficiently, T.V. pressure acting behind the T.V. plunger is allowed to enter the part throttle T.V. passage. Because the ~~2-3~~ shift valve is open, part throttle T.V. enters the shift ~~3-3~~ passage and acts against the large end of the ~~3-3~~ T.V. valve which causes the ~~2-3~~ shift valve to close.

3-4.

BASIC CONTROL

3-4
As the ~~2-3~~ shift valve closes, ~~2-3~~ and ~~3-4~~ speed coupling fill oil from the ~~2-3~~ shift valve are cut off, thereby causing the coupling to exhaust shifting the transmission back into ~~second~~ gear.

Third.

PRESSURE CONTROL

The pressure remains the same as in third speed.

4-3
DRIVE LEFT—DETENT ~~2-2~~

COUPLING—EXHAUSTING

Fourth
While operating in ~~third~~ gear at speeds below approximately 62 mph, a forced or detent ~~3-3~~ downshift is available. This is accomplished by depressing the accelerator fully.

As this is done, the T.V. plunger is fully depressed

exposing the detent passage to T.V. pressure. Detent pressure which flows past the ball check is directed against the large land of the ~~2-3~~ shift valve.

Detent pressure will overcome the force of G-1 and G-2 pressure and one spring acting in the opposite direction, thereby causing the ~~2-3~~ shift valve to close. The transmission will then shift into ~~second~~ gear.

Third -

DRIVE LEFT—DETENT 3-2

COUPLING —FILLING FRONT CLUTCH—EXHAUSTING

At vehicle speeds below approximately 22 mph in third stage a forced or detent 3-2 downshift can be obtained by depressing the accelerator fully past the detent. This causes the T.V. plunger to open the detent passage to T.V. pressure. Detent pressure then enters the 2-3 shift pressure passage to act against the 2-3 T.V. valve. This causes the 2-3 valve to close against the force of G-1 pressure.

BASIC CONTROL

As the ~~2-3~~²⁻³ shift valve closes, drive oil to the front clutch is cut off and all front clutch pressure in the front clutch and accumulator is compelled to exhaust into the ~~2-3~~³⁻² signal passage. The spring repositions the coupling timing valve to provide coupling signal pressure and coupling feed pressure.

PRESSURE CONTROL

Drive oil acting on the pressure boost valve repositions the valve against exhausting front clutch oil to provide both boost pressure and line drop signal with line pressure at 180 psi.

TIMING CONTROL

During a heavy throttle 3-2 downshift the release of the clutch must be timed to coincide with the filling of the coupling. To accomplish this timing exhausting front clutch oil or 3-2 signal oil is used as follows:

1. It flows through the closed 3-4 valve into the 3-4 passage to rapidly reposition the coupling timing valve for coupling fill.
2. It flows to the 3-2 cut off valve where a rapid exhaust is obtained at light throttle only, but no effect is obtained at heavy throttle 3-2 shifts.
3. It regulates to exhaust through the 3-2 downshift valve that will hold the front clutch torque in third stage but not in second. This feature permits the front clutch to handle the transmission torque in third stage until such time that second stage torque is predominant.
4. It rests against the front clutch exhaust valve until such time that coupling pressure attains a sufficient value to handle torque capacity in second stage.

Coupling pressure then opens the front clutch exhaust valve to exhaust all remaining 3-2 signal or front clutch oil.

DRIVE LEFT—LIGHT THROTTLE 3-2

During a light or closed throttle 3-2 downshift, as the 2-3 valve closes, drive oil to the front clutch passage is cut off; however, all front clutch pressure in the system is exhausted into the 3-2 signal passage. Because T.V. pressure is slight with light throttle, the 3-2 cut off valve is open to exhaust the 3-2 signal oil. This allows an immediate exhaust of front clutch oil.

Drive oil which formerly applied the front clutch when the 2-3 shift valve was open is now directed into the second stage passage which flows through the ball-check valves and supplies a source for pressure boost pressure to rapidly fill the coupling prior to the time that the pressure boost valve has had a chance to be repositioned in the first and second stage position.

DRIVE LEFT—LIGHT THROTTLE 3-4

BASIC CONTROL

The basic control on light throttle 3-4 upshifts is the same as a basic 3-4 upshift.

PRESSURE CONTROL

When a 3-4 upshift is made at light throttle positions giving less than approximately 28 psi T.V. pressure, the 3-2 cut off valve is positioned against T.V. pressure by the spring. This allows 3-4 oil to flow past the cut off valve, thus opening the 3-4 boost valve against the spring. This allows 3-4 oil to flow into the 3-4 boost passage and in turn past a ball check valve to the pressure drop valve. This closes the pressure drop valve cutting off pressure drop. Simultaneously, 3-4 boost oil flows past another ball check valve into the 1st, Reverse and 3-4 boost passage where it supplies an alternate source for pressure boost. Line pressure is then raised to a sufficient value to provide a fast coupling feed. As the coupling fills and reaches operating pressure, coupling feed pressure acts on the end of the 3-4 boost valve to cut off the source of boost pressure. With 3-4 boost cut off, T.V. pressure is again directed through the ball check valve to control the pressure drop valve. Line pressure will then drop to its normal third stage value of 74-105 psi.

PERIODIC SERVICE RECOMMENDATIONS

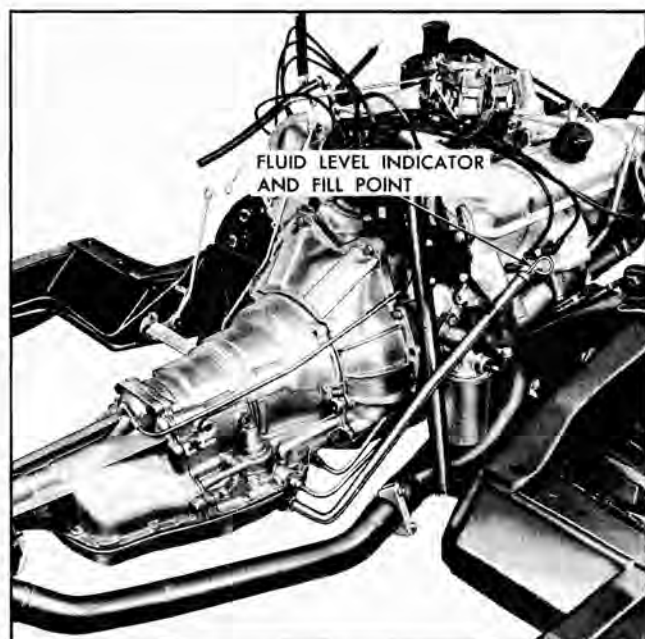


Fig. 32 Fluid Level Indicator

TRANSMISSION FLUID

Transmission fluid level should be checked (with transmission warm) every 4000 miles at time engine oil change is performed. Procedure for checking level is included on page 41 of this manual. Hydra-Matic fluid and the strainer screen should be changed every 25,000 miles. Instructions for draining and refilling appear on page 41.

Since the Hydra-Matic transmission is very sensitive to oil level, special precautions should be taken when checking the oil level otherwise valve buzz or shift malfunctions may be experienced. Do not overfill.

FLUID LEVEL INDICATOR

The fluid level indicator is located in the filler pipe at the right rear corner of the engine (Fig. 32). To

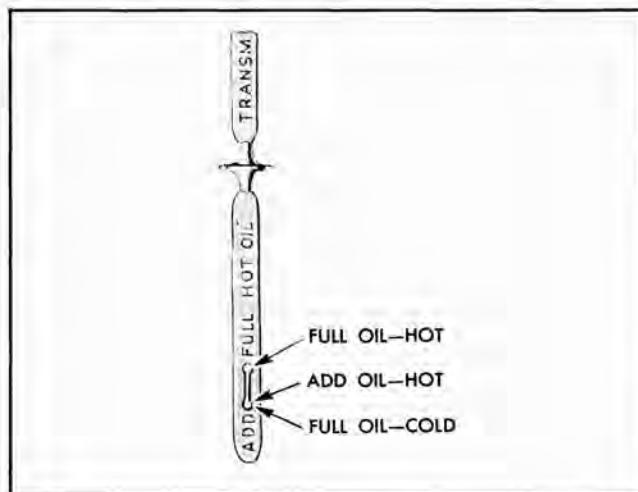


Fig. 33 Indicator Markings

bring fluid level from lower mark to full mark requires 1 pint (Fig. 33).

NOTE: It is important that the handle be turned $\frac{1}{8}$ turn to the right when installed to lock it to the filler tube.

NEW CAR AND 2000 MILE INSPECTIONS

New car and 2000 mile inspections should be performed as outlined on form S6210, "1962 Pontiac New Car Pre-Delivery and 2000 Mile Inspection and Adjustment." When road testing the new car, the following items are important:

1. Neutralizer switch should not start except in park and neutral (page 40).
2. Hydra-Matic indicator pointer should index properly.
3. Fluid level should be to the **FULL** mark with transmission at normal operating temperature (with cold oil fluid level should be at **ADD** mark).

ADJUSTMENTS WITH TRANSMISSION IN CAR

ADJUST THROTTLE CONTROL LINKAGE

CAUTION: Linkage operation will not be satisfactory if binding or excessive wear exists.

1. Remove air cleaner.
2. Loosen both nuts at transmission throttle control rod trunnion (Fig. 34).
3. Adjust engine idle speed to 480-500 rpm in drive range (540-560 with air conditioning).
4. Shut off engine and install linkage adjustment pin J-7687 through holes in throttle control lever and bracket (Fig. 34).

NOTE: Before installing pin, it will be necessary to either remove throttle return check or install tool J-6342-01 over return check so that it will not interfere with linkage adjustment.

5. With throttle valves fully closed against stop (low stop of fast idle cam), loosen lock nut and adjust length of transmission throttle control rod to carburetor (Fig. 34) so that gauge pin is free in hole. Leave pin installed and tighten lock nut securely. Recheck freeness of gauge pin in holes.

6. Push T.V. upper control rod downward until the outer T.V. lever is felt to touch end of travel (Fig. 35).

CAUTION: Make sure that, when lever is in this position, the upper lock nut is not touching trunnion.

7. While holding T.V. upper control in this position, tighten upper and lower trunnion lock nuts finger tight (Fig. 35). Shorten T.V. upper control rod by backing off lower trunnion nut $2\frac{1}{2}$ turns and tighten upper nut securely. Remove gauge pin.

8. Loosen lock nut on carburetor throttle rod (Fig. 34).

9. Adjust carburetor throttle rod to obtain 4.55" clearance from underside of attaching boss on pedal to body toe pan as shown in Fig. 36 (approx. $3\frac{3}{4}$ " to carpet).

10. Tighten lock nut on carburetor throttle rod securely.

11. Remove J-7687, if used, or install throttle return check.

12. Install air cleaner.

13. After throttle linkage adjustment has been made, road test car and tailor adjustment as required by shortening or lengthening the T.V. upper control rod one half turn at a time to obtain the best shift feel.

ADJUST SELECTOR LEVER LINKAGE

1. Put transmission shift control lever in park (P)

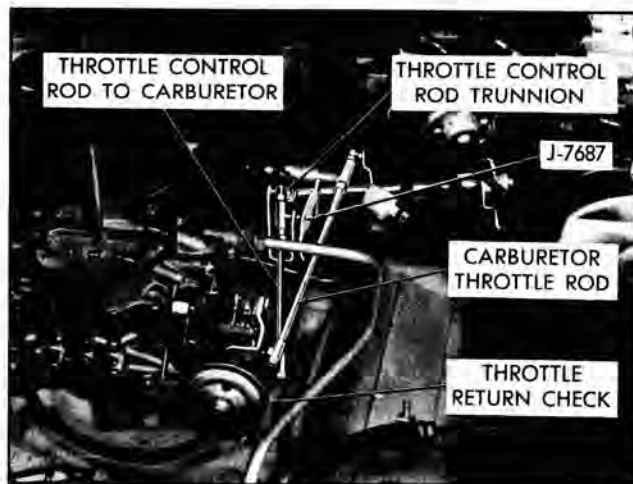


Fig. 34 Linkage Pin Installed

position and, with the gearshift upper control rod trunnion nuts (Fig. 35) backed clear of the trunnion, pull the shift rod down toward the transmission as far as possible. While holding rod in this position, run the trunnion upper nut down to just contact the trunnion. Run lower nut up to contact trunnion and lock nuts securely.

2. After completing above adjustments, check transmission parking lock with car on ramp or grade for positive lock.

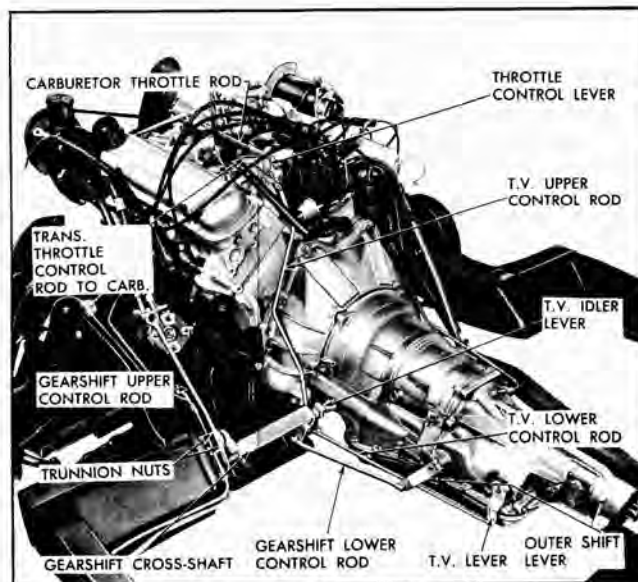


Fig. 35 Throttle Control Linkage

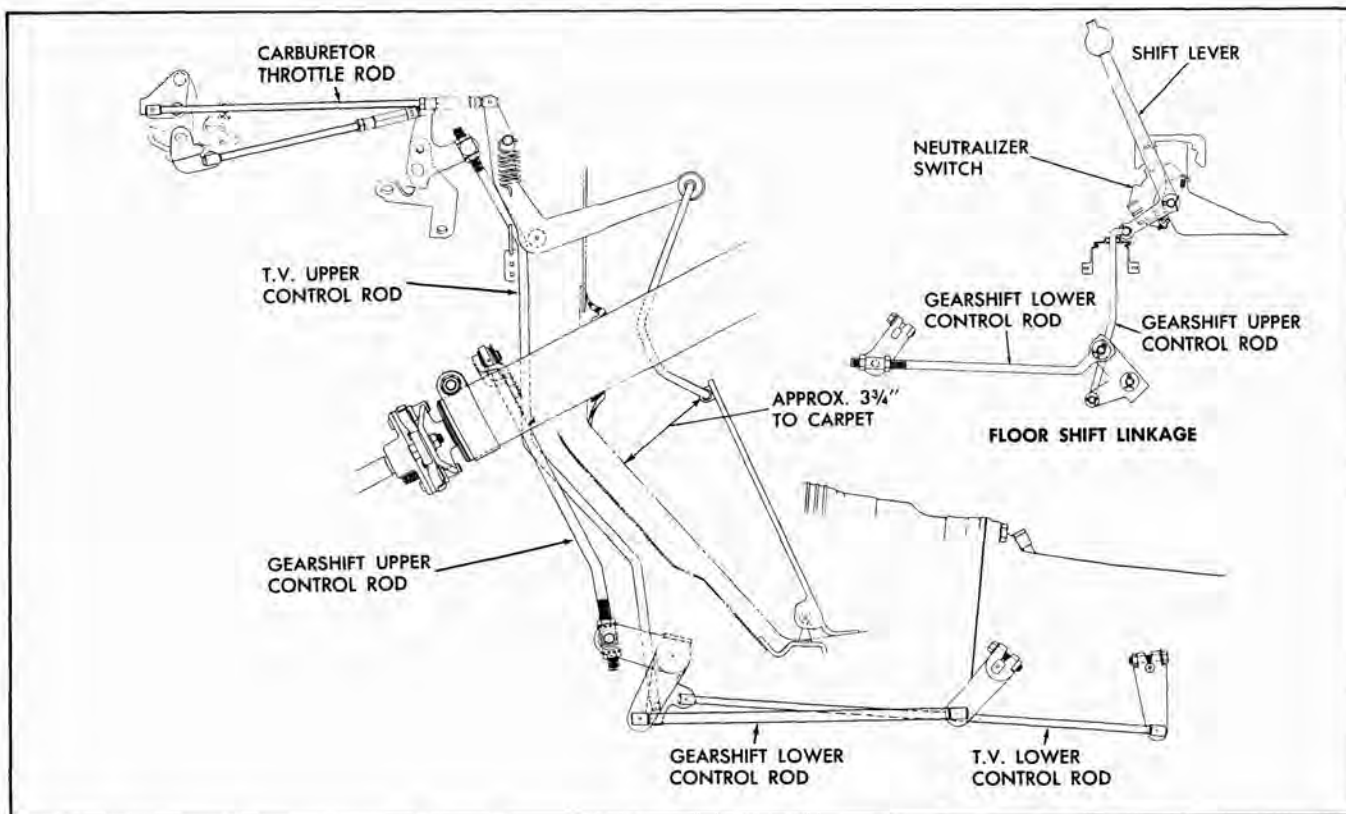


Fig. 36 Accelerator Linkage

3. Place shift lever in Drive Right position and check Hydra-Matic indicator pointer index. If necessary to adjust, loosen check nut above ball stud, adjust index by rotating rod and then lock check nut securely.

FLOOR SHIFT

1. Place shift lever in Park position and, with gearshift lower control rod trunnion nuts backed clear of the trunnion, pull control rod toward rear of car. While holding rod in this position, run both trunnion nuts up to just contact the trunnion, then lock nuts securely.

2. Test transmission parking lock for proper operation with car on slight grade.

3. There is no adjustment for the indicator glass.

To remove floor shift linkage, see "Console and Floor Shift" p. 45.

NEUTRALIZER SWITCH

The neutralizer switch on column shift cars has no adjustment. It should allow the car to be started only in Park or Neutral.

The floor shift neutralizer switch can be adjusted by removing the console, loosening the 2 switch attaching screws, and adjusting it so the car starts only in Park or Neutral.

To remove the console for access to the neutralizer switch see "Console and Floor Shift" p. 45.

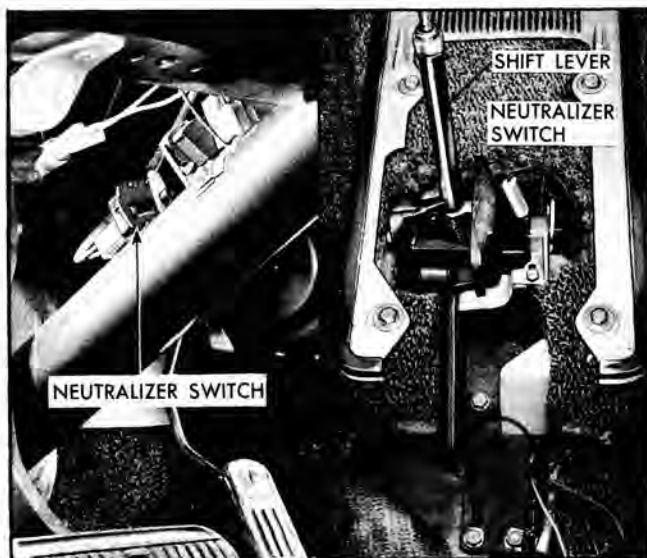


Fig. 37 Neutralizer Switches

MINOR SERVICE AND REPAIRS

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

| SUBJECT | PAGE | SUBJECT | PAGE |
|--|------|----------------------------|------|
| Checking Oil Level | 41 | Rear Seal and Rear Bushing | 42 |
| Fluid Capacity, Draining and Refilling | 41 | Control Valve Body | 43 |
| Pressure Regulator Valve | 42 | Governor | 43 |
| Line Boost Plug | 42 | Parking Linkage | 44 |
| Coupling Feed Limit Valve | 42 | Servo and Accumulator | 44 |
| | | Console and Floor Shift | 45 |

Services outlined in this section can be performed without removing the transmission from the car. Complete procedures are not given for all of these services, since they are covered in detail under "Remove Units from Case" and "Install Units into Case."

CHECKING OIL LEVEL

1. Park car on level floor, place selector lever in park position and run engine until it reaches normal operating temperature (to make certain transmission is at normal operating temperature).

2. With engine idling at normal idle speed, check oil level indicator (Fig. 32) and note reading (Fig. 33). **NOTE:** When adding fluid use Automatic Transmission Fluid AQ-ATF (Type A).

Since the 3-speed transmission is very sensitive to oil level, special precautions should be taken when checking the oil level otherwise valve buzz or shift malfunctions may be experienced. Do not overfill.

FLUID CAPACITY, DRAINING AND REFILLING

CAPACITY

Approximately $4\frac{1}{4}$ quarts of fluid are required to refill transmission after oil pan has been drained as outlined below. When unit has been disassembled and rebuilt, approximately $8\frac{1}{2}$ quarts will be required to refill. Use only Automatic Transmission Fluid (Type A) from containers bearing Armour Institute qualification number "AQ-ATF".

DRAINING AND REFILLING TRANSMISSION

Transmission oil should be changed every 25,000 miles at which time it is also recommended that the

oil pan be removed and the oil intake strainer be replaced.

Drain oil immediately after operation before it has had an opportunity to cool.

To drain oil proceed as follows:

1. Disconnect filler pipe from right side of oil pan and drain transmission.

NOTE: Flushing of Hydra-Matic transmission is not recommended.

2. Remove oil pan and oil strainer.

3. Thoroughly clean oil pan.

4. Install strainer using new pump intake pipe "O" ring if necessary.

5. Affix new gasket to oil pan with petrolatum.

6. Install oil pan, tighten attaching screws securely.

7. Connect filler pipe to oil pan.

8. Remove oil level indicator and wipe it clean.

9. If only the oil pan has been removed, pour 4 quarts of fluid into the transmission. If the valve body has also been removed, use 5 quarts. After a complete overhaul, 8 quarts are required. **BE SURE CONTAINER, SPOUT, OR FUNNEL IS CLEAN.**

10. Start engine and let engine idle (carburetor off fast idle step). Place selector lever in P position and apply hand brake.

11. With transmission warm (approximately 150°F), add fluid to bring level to full mark on indicator.

CAUTION: Do not overfill—foaming will result.

12. Replace oil level indicator. Turn handle $\frac{1}{8}$ turn to lock dipstick to the filler pipe.

PRESSURE REGULATOR VALVE

REMOVAL

1. Remove left-hand inspection cover on case cover.
2. Using $\frac{3}{4}$ " socket, remove regulator valve plug, stop, spring, and valve from pump body.

INSTALLATION

1. Replace "O" ring on plug, if necessary.
2. Place valve plug in $\frac{3}{4}$ " socket with speed handle.
3. Place the line boost plug in the valve plug, hollow end facing out and then set the valve stop on top of the plug. See line boost plug information below.
4. With the spring attached to the regulator valve, place the spring through the plug stop and into the plug. The assembly is now assembled the same way it is installed in the pump.
5. Feed entire assembly through inspection hole and into the pump. Some manipulation may be required to get the valve and the plug stop properly into their bores. Torque plug to 15-20 ft. lbs.
6. Replace inspection cover.

LINE BOOST PLUG

The line boost plug in the pressure regulator valve assembly is supplied in three different bore depths which provide different line boost pressures.

The plugs are distinguished by either a plain side, a ring, or a groove on the side of the cap at the end of the plug. The plain side plug creates normal pressure, the ring plug a higher pressure and the groove plug creates the highest pressure.

If replacement of a plug is necessary, the same size should be used unless a pressure test shows otherwise.

Procedure for checking line boost pressure is as follows:

1. Disconnect control rod to T.V. outside lever.
2. Secure the T.V. lever in the full T.V. position with a length of wire.
3. Install oil pressure gauge in upper of the two test holes in rear bearing retainer.
4. Start the engine and run at 1500 r.p.m. in P position. Main line pressure should be 176-183 psi.
5. Change line boost plug if necessary to obtain correct pressure.

COUPLING FEED LIMIT VALVE

REMOVAL

1. Remove inspection plate on right hand side of case cover.
2. Coupling feed valve plug is located in the lower portion of the pump and may be removed using a $\frac{3}{4}$ " socket and an appropriate extension.
3. The valve plug and the pin will come out with the socket. The spring and valve will usually remain in the pump body and may be removed with long nose pliers.

INSTALLATION

1. Using long nose pliers, carefully insert spring and valves (together) into pump with long nose pliers.
2. Replace "O" ring on plug, if necessary.
3. Place the valve plug into the wrench socket and then place the pin into the plug.
4. Insert the plug and pin through the inspection hole and, with the pin in the center of the spring, screw plug into pump. A speed handle wrench works best for starting the plug. Torque to 15-20 ft. lbs.
5. Replace inspection plate.

REAR SEAL AND REAR BUSHING

To remove the rear seal it is necessary only to remove the propeller shaft and then remove the seal from the rear bearing retainer with a screwdriver.

To replace the seal, coat the outer casing with gasket sealing compound and drive it into the rear extension housing with installer J-5154. Replace propeller shaft.

If removal of both the rear bushing and sleeve assembly and the rear seal is necessary, remove the bushing retaining bolt from the left side of the rear bearing retainer and remove the propeller shaft. Bushing remover J-8845, with slide hammer J-2619, is then fitted into the bushing and tightened. The slide hammer will then remove the bushing and seal in one operation.

To replace the bushing, install it, chamfered end first, into the rear bearing retainer aligning the retaining bolt slot with the retaining bolt hole. Install with soft hammer and drift. Coat the casing of the new seal with gasket sealing compound and install with tool J-5154. Replace propeller shaft.

CONTROL VALVE BODY

REMOVAL

1. Remove oil filler pipe and drain transmission.
2. Remove outer throttle lever from shaft.
3. Remove throttle lever seal using a small screwdriver behind the flange.
4. Remove oil pan and gasket.
5. Remove five valve body to rear bearing retainer attaching bolts.
6. Slide valve body off of pipe assembly and remove from transmission.

CAUTION: Do not let manual valve drop out of the valve body during removal.

INSTALLATION

1. Install manual valve in valve body.
2. Apply petrolatum to valve body pipe ports to prevent injury to "O" rings during assembly.
3. Install valve body in rear bearing retainer by guiding throttle shaft through its opening and then positioning manual valve on pick-up pin (detent lever). Guide valve body over pipe assembly and slide forward to seat seals. Attach with five attaching bolts.
4. Install throttle shaft seal over throttle shaft and into case.
5. Place oil pan gasket on oil pan, using petrolatum, and then install oil pan. Torque to 12-15 ft. lbs.
6. Install oil filler pipe.
7. Refill transmission (Page 41).

GOVERNOR

REMOVAL

1. With car on hoist, remove oil filler tube and drain transmission.
2. Remove oil pan.
3. Remove T.V. lower control rod from T.V. outside lever, remove T.V. outside lever, and gearshift control lower rod from outside shift lever.
4. Remove speedometer cable.
5. Remove hand brake cable guide rod and return

spring from frame crossmember.

6. Remove rear "U" joint clamps and slide propeller shaft rearward to remove from transmission.
7. Place a jack under front of transmission.
8. Remove 2 rear mount support to crossmember nuts.
9. Remove attaching bolts from each end of crossmember and remove the retaining clamp from the rubber insulator.
10. Raise the jack sufficiently for rear mount support to clear crossmember and remove crossmember.
11. Remove control valve assembly (5 attaching bolts). On PA models, compensator valve body must be removed before control valve body.
12. Lower transmission to remove breather pipe clamp and pull pipe out of its bore.

13. Reach into the rear bearing retainer and remove the 4 governor and output shaft attaching bolts. Hold the outside manual lever forward to engage parking brake when loosening bolts. Rotate shaft as necessary to remove all 4 bolts.

14. Mark the edge of the output shaft flange and a corresponding spot on the inside of the case with a grease pencil to match the output shaft with the planet carrier when reassembling. They will fit together in one position only. Do not rotate the carrier after removing output shaft or guide marks will become meaningless.

15. Remove rear bearing retainer to case attaching bolts (2 are inside) and slide retainer rearward away from transmission.

16. Remove rear bearing retainer cover (4 bolts).

17. Reach through access hole with 90° snap ring pliers and unseat the snap ring from the output shaft.

18. Remove output shaft from front of retainer. Do not strike the inner sleeve of the rear bearing retainer with the speedometer drive gear when removing shaft.

19. Press speedometer drive gear off of shaft using press plates J-8904 and plate holder J-6407.

20. Remove governor.

INSTALLATION

1. Place governor and gasket on output shaft.
2. Drive speedometer drive gear onto output shaft with J-6133-A. Rear side of drive gear should be $6\frac{1}{2}$ " from end of shaft.
3. Place snap ring through the access hole in the

rear bearing retainer and slide over end of output shaft as it is carefully installed into the retainer. Seat snap ring in grooves against thrust bearing race.

4. Install rear bearing retainer cover and gasket.
5. Affix rear bearing retainer to case gasket to retainer using petrolatum. Be sure manual shaft retainer is installed.
6. Align guide marks on output shaft flange and case and place unit in position on case assuring that parking linkage is aligned with manual lever.
7. Install 8 rear bearing retainer to case attaching bolts. Use a short bolt in the center hole on each side and one inside the rear bearing retainer. Install breather pipe and breather pipe clip.
8. Install 4 governor attaching bolts rotating shaft as necessary. Hold manual lever forward to engage parking brake while torquing to 19-23 ft. lbs.
9. Raise transmission with jack and install frame crossmember. Brake cables go above crossmember.
10. Lower transmission so rear mount support studs engage the crossmember bracket.
11. Install insulator retainers and 2 attaching bolts at each end of crossmember and install 2 stud nuts on rear mount support.
12. Install propeller shaft by sliding over output shaft and installing the "U" joint clamps on the "U" joint bearings. Bend locking clips.
13. Install control valve body by putting T.V. lever shaft through its seal and positioning the manual valve on its control pin. Slide body carefully forward onto the pipe assembly.
14. Install 5 attaching bolts and torque to 6-8 ft. lbs.
15. Place oil pan gasket on oil pan using petrolatum, and then install oil pan. Torque to 12-15 ft. lbs.
16. Install outside T.V. lever.
17. Install T.V. control rod.
18. Install gearshift lower control rod.
19. Install speedometer cable.
20. Install oil filler pipe.
21. Install brake cable guide and return spring.
22. Refill transmission as described on page 41.

PARKING LINKAGE

The parking linkage may be removed by following steps 1-17 of the governor removal instructions (page 43). Then push the parking pawl pin from the case with a small rod and remove pin and the pawl pin spacer from the case. The rest of the linkage may then be removed as a unit from the rear of the case.

To replace the parking linkage in the case, install the linkage, as a unit, into the case from the rear and insert the parking pawl shaft into its bore. Place the pawl spacer in the case and then install the pawl pin into the case, through the pawl and spacer. Proceed with steps 4-23 of the governor installation procedure (page 43).

SERVO AND ACCUMULATOR

REMOVAL

1. Remove oil filler pipe and drain transmission.
2. Remove oil pan.
3. Remove oil strainer.
4. Remove compensator valve body (three attaching screws and one bolt).
5. Remove remaining servo and accumulator cover attaching bolts and remove cover. The servo release spring pushes the servo piston against the cover, so care is required to prevent dropping servo piston when cover is removed. Accumulator lower spring and possibly the case center support springs will be removed with the cover.
6. Use the accumulator pin to remove both accumulator pistons and the remaining spring.
7. Remove the case center support seal springs and seals if they did not previously fall free.

INSTALLATION

1. It will be necessary to make a retainer to hold the servo piston in place while the cover is being installed. A rectangular piece of stiff sheet metal can be cut so it will hold the servo piston in its bore when bolted to the right rear oil pan bolt hole.
2. Place upper accumulator piston on piston pin and place tapered spring over the pin with large end of spring against piston and piston seal facing away from spring.
3. Install tapered spring, pin and upper piston into case with small end of spring up. Hold these parts in case and install lower accumulator piston, pocket side down.

4. Screw the ends of the case center support seal springs into the seals far enough so they will not fall off easily and install the seals into the case so the springs are suspended below them. Petrolatum may be needed to help hold the seals and springs in place.

5. Place servo return spring over the servo pin and install assembly in case. Retain it in its bore using the previously mentioned tool bolted to an oil pan hole.

6. Place the remaining accumulator spring in position over the accumulator pin and hold in place while installing servo and accumulator cover. Attach cover with three bolts and leave just loose enough to remove servo retaining tool. Make sure the three seal springs enter the case straight.

7. Remove servo retaining tool and install remaining cover bolts except the strainer attaching bolt. Torque to 6-8 lb. ft.

8. Install compensator.

9. Install oil strainer.

10. Fix new gasket to oil pan with petrolatum and install oil pan.

11. Install filler tube and refill transmission according to instructions on page 41.

CONSOLE AND FLOOR SHIFT

REMOVAL

1. Remove four attaching screws and lift console compartment box from console.

2. Remove the two console center bracket to floor attaching screws and the other four console attaching screws.

3. Remove the compartment light switch, indicator bulb, courtesy light connections, and unscrew shift lever knob.

4. Lift console over shift lever and remove toward rear seat.

5. Remove cotter pin from upper control rod and four bracket to floor attaching bolts to remove shift and neutralizer switch assembly.

INSTALLATION

To install, reverse above procedure.

REMOVAL OF TRANSMISSION

Before raising the car on the lift, remove one cable (either one) from the battery, since the starter must be removed, and release the emergency brake.

1. Remove the filler tube and drain the transmission. Push the filler tube up toward its upper bracket out of the way.

2. Disconnect propeller shaft from transmission:

a. Remove "U" bolt nuts, lock plates, and "U" bolts from rear axle drive pinion flange.

b. Use a suitable rubber band or tape to hold bearings on "U" joint journals if tie wire is broken.

c. Slide propeller shaft rearwards off transmission output shaft.

3. Disconnect speedometer cable from speedometer driven gear.

4. Remove gearshift control lower rod.

5. Remove lower end of gearshift control upper rod by removing "E" ring.

6. Remove the 2 cross-shaft bracket to frame attaching bolts and then remove the bracket, cross-shaft lever, and bushing from car.

7. Remove lower end of throttle control transmission rod (engine to transmission idler lever).

8. Remove idler lever to outer T.V. lever control rod.

9. Remove throttle control idler lever.

10. Remove parking brake return spring and brake cable guide hook from frame crossmember.

11. Remove oil cooler lines.

12. Loosen exhaust pipe to manifold bolts about $\frac{1}{4}$ inch.

13. Remove both starter cables.

14. Remove the starter and the splash shield by removing the 2 attaching bolts.

15. Remove bottom cover from bottom of case cover (3 attaching bolts).

16. Remove the 4 bolts holding the flywheel front cover plate to the transmission case cover.

17. Place special automatic transmission jack under transmission and raise it enough to support the transmission.

18. Remove 2 rear mount to frame crossmember nuts and raise transmission so studs clear the crossmember (Fig. 38).

19. Remove the two bolts at each end of the frame crossmember and remove crossmember.

20. Lower the transmission until the jack is barely still supporting it.

21. Remove breather pipe clip bolt and remove pipe from transmission.

22. Using a long wrench extension with a "U" joint, remove the remaining 6 transmission case cover to engine attaching bolts.

23. Raise transmission to its normal position, slide rearward from the engine and flywheel, and lower it away from the car.

24. Remove rear mount to rear bearing retainer attaching screws.



Fig. 38 Rear Mount

REMOVAL OF UNITS FROM TRANSMISSION CASE

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

| SUBJECT | PAGE | SUBJECT | PAGE |
|--|------|---|------|
| Control Valve, Servo and Accumulator | 47 | Torus, Front Unit, and Rear Unit | 52 |
| Rear Bearing Retainer | 49 | Reverse Clutch, Case Center Support | 54 |
| Case Cover, Pump, Torus Cover | 51 | Parking Linkage | 55 |

REMOVAL OF INDIVIDUAL UNITS FROM TRANSMISSION CASE

CONTROL VALVE, SERVO, AND ACCUMULATOR

1. Attach transmission holding fixture J-8763 to transmission case (Fig. 39). Tighten handscrews moderately so case is not distorted making removal of case center support difficult.
2. Remove outer shift lever and T.V. lever.
3. Place transmission and holding fixture into bench adaptor J-6115-A rotating transmission so that bottom pan is up.
4. Remove 21 oil pan attaching screws.
5. Remove oil pan and gasket.
6. Remove oil strainer attaching bolt.
7. Remove oil strainer from transmission.
8. Inspect and remove, if necessary, oil strainer to case "O" ring seal with small blade screwdriver.
9. Pry throttle shaft seal from side of rear bearing

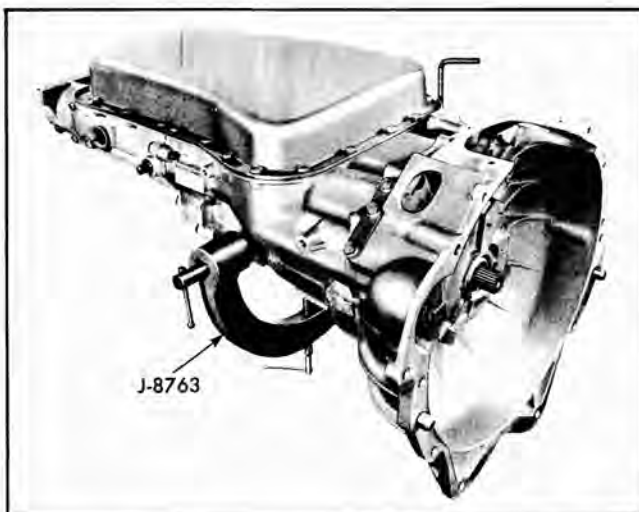


Fig. 39 Transmission in Holding Fixture

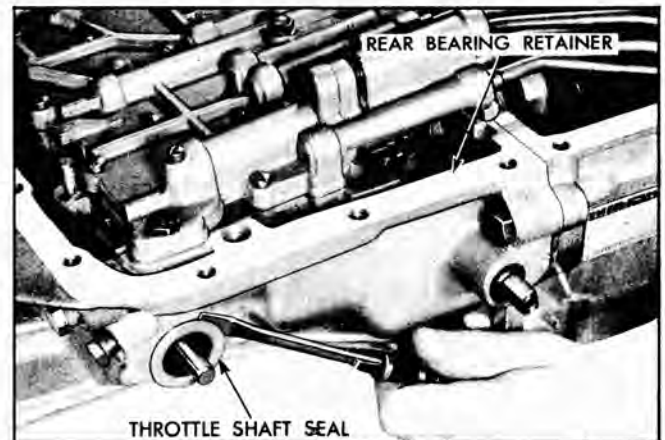


Fig. 40 Removing Throttle Shaft Seal

retainer (rear extension housing) with small screwdriver (Fig. 40).

10. Remove 1 bolt and 3 screws attaching the compensator valve body assembly to the servo and accumulator cover.

11. Remove the compensator valve body assembly (Fig. 41). PA compensator body (not shown) is larger than others.

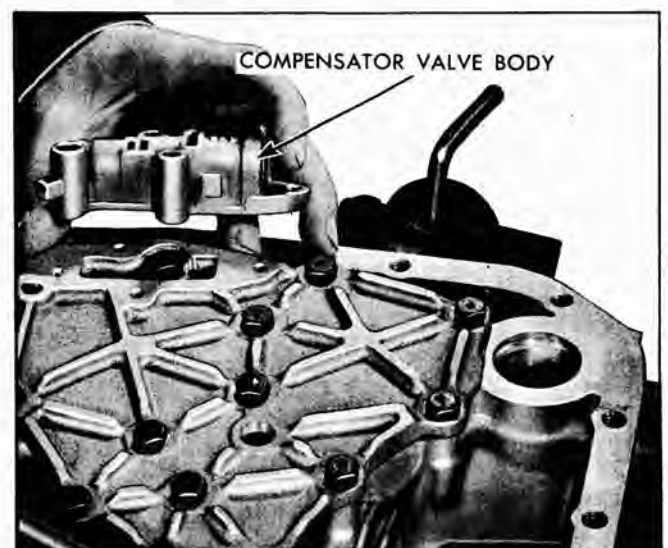


Fig. 41 Removing Compensator Valve Body

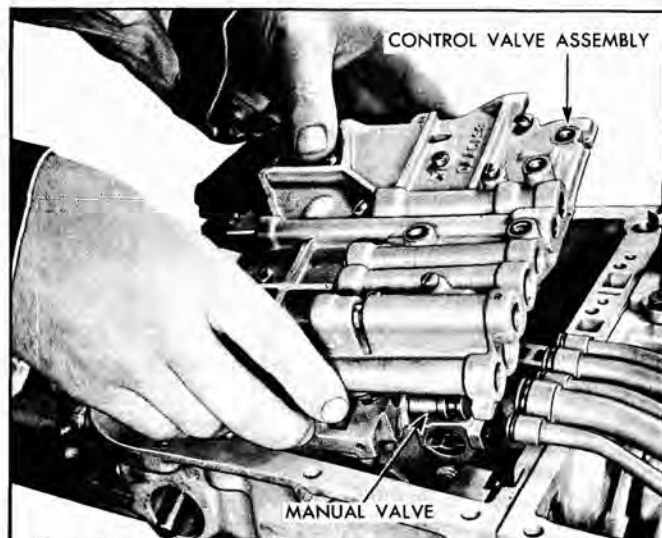


Fig. 42 Removing Control Valve Body

12. Remove five (5) control valve assembly attaching bolts and carefully remove control valve assembly from the pipes and rear bearing retainer being careful not to drop the manual valve (Fig. 42).

13. Remove manual valve from control valve assembly and governor feed screen from rear bearing retainer (Fig. 43).

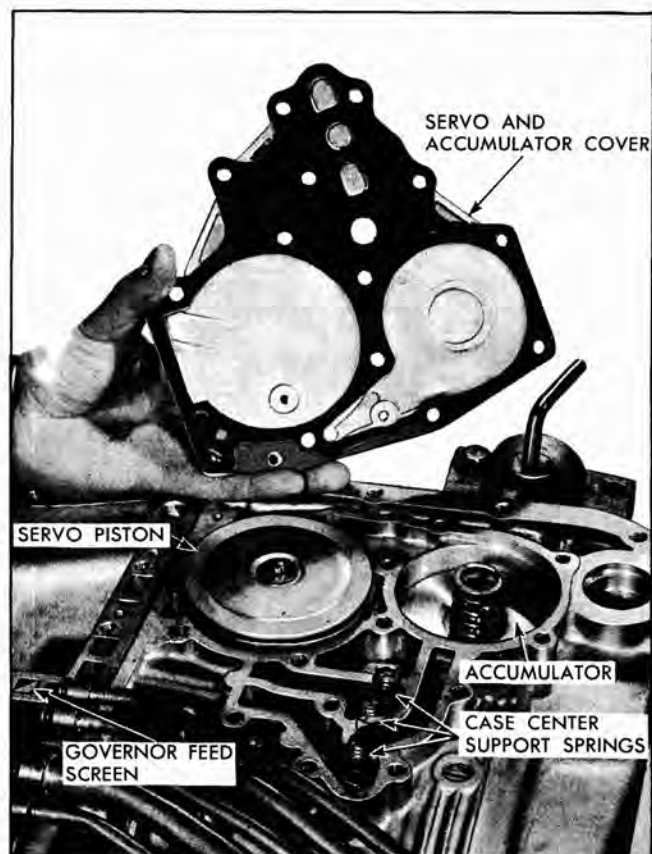


Fig. 43 Removing Servo and Accumulator Cover

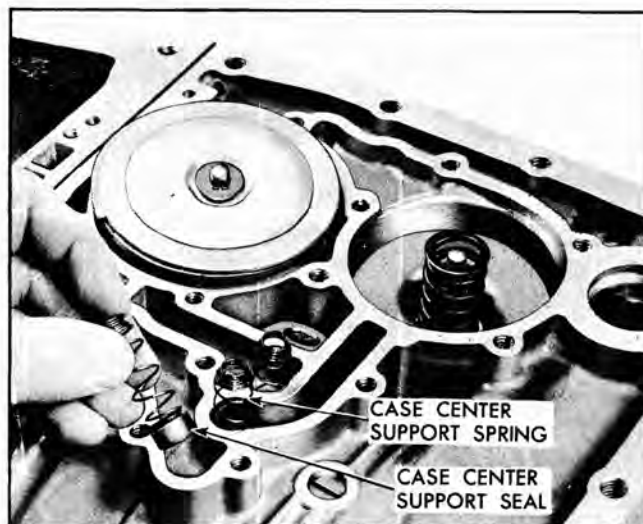


Fig. 44 Removing Case Center Support Seals

14. Remove the 12 remaining servo and accumulator cover attaching bolts.

15. Remove the servo and accumulator cover (Fig. 43).

16. Remove the servo and accumulator cover gasket.

17. Remove the three (3) case center support springs and seals (Fig. 44). (Seals may have remained in transmission case.)

18. Remove the servo piston assembly from bore in case (Fig. 45).

19. Remove the servo release spring.

20. Remove the lower accumulator spring (Fig. 46).

21. Remove lower accumulator piston.

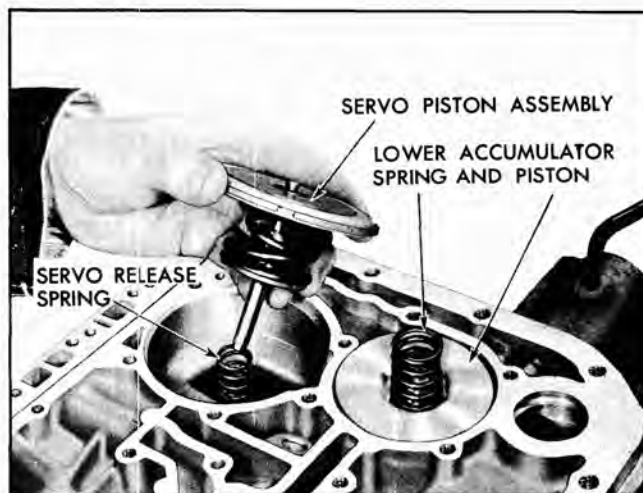


Fig. 45 Removing Servo Piston

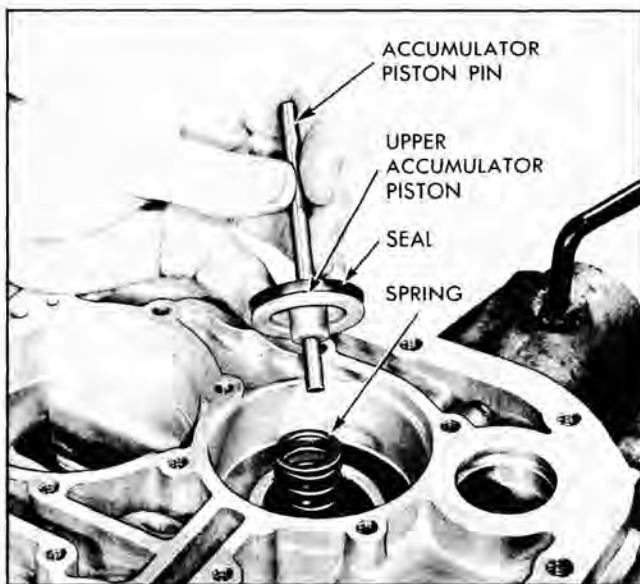


Fig. 46 Removing Accumulator Piston

22. Remove the lower accumulator piston pin and, using the stem of the accumulator pin as a tool, remove the upper accumulator piston (Fig. 46).

23. Remove the upper accumulator spring.

24. Remove the ring and seal from the lower and upper accumulator pistons.

If transmission is to be completely disassembled, measure front unit end travel as follows:

FRONT UNIT END PLAY CHECK

a. Remove one case cover to case attaching bolt and install dial indicator support J-6126 into transmission case (Fig. 47).

b. Assemble end play adapter J-8865 on the input shaft of the torus cover.

c. Clamp dial indicator J-8001 on bolt and index indicator with end of tool J-8865.

d. Position a screwdriver through case, behind the flange on the output shaft (Fig. 47).

e. Gently pry forward on output shaft to position units forward.

f. At the same time move handle on end tool and record end play.

g. End play should be .004" to .022". If end play is not within these limits, carefully inspect thrust bearings, thrust washers, and races when removing units from case to determine source of end play error and replace them if necessary.

25. Remove the pipe assembly attaching bolt and seal from front side of transmission case cover.

26. Withdraw the pipe assembly and seals from transmission. Multiple seals may have remained in transmission.

REAR BEARING RETAINER

1. Remove bushing and sleeve assembly and rear seal only if replacement is necessary. If only the seal is to be removed it may be driven rearward and out with a screwdriver and hammer.

To remove both the bushing and seal, proceed as follows:

a. Remove the rear bearing retainer bushing and sleeve assembly retaining bolt.

b. Remove the rear seal and the bushing and sleeve assembly from the rear bearing retainer. Use tool J-8845 and J-2619 slide hammer, or large drift (Fig. 48).

2. Rotate the transmission to the vertical position with the output shaft up.

3. Remove speedometer driven gear (one attaching bolt).

4. Remove eight rear bearing retainer to case at-

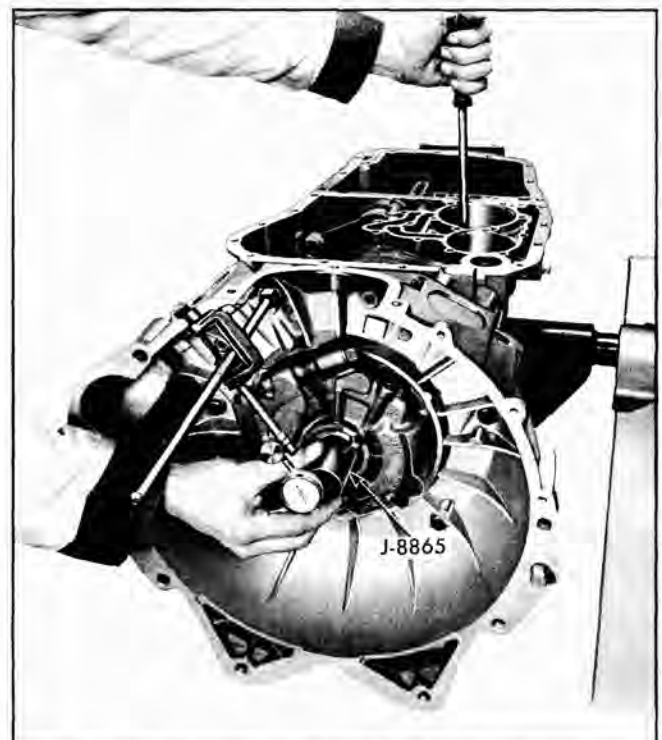


Fig. 47 Check Front Unit End Play

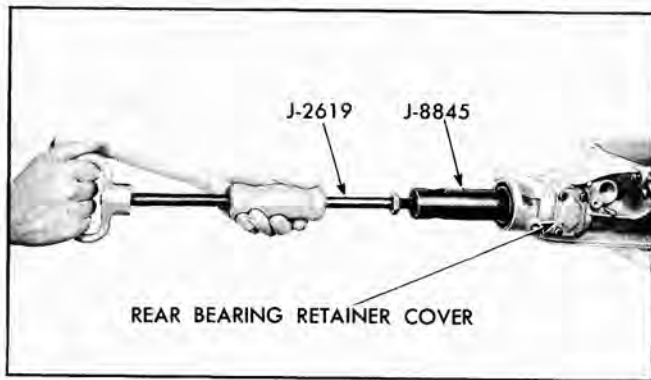


Fig. 48 Removing Rear Seal

taching bolts (six on outside and two on inside of rear bearing retainer).

5. Remove the rear bearing retainer cover and gasket by removing four (4) rear bearing retainer cover attaching bolts (Fig. 48).

6. Reaching through the rear bearing retainer access hole unseat the rear output shaft snap ring using J-8872 and move upward a short distance (Fig. 49).

7. Carefully remove the rear bearing retainer and

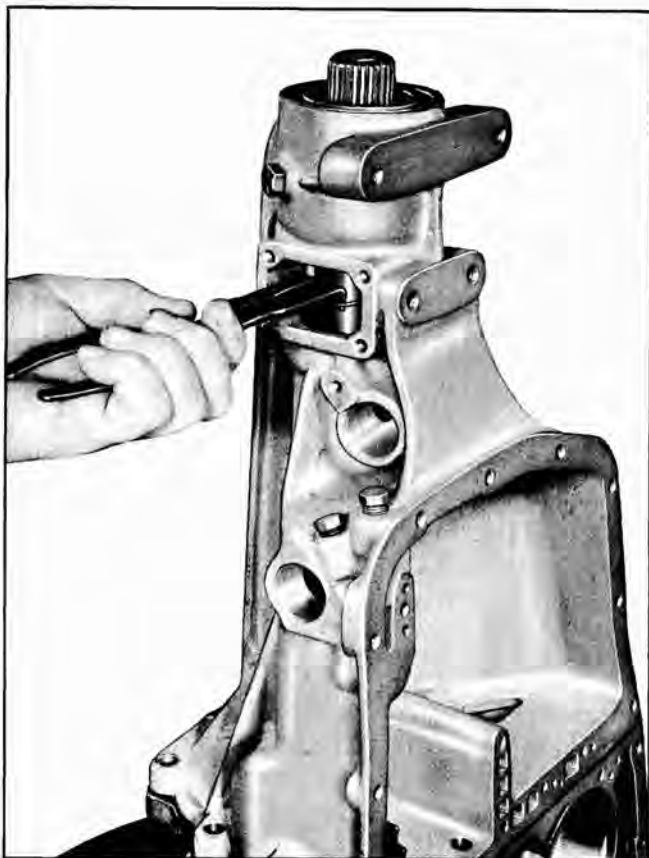


Fig. 49 Unseating Output Shaft Snap Ring



Fig. 50 Marking Output Shaft for Reassembly

gasket upward over output shaft. This will slide rear output shaft snap ring from output shaft.

NOTE: Care should be exercised to prevent manual shaft retainer from falling out of front face of rear bearing retainer.

In lifting retainer over output shaft, use care to prevent the retainer sleeve from striking the speed drive gear on the output shaft.

8. Remove the dislodged snap ring from rear bearing retainer.

9. Remove the remaining snap ring from the output shaft.

10. Remove the 4 governor attaching bolts.

11. Raise governor high enough to mark one dowel pin and nearest tooth on the output shaft flange with grease pencil for ease in reassembling. **CAUTION:** Do not abuse machined surface on output shaft flange (Fig. 50).

12. Remove the output shaft assembly from transmission by lifting straight up.

13. Remove speedometer drive gear from output shaft by installing it in press plates J-8904 and holder J-6407 and pressing gear off of shaft (Fig. 51).

14. Remove the governor assembly and gasket over output shaft.

15. Rotate the transmission to the vertical position with input shaft up.

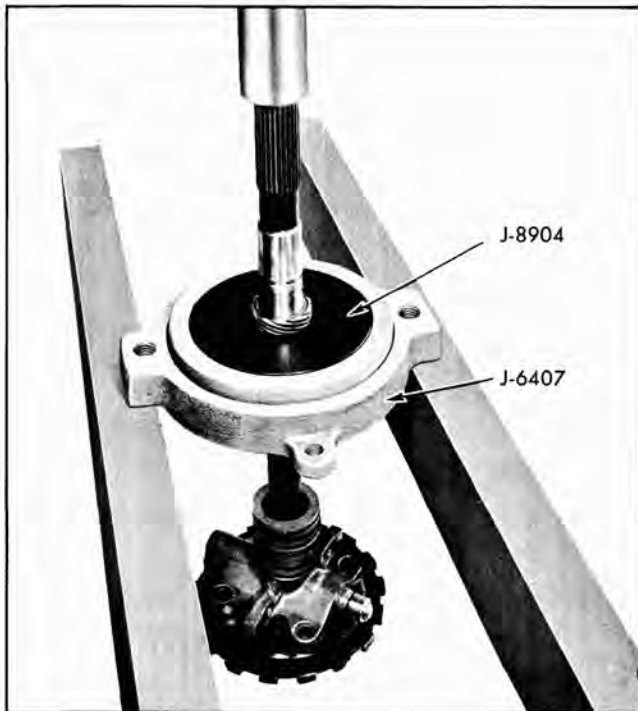


Fig. 51 Tool Set-Up for Removing Speedo Gear

CASE COVER, PUMP, AND TORUS COVER

1. Remove 5 remaining large and 3 small case cover to case attaching bolts and washers. Two of the small bolts are attached from the case side of the case cover.
2. Remove case cover and pump assembly by lifting straight up. Slight tapping with plastic hammer may be necessary. Remove thrust bearing race from torus cover if it did not remain with case cover.
3. Remove case cover to case gasket and discard.

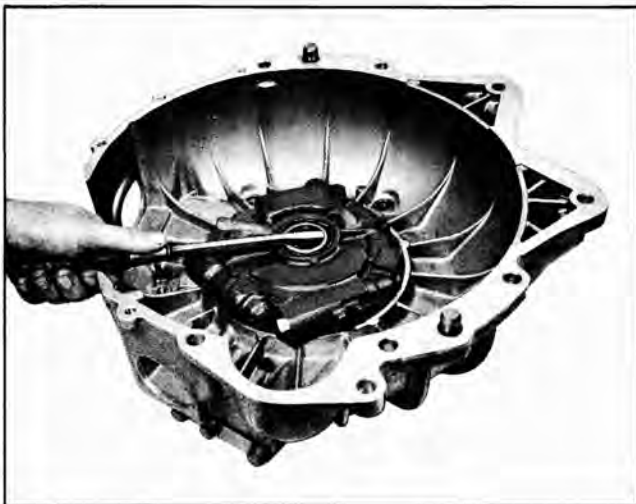


Fig. 52 Removing Front Seal

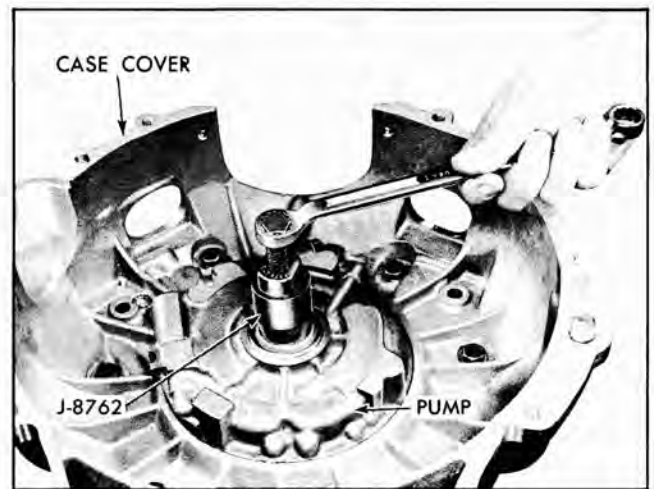


Fig. 53 Removing Front Seal Using J-8762

4. If replacement is necessary, remove and discard front seal by bending the entire outer edge of the seal in toward the center with a punch or screwdriver. The seal can then be removed with pliers or by prying out with a long screwdriver as shown in Fig. 52.

If difficulty is encountered, the case cover can be replaced on the case, held by two attaching bolts, and optional tool J-8762 used as follows:

- a. Install front seal remover J-8762 over input shaft (Fig. 53).
- b. Thread main body of tool into front seal securely with wrench.



Fig. 54 Removing Torus Cover Bolts

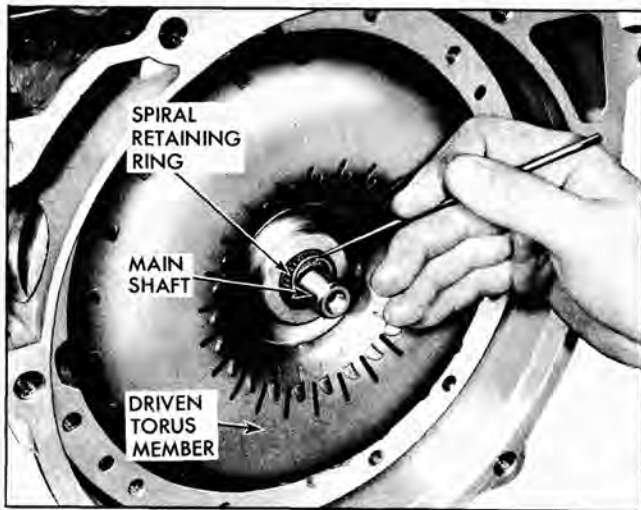


Fig. 55 Removing Mainshaft Spiral Ring

- c. Tighten top end of tool until seal is removed.
- d. Remove tool and seal.
5. Remove 12 torus cover attaching bolts by moving wrench handle across center shaft so the torus cover has little tendency to rotate (Fig. 54).
6. Remove torus cover from torus assembly by lifting input shaft straight up. Some effort may be required for this operation.
7. Remove and discard torus cover to drive member steel gasket. This gasket cannot be re-used.
8. Remove race, thrust bearing, and race from either torus cover or torus member. Parts may have remained with either unit.

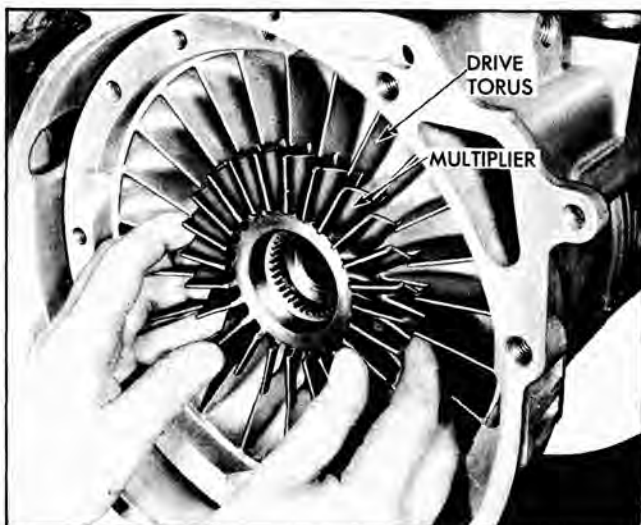


Fig. 56 Removing Multiplier and Drive Torus

9. Rotate transmission to horizontal position with bottom up.

TORUS, FRONT UNIT, AND REAR UNIT

1. From the front of the transmission, remove the driven torus member to main shaft spiral snap ring, with a small pointed tool (Fig. 55).
2. Push main shaft through driven torus member and remove driven torus member.
3. Remove race, thrust bearing and race from drive torus member. Some of these parts may have been removed with the driven torus member.
4. Remove the mainshaft and sun gear from the rear of the transmission.
5. Remove the bearing and race from the rear carrier. These parts may have remained with the main shaft.
6. Remove sun gear from mainshaft by pushing toward splined end of shaft. Gear is cushion mounted and may be easily removed from shaft.
7. From the front of the transmission, remove the drive torus member and torque multiplier as a unit (Fig. 56).
8. Remove the torque multiplier by pushing from rear of the drive torus member.
9. If necessary, remove oil seal rings from driven torus member and torque multiplier (three rings).
10. Remove front carrier to carrier shaft snap ring (Fig. 57).

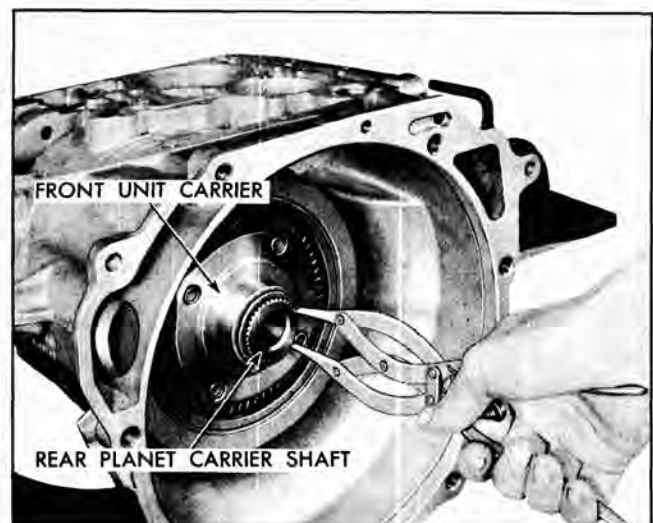


Fig. 57 Removing Front Unit Carrier Snap Ring

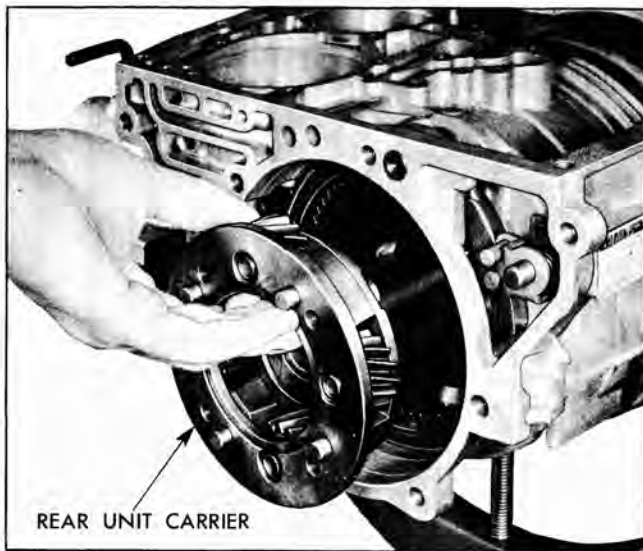


Fig. 58 Removing Rear Unit Carrier

11. Remove the front unit carrier assembly.
12. Remove race, thrust bearing and race. Some of these parts may have remained with the carrier.
13. Remove the rear carrier and shaft assembly from the rear of the transmission (Fig. 58).
14. Remove the roller thrust bearing, and race from the rear unit carrier assembly. These parts may have remained with the rear unit internal gear.
15. Remove the rear unit internal gear and sprag assembly including retainer. Make certain parking pawl is disengaged (Fig. 60). There is no rear internal gear to front sun gear shaft snap ring.

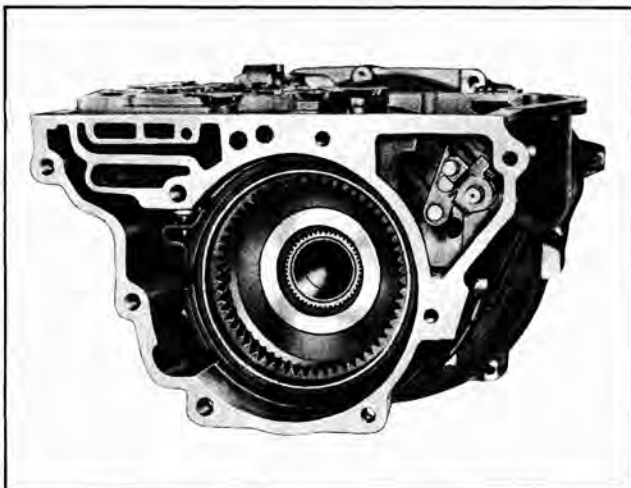


Fig. 59 Rear Internal Gear

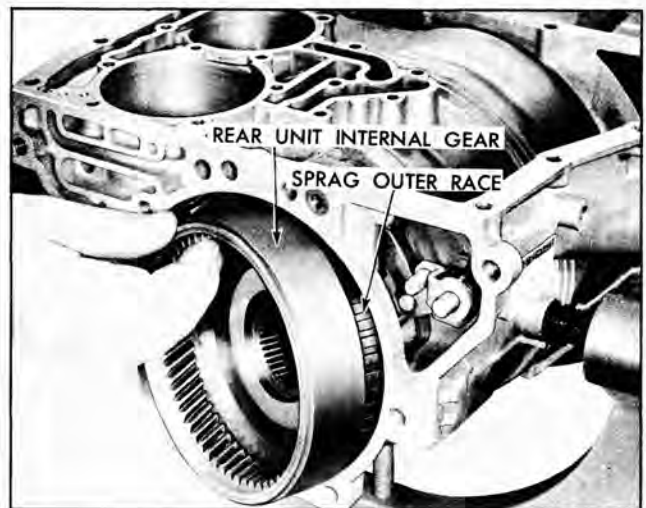


Fig. 60 Removing Rear Internal Gear

16. Rotate the transmission 90° to the vertical position—front of transmission up. **CAUTION:** Transmission parts are loose and will drop out if transmission is not rotated as described.

17. Remove the front unit sun gear assembly, race, roller thrust bearing and race (Fig. 61).

18. Remove the front unit internal gear and clutch assembly from the front of transmission.

19. Remove the fibre composition thrust washer from the front unit clutch drum. The thrust washer may have remained on the case center support.

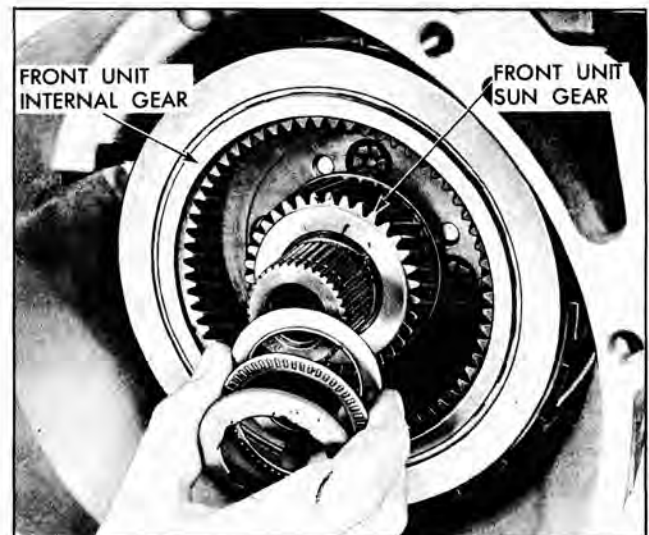


Fig. 61 Front Sun Gear to Front Carrier Thrust Bearing and Races



Fig. 62 Removing Reverse Cone

REVERSE CLUTCH AND CASE CENTER SUPPORT

1. Remove the reverse stationary cone to case snap ring.

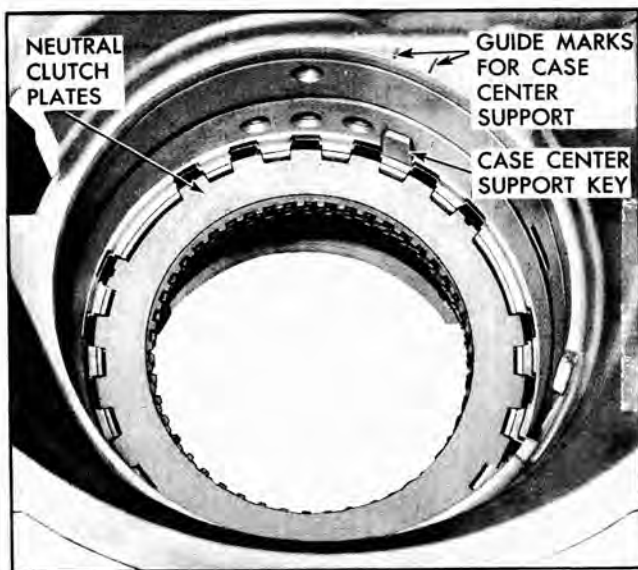


Fig. 63 Neutral Clutch Plates and Case Center Support Key in Case

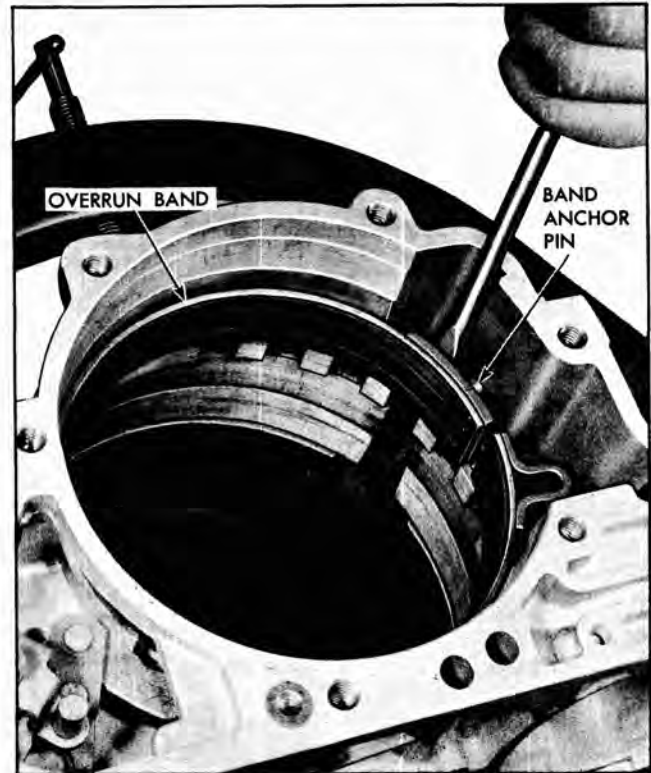


Fig. 64 Removing Overrun Band from Anchor Pin in Case

2. Using reverse cone puller J-8768, remove the reverse cone and reverse stationary cone. Position tool under lugs of reverse cone and pull upward (Fig. 62).

3. Remove the reverse and neutral piston and support assembly. If assembly is tight in case, tap gently with soft hammer from rear.

4. Remove the case center support key from the transmission case (Fig. 63).

5. Remove the neutral clutch plates (4 drive-composition and 4 driven-steel) and clutch backing plate from transmission case.

6. Rotate the transmission to the vertical position with rear end up.

7. Remove the band assembly by unhooking from the anchor and lifting upward (Fig. 64).

PARKING LINKAGE

If necessary, remove the parking pawl linkage as follows:

8. Remove parking pawl pin from case.
9. Remove parking linkage assembly from case by lifting parking bracket shaft and entire assembly out of the hole in the rear of the case (Fig. 65).
10. Remove parking pawl spacer from case.

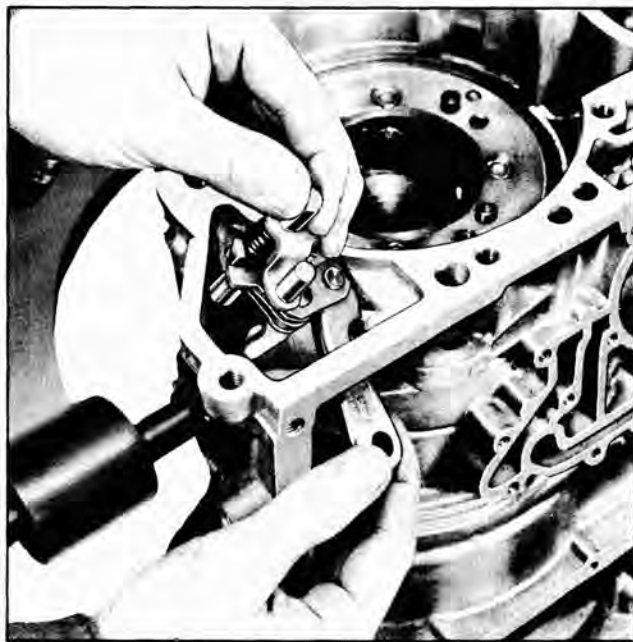


Fig. 65 Removing Parking Linkage

DISASSEMBLY, INSPECTION, AND ASSEMBLY OF INDIVIDUAL UNITS

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

| SUBJECT | PAGE | SUBJECT | PAGE |
|------------------------------------|------|-----------------------------|------|
| Case | 57 | Governor | 69 |
| Case Cover and Pump | 57 | Parking Linkage | 70 |
| Torus Cover | 62 | Rear Bearing Retainer | 71 |
| Front Clutch Assembly | 63 | Servo and Accumulator | 72 |
| Case Center Support | 64 | Control Valves | 73 |
| Rear Internal Gear and Sprag | 67 | Torus Members | 79 |
| Roller Clutch | 68 | Planet Carriers | 79 |

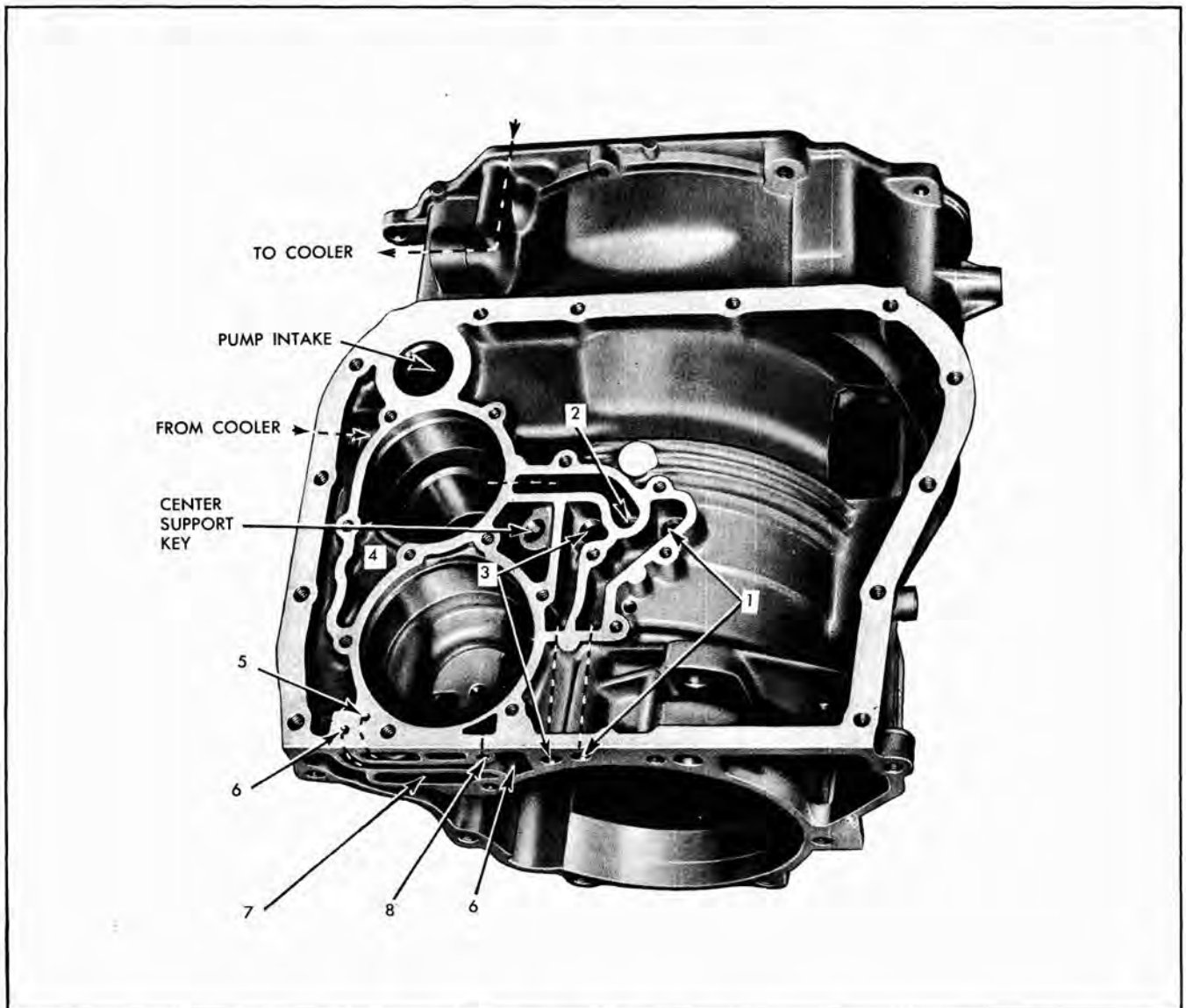


Fig. 66 Case Passages

1. Neutral Clutch
2. Front Clutch

3. Reverse Clutch
4. Compensator

5. Drive
6. T.V.

7. Front Clutch
8. Overrun Band

Clean all parts thoroughly. Make thorough inspection of all parts to determine which should be replaced. It is very important to distinguish between parts that are simply "worn in" and those worn to the extent that they affect the operation of the unit. Spring and thrust washer specifications are given on pages 94 through 96. Refer to these specifications when inspecting parts and replace only those that are worn, broken or damaged.

1. Case should be thoroughly cleaned, blow out case passages with suitable air nozzle. Inspect bolt threads for cross threading.

2. Inspect case for leaks or inter-connected passages by using air gun or smoke (Fig. 66).

3. Inspect case for hair line cracks.

4. Inspect case to strainer neck "O" ring seal for cuts, hardness or pinched seal.

5. If parking linkage was not removed inspect parking pawl pin and parking brake links for excessive wear or bind.

6. Inspect parking bracket spring for collapsed coil, breaks, and correct position of the tang end of spring on parking brake lever.

7. Inspect case center support to case seals for hardness or cracks. Inspect the seal springs for collapsed coils and good fit of seals on spring ends.

CASE COVER AND PUMP

DISASSEMBLY

1. Loosen 6 case cover to pump attaching bolts approximately 4 turns.

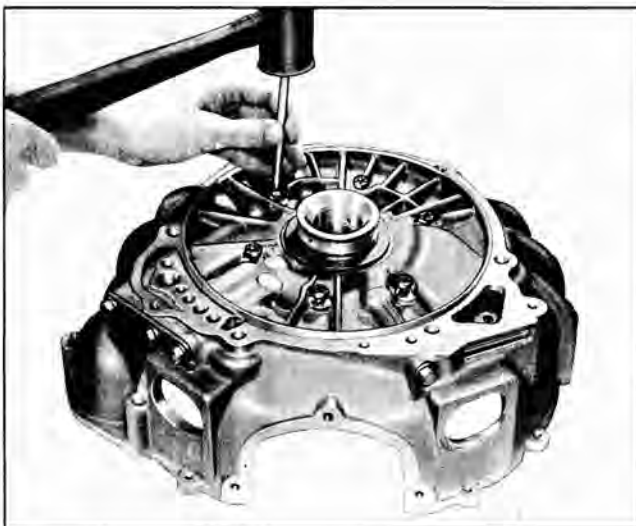


Fig. 67 Removing Pump from Case Cover

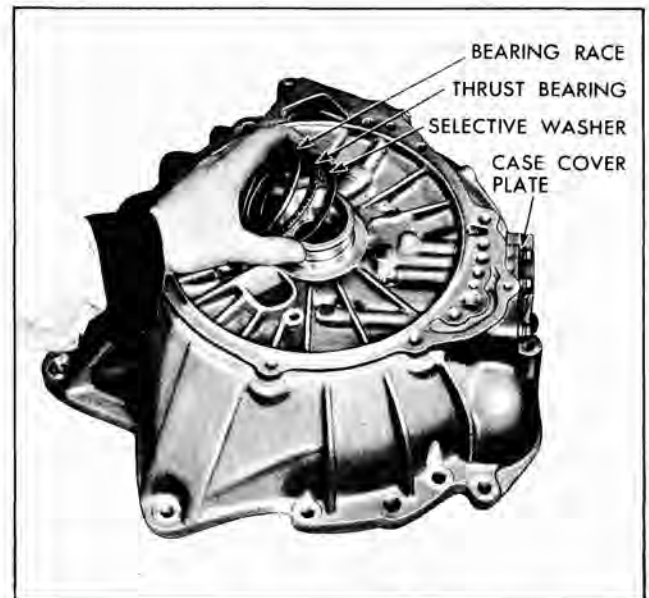


Fig. 68 Case Cover Thrust Bearing and Selective Washer

2. Support cover so that pump is off bench and gently tap loosened bolts to remove pump from case cover (Fig. 67).

3. Remove 6 bolts from case cover and remove pump.

4. Remove 2 hook type oil seal rings from case cover.

5. Remove race, thrust bearing and selective washer from case cover (Fig. 68). Race may have been previously removed. **NOTE:** Every second roller space of the thrust bearing is empty.

6. Remove 3 case cover plate to case cover bolts and washers (Fig. 69).

7. Remove case cover plate and gasket.

8. Remove the pipe plug from the case cover.

INSPECTION

1. Clean thoroughly and inspect all oil passages for interconnected passages, or restrictions. Use air gun and smoke (Fig. 70).

2. Inspect the bushing for tight fit or excessive wear.

3. Inspect the case cover for cracks or porosity.

4. Inspect the rings and ring grooves for nicks or burrs.

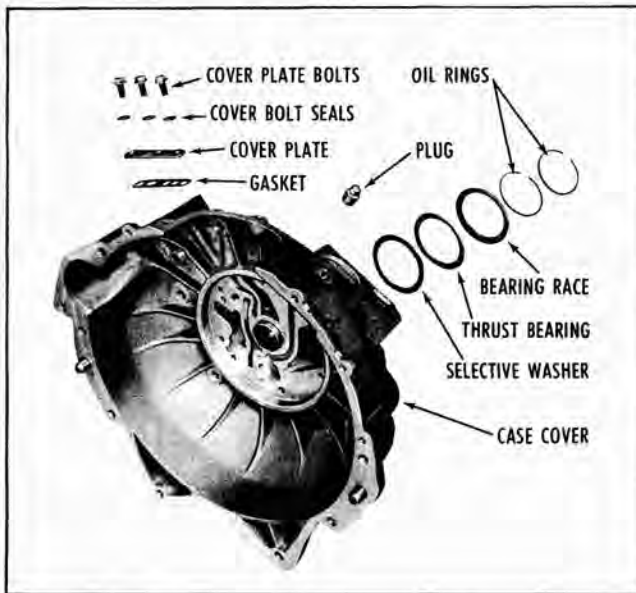


Fig. 69 Case Cover—Exploded

5. Inspect the case cover plate bolts (3) for leaks or cross thread, discard cover plate gasket.

6. Discard case cover to case gasket.

7. Inspect cooler passage connection threads in case cover for cross thread. Worn threads may be repaired with one of the commercial thread repair kits available.

8. Inspect the case cover to coupling cover thrust bearing and the two bearing races. The bearing will only contain every second roller.

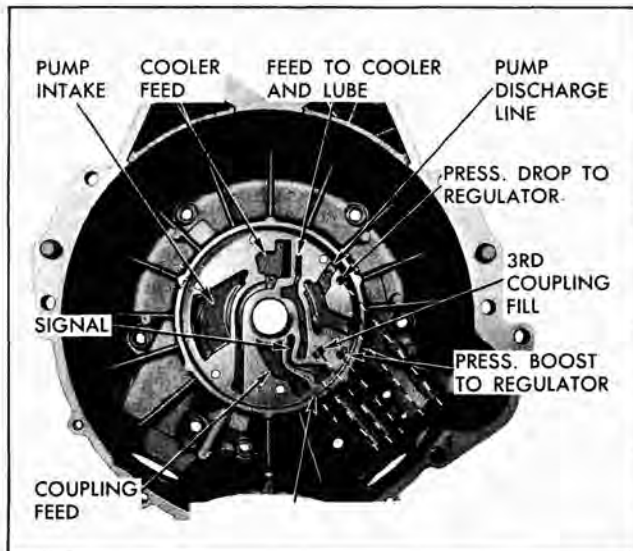


Fig. 70 Case Cover Oil Passages

ASSEMBLY

1. Install case cover plate and gasket with 3 attaching bolts and seal washers. Torque to 18-20 ft. lbs.

2. Install the pipe plug in case cover. Torque to 6-7 ft. lbs.

3. Install selective washer over tower of case cover.

4. Install thrust bearing and cupped race—cup side over bearing on case cover.

5. Install 2 hook type oil seal rings on tower.

Pump to case cover installation Page 61.

PUMP

DISASSEMBLY

1. Inspect and, if condition indicates replacement is necessary, remove pump to cover seal ("O" ring).

2. Remove the pump cover to body attaching screw (Fig. 71).

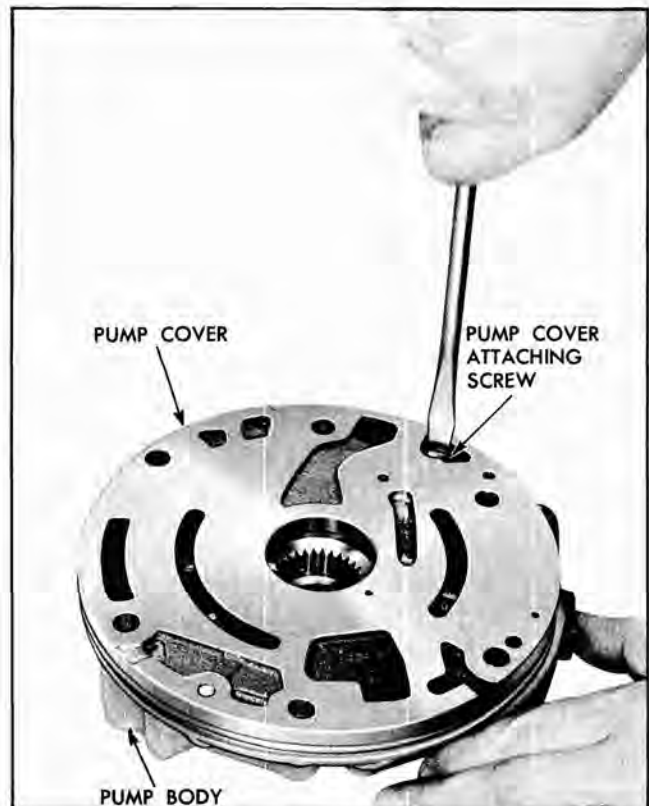


Fig. 71 Removing Pump Cover from Pump

3. Remove the pump cover from the pump over roll pin—do not pry to remove. **CAUTION.** Do not lose the small check ball that is in the line boost hole in the pump cover.

4. Remove the top vane guide ring, rotor, 11 vanes and bottom vane guide ring (Fig. 75).

5. Remove the pump slide by compressing slide against priming springs and lift up on opposite end (Fig. 72).

6. Remove the inner and outer priming springs.

7. Remove the coupling feed limit plug and "O" ring.

8. From the same bore remove the coupling limit spring, guide pin and valve.

9. Remove the pressure regulator plug assembly and "O" ring.

10. Remove the line boost plug from the pressure regulator plug.

11. Remove the line boost plug stop from pump.

12. Remove the pressure regulator valve spring and valve by inserting snap ring pliers into spring.

13. If necessary, remove rubber cushion from pressure regulator valve.

INSPECTION

1. Inspect all oil passages in the pump body (Fig. 73) and cover (Fig. 74) for dirt or restrictions, using tag wire and compressed air.

2. Check fit of slide in the pump body, slide should move freely.

3. Inspect (11) pump vanes for excessive wear at

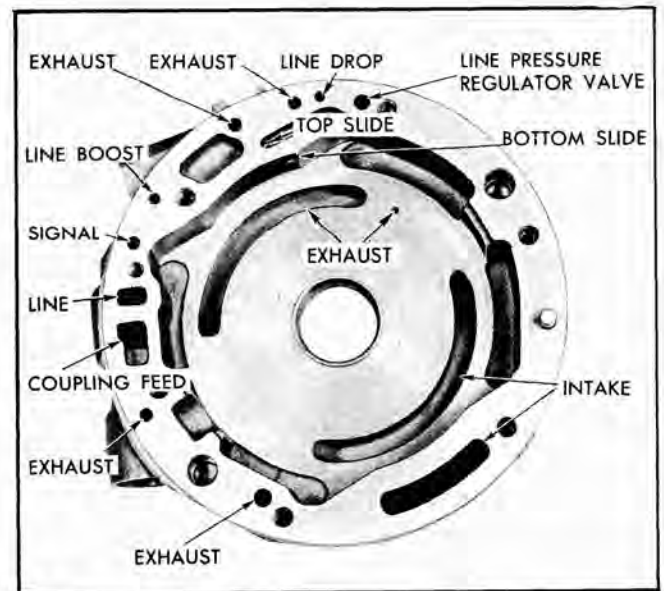


Fig. 73 Pump Body Oil Passages

the guide ring contact point. The vanes will show bright spots at the two wear points. This is normal and should not be considered unusable, unless there are deep score marks on the vanes, which will usually indicate foreign material has found its way into the pump and other related parts will indicate scoring.

4. Inspect the pump rotor for scoring, check the splines for nicks, burrs.

5. Inspect the pressure regulator valve for scoring, nicks, burrs. Be sure the regulator valve moves freely in bore.

6. Inspect the coupling feed limit valve for nicks, burrs. Be sure valve moves freely in bore.

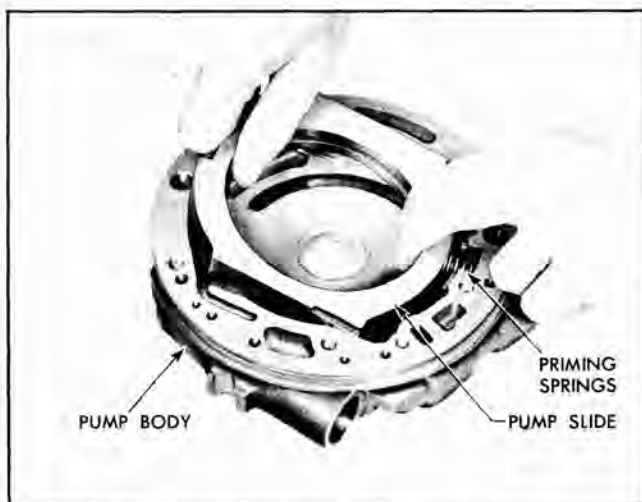


Fig. 72 Removing Pump Slide

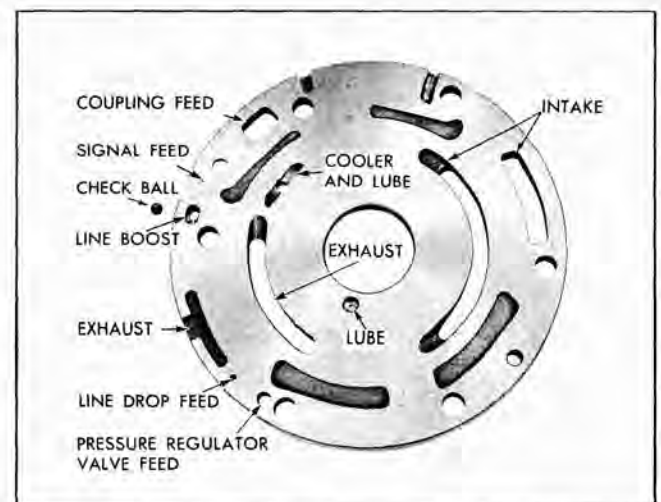


Fig. 74 Pump Cover Oil Passages

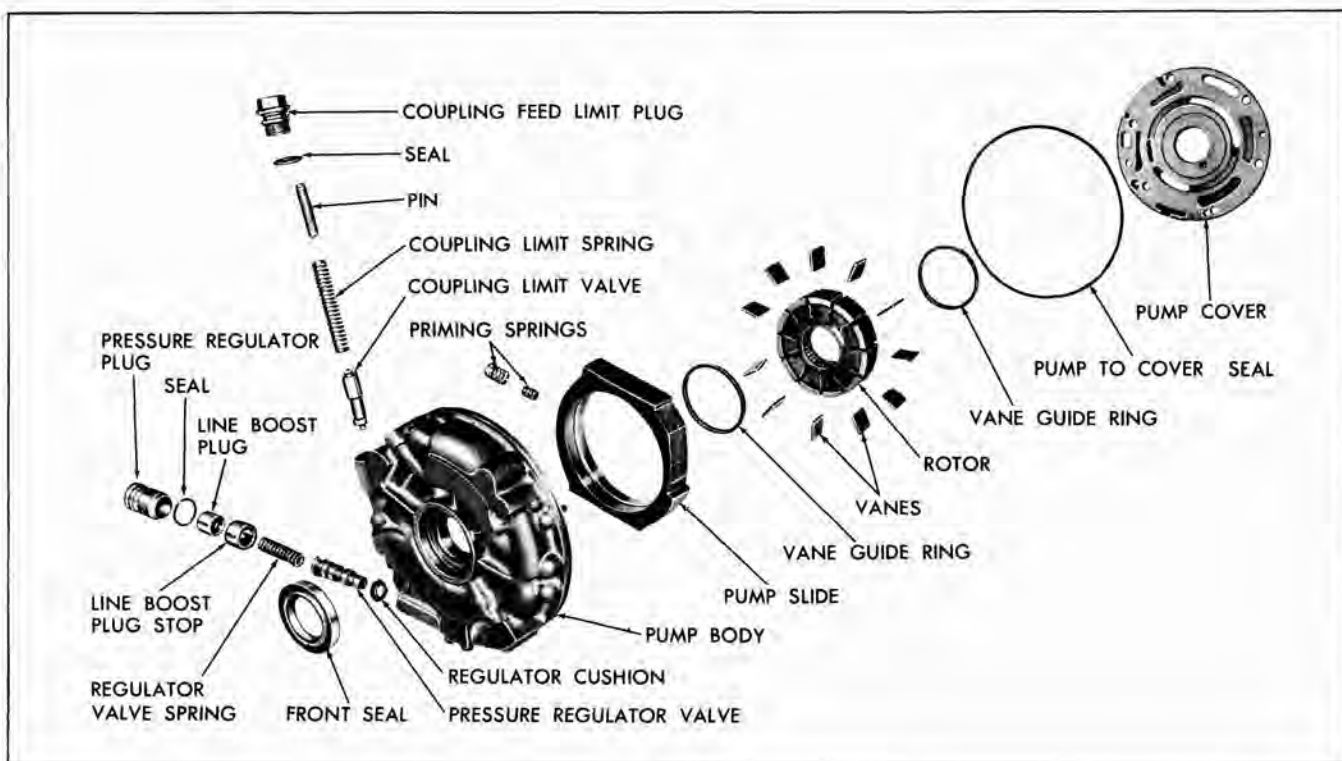


Fig. 75 Pump Assembly—Exploded

7. Inspect the pressure regulator valve spring for distortion or collapsed coil.

8. Inspect the inner and outer primary spring for distortion, collapsed coil.

9. Replace the pump to case cover "O" ring.

10. Check coupling feed limit valve spring for distortion or collapsed coil.

11. Inspect coupling feed limit valve plug for cross thread.

12. Inspect coupling feed limit valve plug "O" ring seal for cuts or damage.

ASSEMBLY

1. Install new cushion on pressure regulator valve if previously removed, and install pressure regulator spring on valve.

2. Install pressure regulator valve and spring in bore of pump.

3. Install pressure regulator stop into pump over spring.

4. Install new "O" ring on pressure regulator plug, if condition warrants.

5. Install line boost plug into pressure regulator plug, cup side out.

6. Install plug assembly into pump. Torque to 15-20 ft. lbs.

7. Install coupling limit valve, spring and pin into pump.

8. Install new "O" ring on coupling feed limit valve plug, if condition warrants.

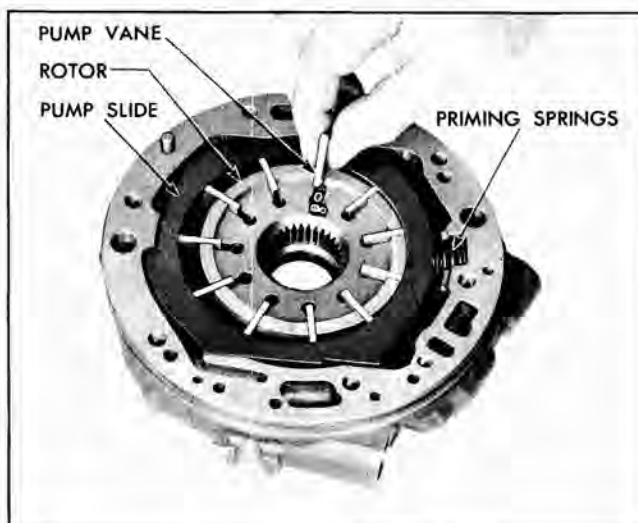


Fig. 76 Installing Pump Vanes

9. Install coupling feed limit valve plug into pump. Torque to 15-20 ft. lbs.

10. Install inner and outer pump priming springs into bottom cavity of pump.

11. Assemble slide into pump body by compressing slide against priming springs at lower end until slide can be fully installed into pump (Fig. 72).

12. Install bottom guide ring into pump cavity.

13. Install pump rotor (shoulder side down) in pump pocket over guide ring.

14. Install 11 vanes into rotor. Install the vanes so that the ring wear pattern on the edge of the vane is against the guide ring (Fig. 76).

15. Install top guide ring on rotor.

16. Retain the line boost check ball in its hole with petrolatum (Fig. 74).

17. Install pump cover over roll pin and secure with cover to pump retaining screw. Torque to 6-8 ft. lbs.

18. Install pump to cover square cut seal ring on pump, if removed.

ASSEMBLE PUMP TO CASE COVER

1. With case cover on bench, open side up, lay

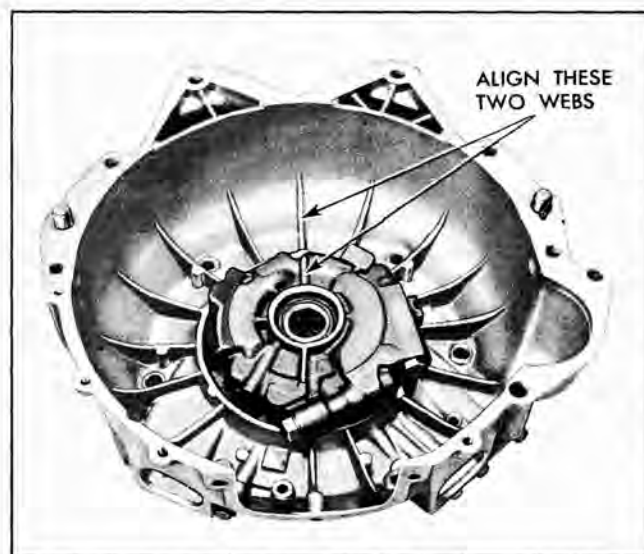


Fig. 77 Aligning Pump in Case Cover

pump in its recess with coupling feed limit plug and pressure regulator plug facing their access holes.

2. Align the top structural web of the pump exactly with the top web in the case cover (Fig. 77). Start one pump attaching bolt from under side of cover to assure proper alignment before pushing pump to bottom of its recess in the the cover.

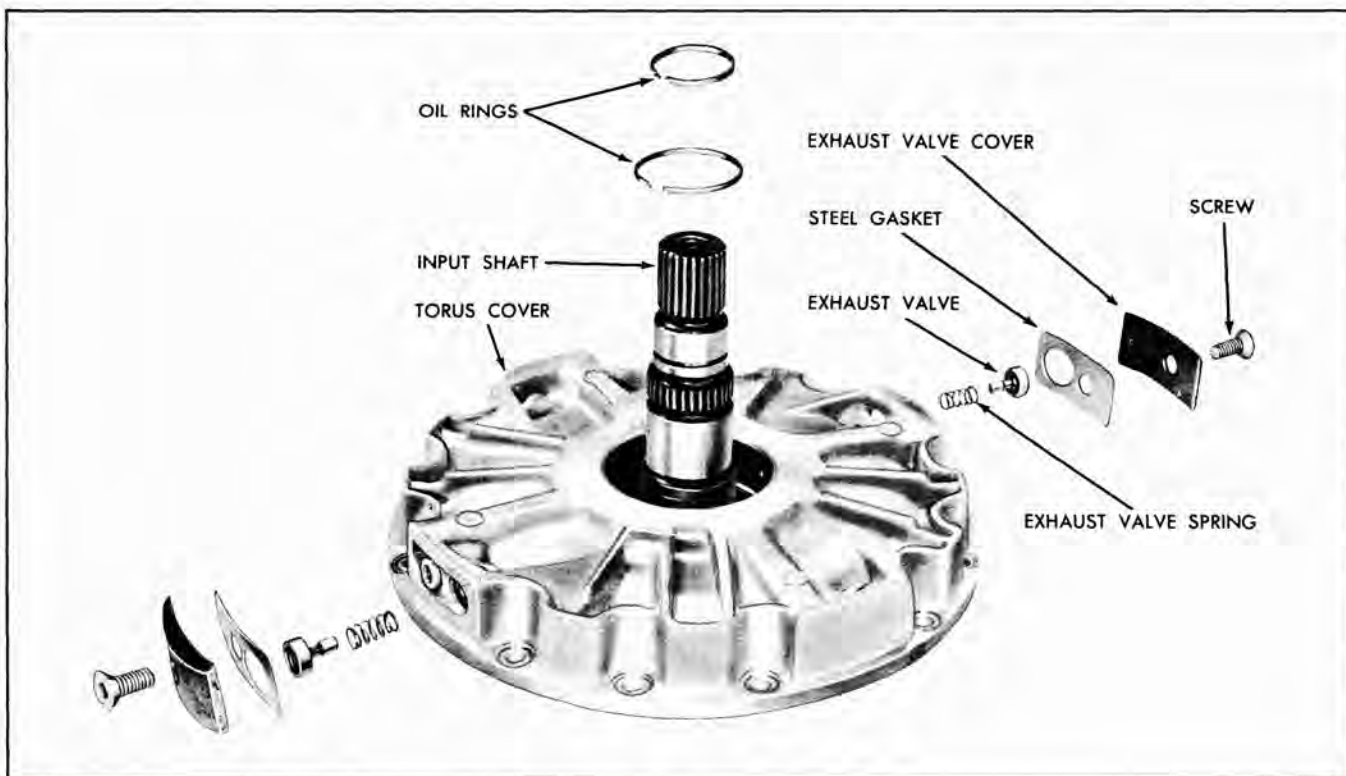


Fig. 78 Torus Cover—Exploded

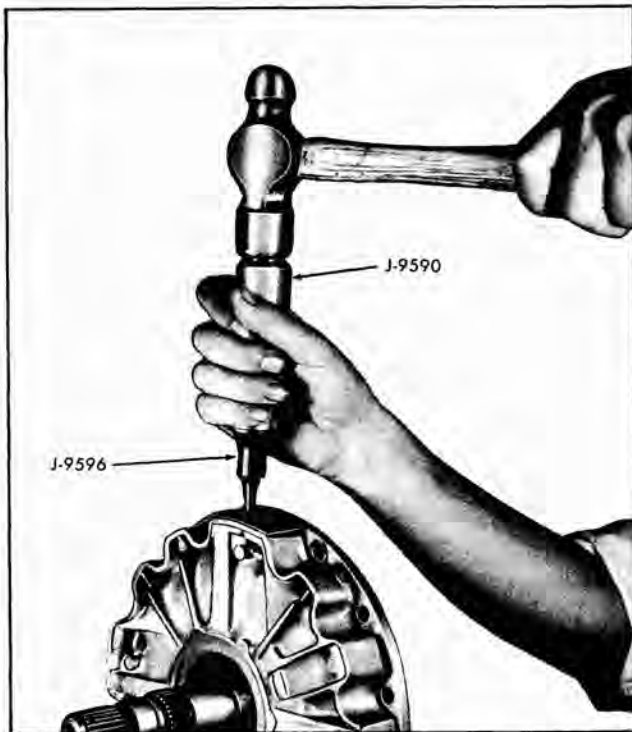


Fig. 79 Removing Exhaust Valve Covers

3. Install six case cover to pump attaching bolts from the rear side of the case cover. Torque to 15-18 ft. lbs.

Installation Page 87

TORUS COVER

DISASSEMBLY

1. Inspect and remove if necessary, 2 hook type oil rings from input shaft (Fig. 78).
2. Remove torus exhaust valve cover screw with a clutch head socket. Difficult screws may be removed using J-9590 and J-9596 (Fig. 79).
3. Remove exhaust valve cover, steel gasket, valve and spring. Discard the gasket.
4. Repeat operation for second exhaust valve.

INSPECTION

1. Inspect splines and snap ring grooves for nicks, burrs. Check for broken rings.
2. Use tag wire and check coupling signal passages for restriction.
3. Inspect coupling cover exhaust valves for nicks, burrs. Be sure valves move freely in bore.

4. Check exhaust valve spring for distortion or collapsed coil.
5. Replace coupling exhaust valve cover gasket.
6. Inspect cover for cracks or porosity.
7. Inspect the coupling cover to driven torus thrust bearing and race.
8. Inspect the mainshaft pilot bushing for excessive wear and tight fit.

ASSEMBLY

1. Install exhaust valve spring and valve.
2. Install exhaust valve retaining tool J-6122 (Fig. 80).
3. Install cover and new torus cover exhaust valve gasket and retaining screw, using a clutch head socket. Torque to 19-23 ft. lbs.
4. Repeat above operation for second exhaust valve.
5. Install 2 hook type oil rings on input shaft.

Installation Page 85

FRONT CLUTCH

DISASSEMBLY

1. Remove the thrust washer from the front clutch assembly if it has not been removed (Fig. 81).
2. Install entire assembly in soft-jaw vise with internal gear up and vise engaging large teeth on opposite side of assembly.

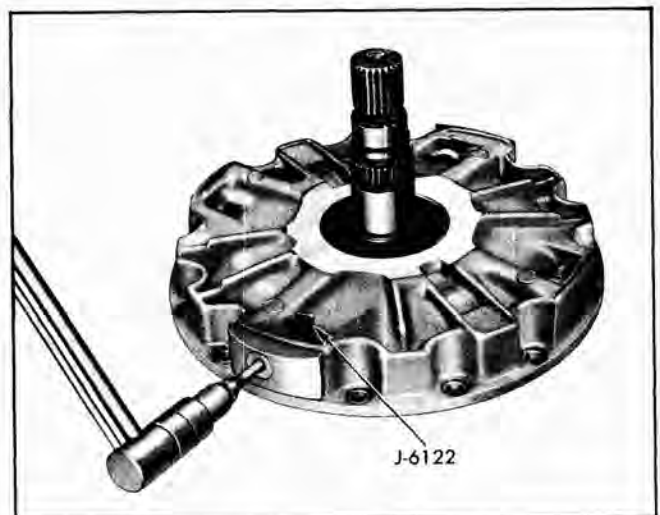


Fig. 80 Installing Exhaust Valve Covers

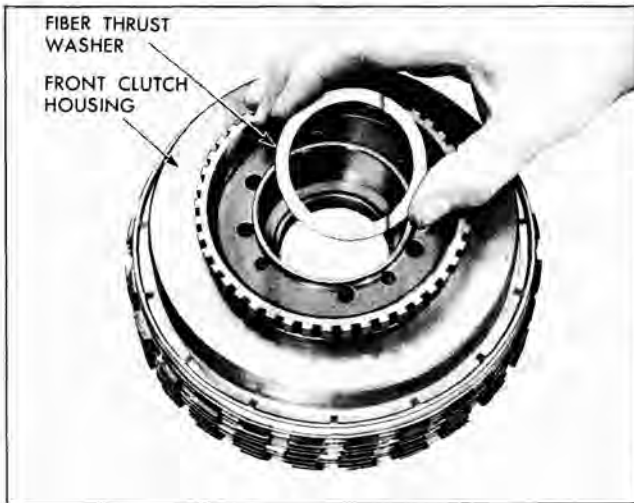


Fig. 81 Thrust Washer in Front Clutch Housing

3. Remove 4 front internal gear to front clutch housing attaching bolts.

4. Gently tap a dowel pin with a drift to remove front internal gear from front clutch housing. The housing is spring loaded.

5. Remove front internal gear.

6. Remove front clutch backing plate.

7. Remove 7 drive and 7 driven front unit clutch plates (Fig. 82).

8. Remove 20 front clutch release springs.

9. Remove front clutch piston from front clutch housing.

10. Remove front clutch piston outer seal from piston and discard.

11. Remove front clutch inner piston seal from clutch housing and discard.

INSPECTION

1. Inspect front unit internal gear for tooth damage, nicks, burrs.

2. Inspect front unit internal gear bushing for excessive wear, nicks, burrs. Be sure bushing is not loose.

3. Inspect clutch plate splines on front internal gear for free clutch plate movement, remove any obstruction.

4. Check lubrication ports for restriction.

5. Inspect clutch backing plate for nicks, burrs or foreign material.

6. Inspect 7 drive and 7 driven clutch plates, check for foreign particles embedded in plates. Check for excessive wear on clutch plates such as metal spots appearing through the facing material on the drive plates or deep cuts in the steel driven plates. The steel driven plates are waved and a wear pattern will appear at the high points of the wave, this is normal wear pattern and should not be replaced for those bright spots. The drive plates with the facing material will appear discolored after a few hundred miles, this is a normal reaction from the oil absorbing characteristics of the facing material. The drive plates are flat and an even wear pattern will appear over the entire area. See Fig. 83 for proper unnesting of clutch plate notches on assembly.

7. Inspect front clutch apply piston, check for scores, nicks and burrs, check for cracks in casting. The PA piston has a ball check to prevent centrifugal clutch apply at high engine r.p.m. in Neutral.

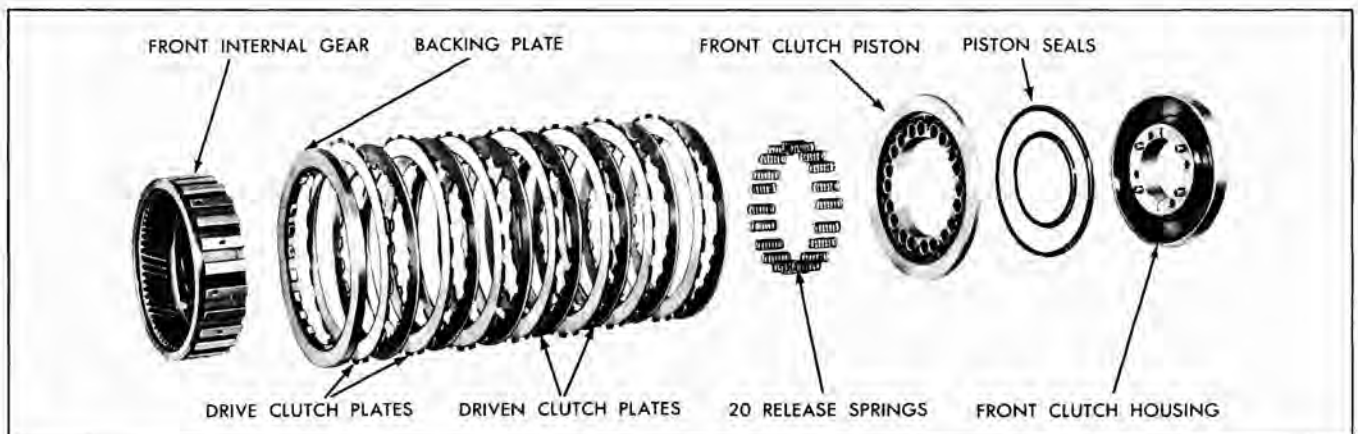


Fig. 82 Front Clutch—Exploded

8. Replace the inner and outer clutch piston rubber lip type seals. Use caution when installing seals. Be sure seal is not nicked or pinched during installation. The inner seal should be installed first using the clutch piston without the outer seal to seat the inner seal snug in the ring groove by clockwise and counter-clockwise movement of the piston.

9. Inspect the front clutch housing for foreign material. Check the clutch apply oil passages for restrictions or off location oil passages.

10. Inspect bolt threads for cross threading or stripped threads.

11. Inspect internal gear to center support thrust washer for excessive wear, nicks, burrs or foreign particles imbedded on thrust face.

ASSEMBLY

1. Install new inner piston seal on front clutch housing with lip of seal facing down.

2. Install new outer piston seal on clutch piston with lip facing away from spring pockets.

3. Install clutch piston in clutch housing, carefully rotating assembly while depressing lip of piston seal with small blade screw driver.

4. Install piston release springs (20) into spring pockets in piston.

5. Install front clutch backing plate on front internal gear with undercut facing flange on internal gear.

6. Install 7 composition drive and 7 steel driven clutch plates alternately over the front internal gear starting with a composition clutch plate.

NOTE: The steel clutch plates must be assembled in an un-nested position as follows:

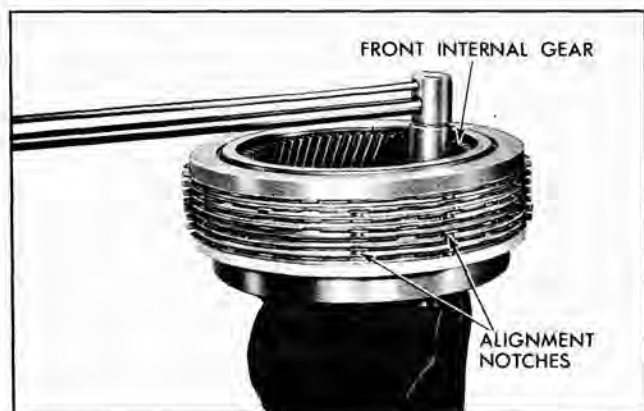


Fig. 83 Torquing Front Clutch Bolts

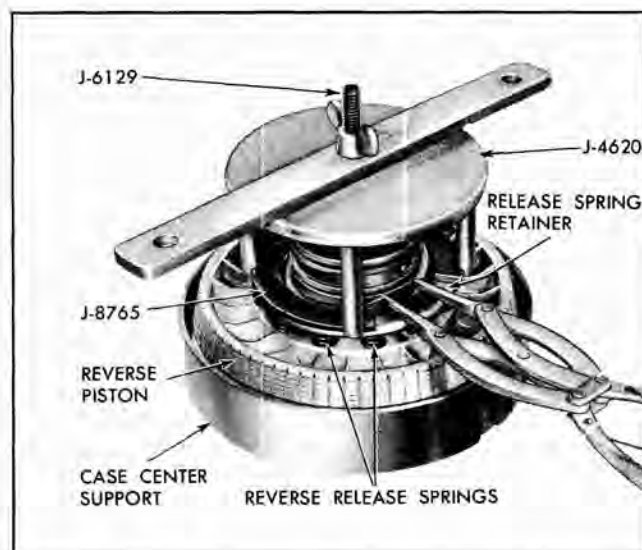


Fig. 84 Removing Reverse Release Spring Retainer Snap Ring

a. Place a composition plate and first steel plate over the internal gear noticing the location of the slight half moon notch in the edge of the steel plate.

b. Install another composition plate and then the second steel plate so that the half moon is located 2 drive lugs on the internal gear away from the notch in the first steel plate.

c. Continue to alternately install the composition and steel plates so that the notches in the odd numbered steel plates are one above the other and the notches in the even numbered steel plates are one above the other.

7. Holding assembly together, position front unit internal gear, with plates, on clutch release springs, aligning dowels.

8. Place entire assembly in soft-jawed vise with vise engaging large teeth on clutch housing (Fig. 83).

9. Install four front unit internal gear to front clutch housing bolts. Alternately tighten bolts to properly seat front internal gear on dowels. Check bottom steel clutch plate for freedom after tightening bolts. Torque to 22-27 lb. ft.

10. Install thrust washer into recessed I.D. of front clutch housing bore using petroleum to retain (Fig. 81.)

CASE CENTER SUPPORT

DISASSEMBLY

1. Remove 2 oil delivery sleeve hook type oil seal rings from case center support (Fig. 86).
2. Using tools J-8765, J-6129 and J-4670-B, remove reverse release spring retainer snap ring. Center tool and position ring gap between legs (Fig. 84).
3. Remove tools from the reverse and neutral clutch assembly.
4. Remove reverse release spring retainer.
5. Remove 12 reverse piston release springs.
6. Remove reverse clutch piston. It may be necessary to tap housing gently.
7. Remove inner and outer reverse piston seal rings and discard.
8. Using tools J-8765, J-6129, and J-4670-B remove neutral clutch release spring retainer snap ring. Center tool and position ring gap between legs (Fig. 85).
9. Remove tools.
10. Remove neutral clutch release spring retainer.

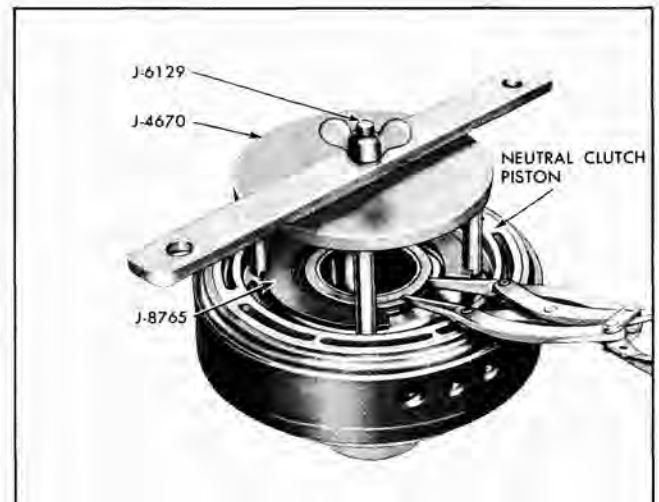


Fig. 85 Removing Neutral Clutch Spring Retainer Snap Ring

11. Remove 16 neutral clutch release springs. Do not mix neutral clutch springs with reverse springs.
12. Remove neutral clutch piston. It may be necessary to tap housing gently.
13. Remove inner and outer neutral clutch seal rings and discard.

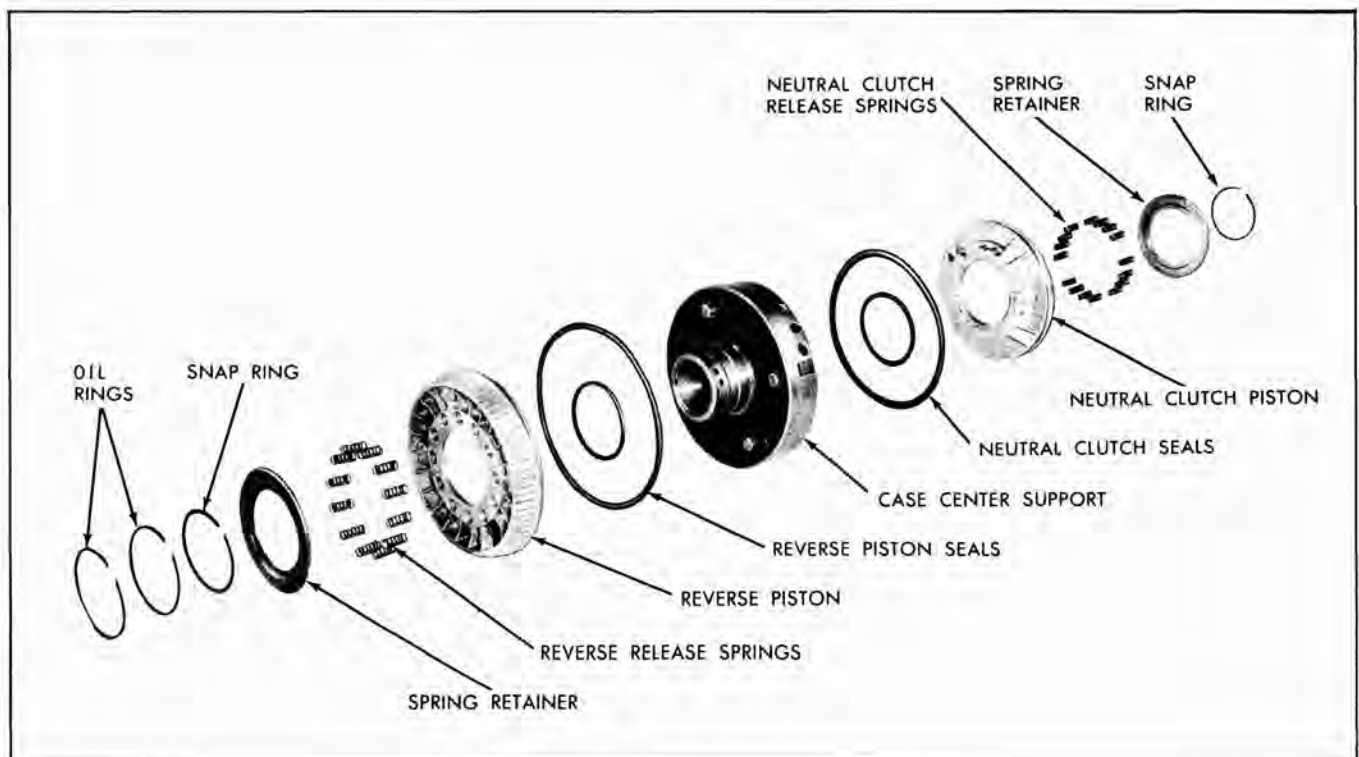


Fig. 86 Case Center Support—Exploded

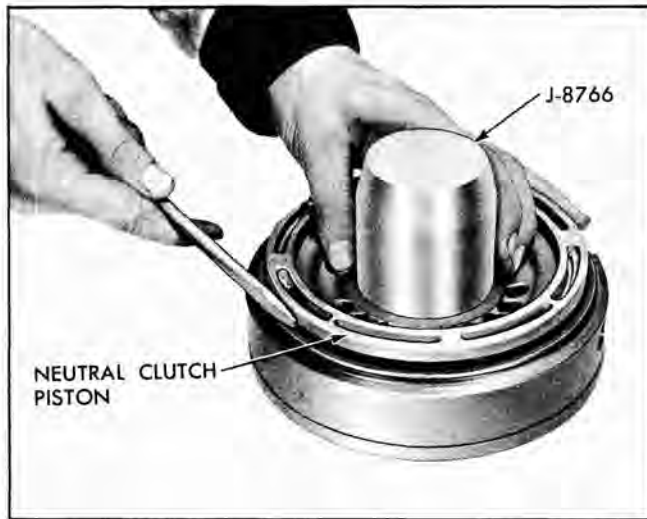


Fig. 87 Installing Neutral Clutch Piston

INSPECTION

1. Inspect case center support for nicks, burrs, damaged or excessive wear on bushing. Make certain bushing is not loose.

2. Check the reverse apply oil passage with air and tag wire. Check for inter-connected passages or restricted passages.

3. Check the front clutch apply passage with air and tag wire. Check for restriction or inter-connected passages.

4. Check the neutral clutch apply passage with air and tag wire. Check for restriction or inter-connected passages.

5. Inspect the two hook-type oil seal rings on the oil delivery sleeve. Check for excessive wear or broken ring.

6. Inspect the neutral clutch piston for cracks or distortion.

7. Replace the neutral clutch inner and outer piston seals.

8. Inspect the neutral clutch release spring for distortion or collapsed coils.

9. Inspect the reverse piston for excessive wear, burrs, cracks or distortion.

10. Inspect the reverse piston release springs for distortion or collapsed coils.

11. Inspect the neutral clutch release spring retainer and snap ring groove.

12. Inspect the reverse piston spring retainer and snap ring groove.

ASSEMBLY

1. Install new inner and outer neutral clutch seals with lip of seal facing away from spring pockets.

2. Install J-8766, inner seal protector over neutral clutch inner hub (Fig. 87).

3. Install neutral clutch piston. Use small blade screw driver to depress lip of outer seal into case center support.

4. Remove seal protector J-8766.

5. Install 16 release springs into spring pockets of neutral clutch piston.

6. Install neutral clutch spring retainer over release springs.

7. Using tools J-8761, J-6129 and J-4670-B, compress neutral clutch release springs and install retainer snap ring (Fig. 85).

8. Remove tools.

9. Install inner seal protector tool J-8766 over oil delivery sleeve.

10. Install reverse outer seal protector tool, J-8767 into case center support. Some oil on inside of the tool will ease installation of seal.

11. Install new inner and outer reverse piston seal rings on reverse piston, lip of seals facing dowel pin holes in piston.

12. Install reverse piston, aligning piston to index with dowel pins (Fig. 88).



Fig. 88 Installing Reverse Clutch Piston

13. Remove tools.
14. Install 12 reverse piston release springs into spring pockets.
15. Install reverse piston spring retainer.
16. Lay snap ring on top of tower, then using tools J-8761, J-6129 and J-4670-B compress release springs (Fig. 84).
17. Install reverse piston spring retainer snap ring.
18. Remove tools.
19. Check all springs for proper position in pockets.
20. Install 2 hook type oil seal rings on oil delivery sleeve.

Installation Page 81

REAR INTERNAL GEAR AND SPRAG

NOTE. The transmission may be equipped with either a sprag clutch or a roller clutch. See **ROLLER CLUTCH**, page 68.

DISASSEMBLY

1. Remove sprag retainer (Fig. 89).
2. Remove sprag outer race from sprag assembly and rear internal gear (Fig. 89).
3. Remove the sprag and bushing assembly from internal gear. (Sprag assembly consists of sprag assembly and two bronze bushings).

INSPECTION

1. Inspect the rear internal gear for tooth damage, nicks or burrs.
2. Inspect the rear internal gear bushing for excessive wear, nicks or burrs.
3. Inspect the splines on the I.D. of the inner sprag race for burrs or broken splines.
4. Inspect the inner sprag race for scoring.
5. Inspect outer sprag race for scoring.
6. Inspect outer sprag race for nicks, burrs or damaged splines. Test one drive plate over the splines for free up and down movement.
7. Inspect sprag assembly for score marks, damaged spring retainer or damaged shoulder. Test sprag action with sprag installed in outer sprag race over the inner sprag race. Note shoulder of sprag should face up or toward sprag retainer.
8. Inspect the sprag retainer for bent tangs or distortion.

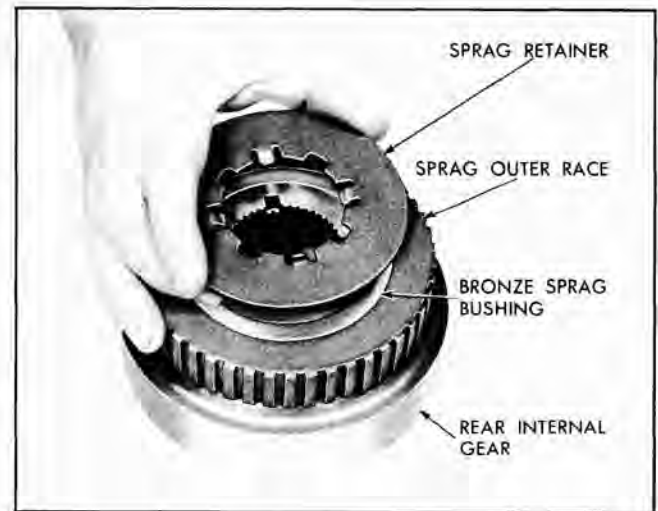


Fig. 89 Removing Sprag Retainer

ASSEMBLY

1. Place one bronze bushing over inner race of internal gear with cup side facing up.
2. Place sprag assembly into the sprag outer race.
3. With shoulder side of sprag up, start sprag and outer race over internal gear (Fig. 91).
4. Slide sprag and outer race down against internal gear.
5. Install second bronze bushing cup side down, against sprag assembly.
6. Apply petrolatum on sprag retainer and install sprag retainer on internal gear aligning tangs with the internal gear slots.

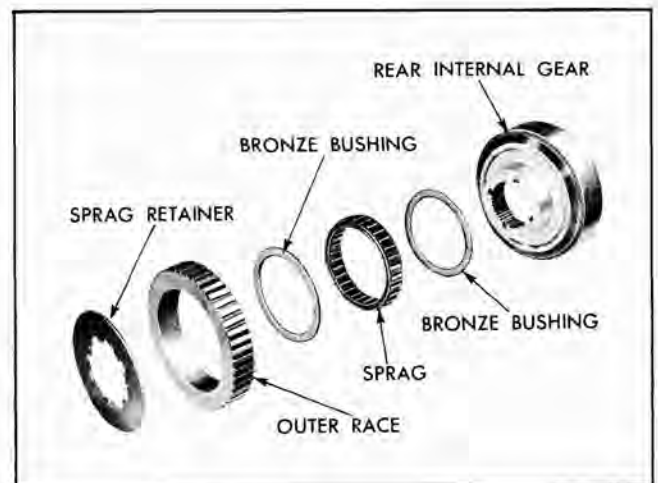


Fig. 90 Sprag Assembly—Exploded

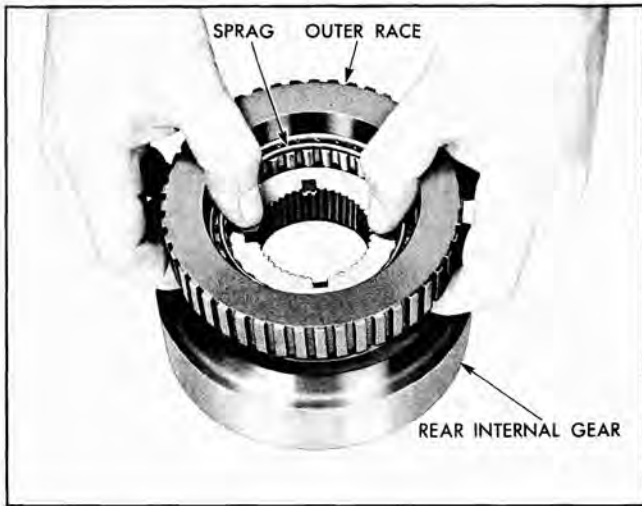


Fig. 91 Installing Sprag Outer Race

NOTE: Check to make certain sprag assembly is properly installed by rotating outer race counterclockwise. Outer race should not turn clockwise.

Installation Page 82

ROLLER CLUTCH

DIASSEMBLY

1. Remove the roller clutch and outer race from the rear internal gear. (Fig. 92).
2. Carefully remove the roller clutch assembly from outer race.

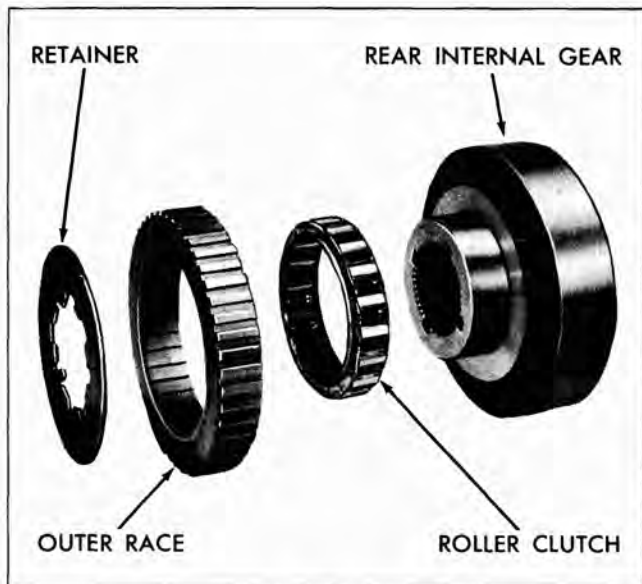


Fig. 92 Roller Clutch—Exploded

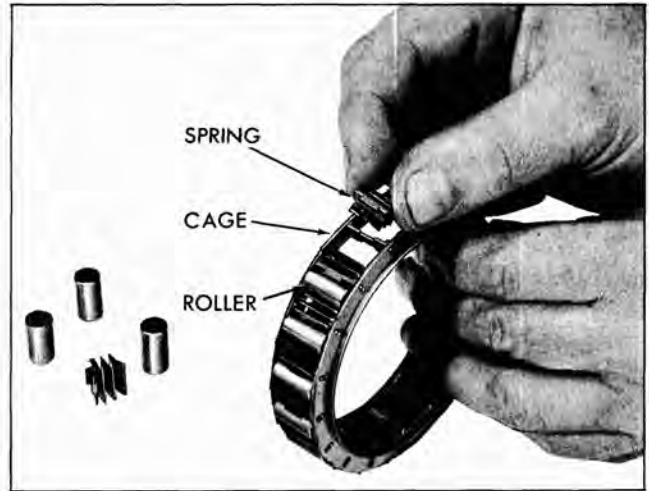


Fig. 93 Removing Roller Clutch Springs

3. Remove the rollers and energizing springs from the cage. (Fig. 93).

INSPECTION

1. Inspect the rollers for pitted, scratches, pickup, galling or flat spots.
2. Inspect the energizing springs for distortion, cracks, permanent set or loss of tension.
3. Inspect the utter race for pitting, scratches, cracks, galling or broken ramp corners (pop-back).
4. Inspect cage for bent or broken struts, broken or distorted corners or teeth.

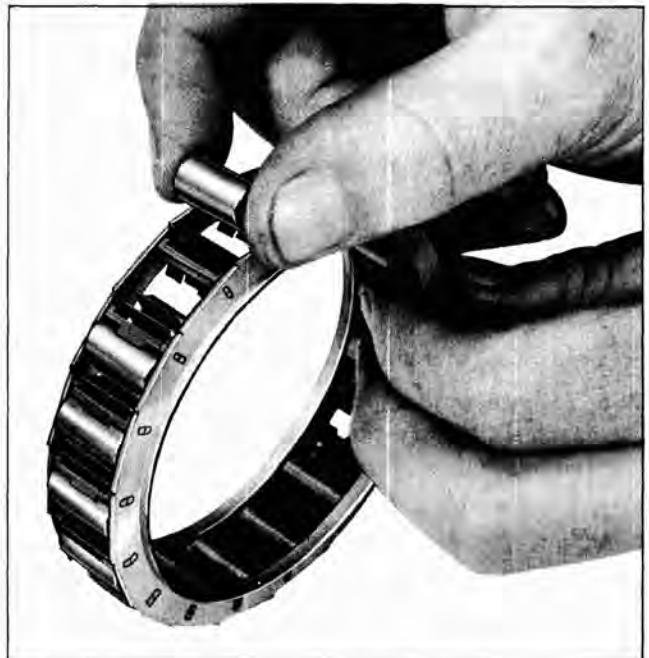


Fig. 94 Installing Rollers

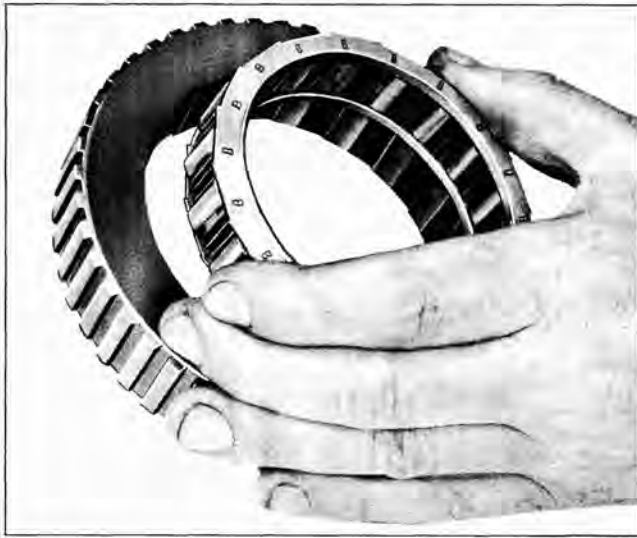


Fig. 95 Install Roller Assembly in Outer Race

ASSEMBLY

1. Install the release springs on the cage struts with the upper tab on the springs pointing the same direction as the teeth or stops on the sprag cage. Be sure the center spring tab snaps securely over the strut to retain the spring. (Fig. 93).
2. Install the rollers into cage between the springs in such a way that the upper tab on the spring fits over the roller. (Fig. 94).
3. Carefully, install the roller clutch assembly into the outer race so that the rollers do not pop-out. The teeth or stops on the cage should align with the ramps in the outer race. (Fig. 95).
4. Place the outer race and roller clutch assembly on the bench with the word "front" on the roller clutch cage facing the bench.
5. Twist the rear internal gear (counter-clockwise) into the roller clutch assembly. (Fig. 96).

GOVERNOR

DISASSEMBLY

1. Compress finer of G-2 plug retainer and remove (Fig. 91).
2. Remove G-2 plug and G-2 valve (Fig. 91).
3. Inspect and remove, if necessary, 4 governor oil hook-type oil seal rings from governor tower.



Fig. 96 Install Inner-Race in Roller Assembly

INSPECTION

1. Inspect 4 governor rings and ring grooves. Rings should fit freely in ring grooves.
2. Use tag wire and check G-1, G-2 and line pressure oil passages for restrictions.
3. Inspect governor bushing for scores, nicks or burrs.
4. Inspect G-1 and G-2 valves for free movement.
5. Be certain the entire governor casting is free from all dirt and small chips, use air gun.

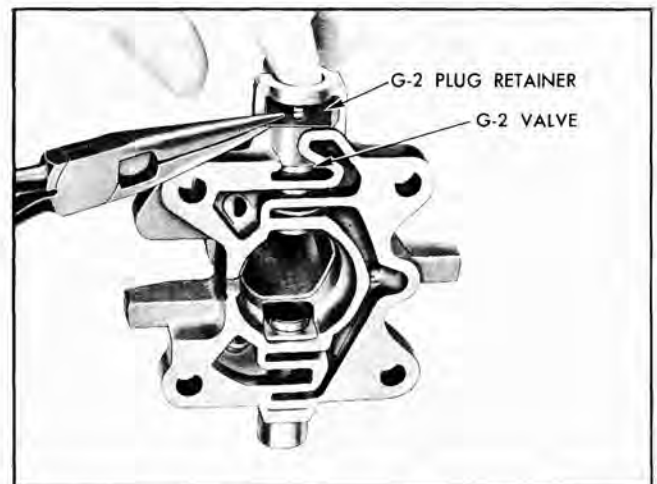


Fig. 97 Removing G-2 Plug Retainer

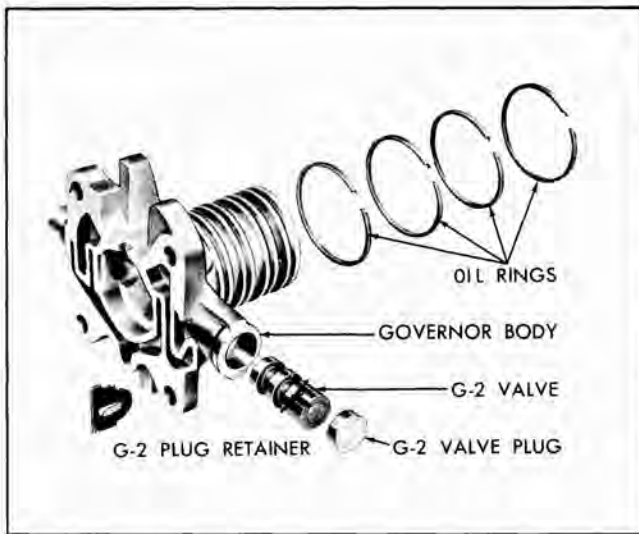


Fig. 98 Governor—Exploded

ASSEMBLY

1. If removed, install 4 hook-type governor oil seal rings on governor tower.
2. Install G-2 valve (small land first) into governor (Fig. 98).
3. Install G-2 plug with the flat side out.
4. Install G-2 plug retainer with finger side out. In assembling governor, care should be exercised to prevent the G-2 valve from dropping out of governor body.

Installation Page 82

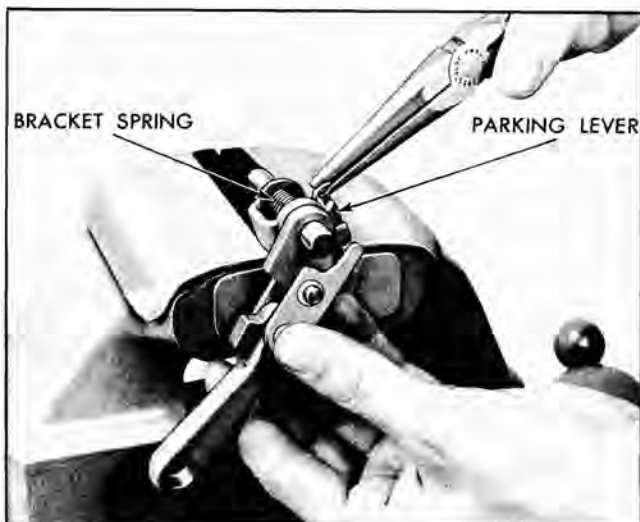


Fig. 99 Removing Parking Bracket Spring from Parking Lever

PARKING LINKAGE

The following steps are used only if linkage was removed from case.

DISASSEMBLY

1. Install assembly in vise using a soft jaw vise on dowel pin (Fig. 99).
2. Lift hook end of bracket spring off parking lever and disassemble parts (Fig. 100).

INSPECTION

1. Check all pins for excessive wear or binding in their bores.
2. Check bracket spring for collapsed coil or breaks.

ASSEMBLY

1. Clamp dowel pin of parking bracket in soft jawed vise (Fig. 99).
2. Place bracket spring in bracket with straight leg of spring in the narrow slot between the sides of the bracket and the hook end of the spring near the fixed end of the dowel pin.
3. Place bracket shaft approximately half way through bracket and spring and then slide pawl and lever assembly onto shaft so parking lever and links are as shown in Fig. 99.
4. Using long nose pliers, hook bracket spring over parking lever.
5. Remove assembly from vise.

Installation Page 83

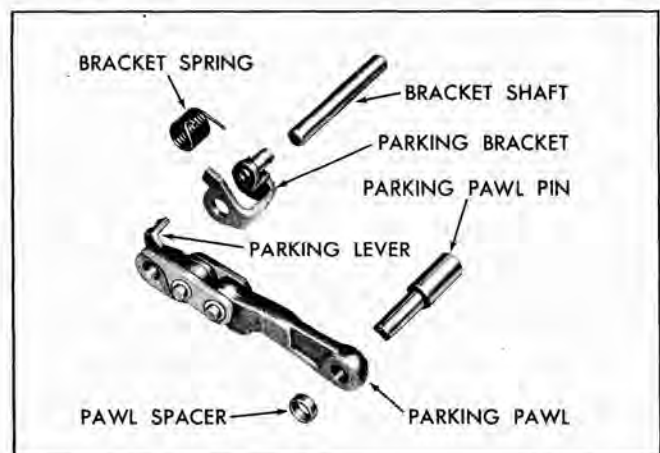


Fig. 100 Parking Brake Assembly—Exploded

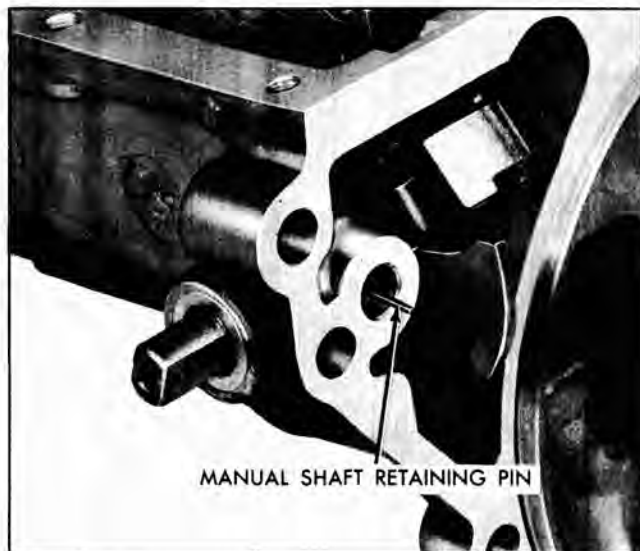


Fig. 101 Manual Shaft Retaining Pin

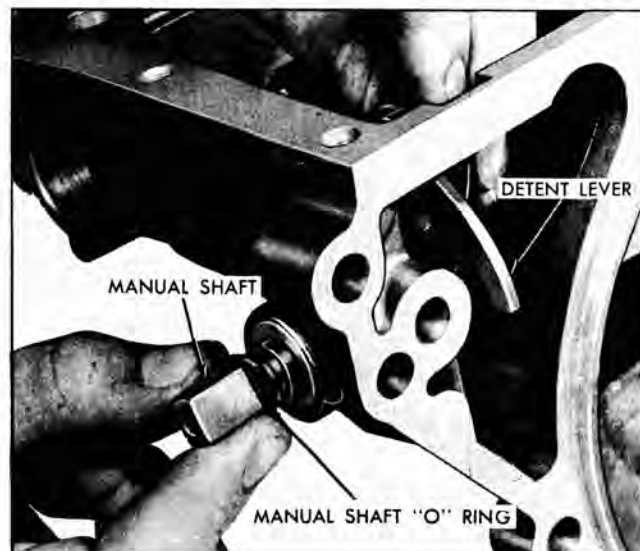


Fig. 102 Removing Manual Shaft Seal

REAR BEARING RETAINER

DISASSEMBLY

1. Remove the manual shaft retaining pin from the rear bearing retainer and manual shaft (Fig. 101).
2. Push the detent lever and manual shaft towards the outside of the rear bearing retainer to expose the "O" ring seal (Fig. 102). Remove seal from shaft.
3. Remove the detent lever and manual shaft from the inside of the rear bearing retainer.
4. Remove the rear thrust bearing race to rear bearing retainer thru snap ring through access hole in retainer (Fig. 104).
5. Remove rear race, bearing and front race from rear bearing retainer.

INSPECTION

1. Inspect rear bearing retainer for hair line cracks or leaks (Fig. 103).
2. Check for inter-connected oil passages, use air gun or smoke.
3. Inspect rear bearing and bearing race.
4. Check bolt hole threads for cross threading or stripped.
5. Check air vent passage for restriction and anti-siphoning valve for proper movement.
6. Inspect detent lever for distortion, cracks, or breaks. Inspect "O" ring seal and retaining pin.
7. Clean thoroughly with air gun.

ASSEMBLY

1. Install race, thrust bearing, and race into rear bearing retainer. **NOTE:** The side of each race that has the more rounded corners should face the bearing since the round corners have a tendency to dislodge the snap rings.
2. Install snap ring, concave side towards rear, (identification side away from race) and align ear on snap ring with top slot in retainer.

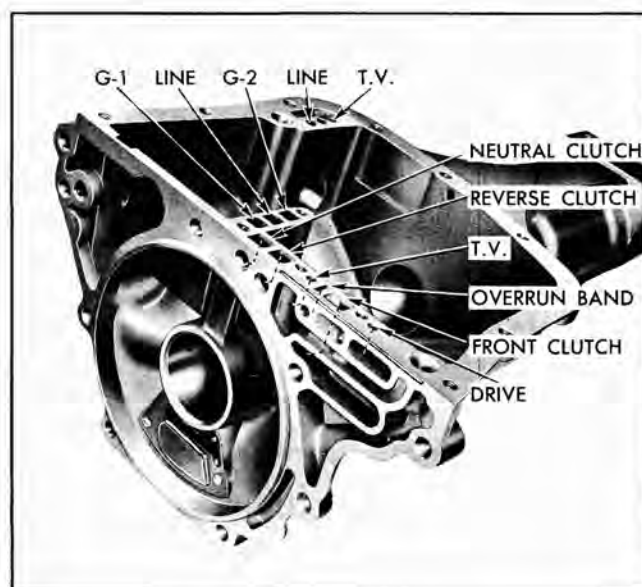


Fig. 103 Rear Bearing Retainer Passages

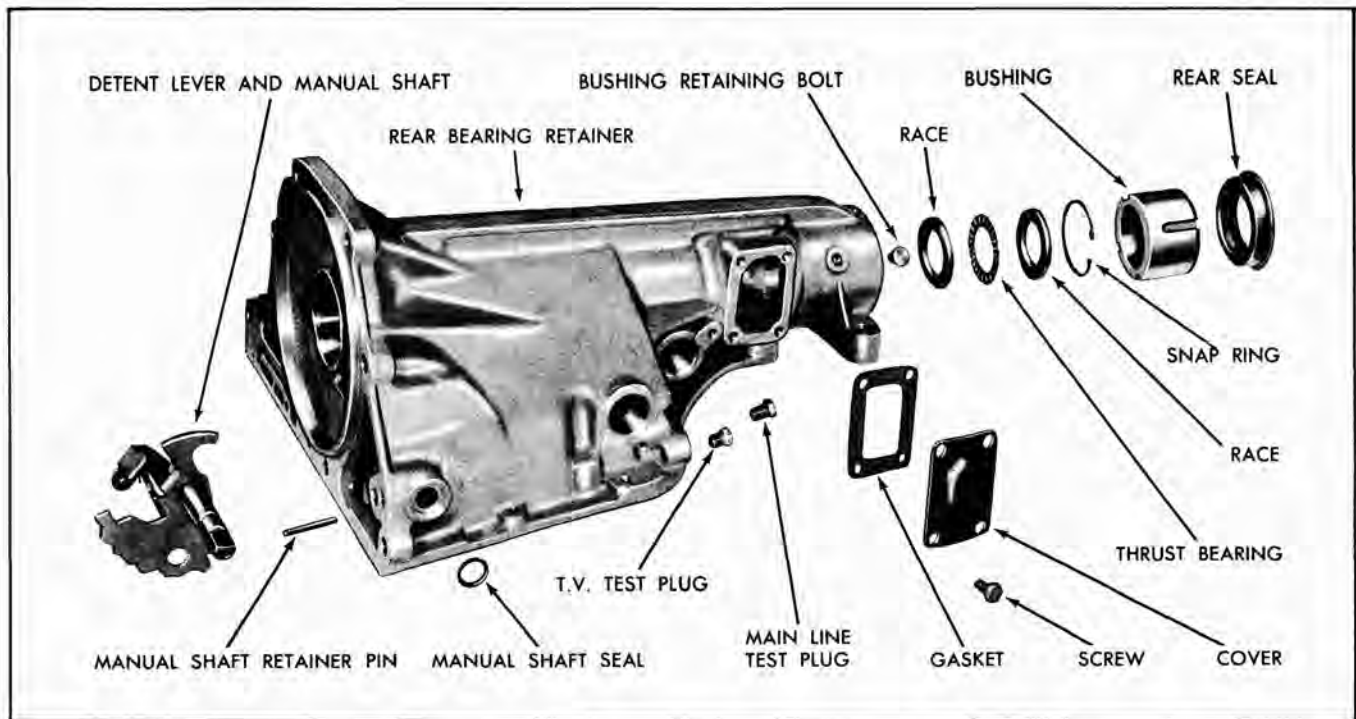


Fig. 104 Rear Bearing Retainer

3. If removed, install the bushing and sleeve assembly in rear end of rear bearing retainer, chamfered end first. Align short slot in bushing with retaining bolt hole in rear bearing retainer. Install with soft hammer and drift.

4. Install bushing retaining bolt. Torque to 12-15 ft. lbs.

5. Install the detent lever and manual shaft into the rear bearing retainer until the "O" ring groove is accessible from the outside.

6. Install the manual shaft "O" ring seal on the manual shaft (Fig. 102).

7. Push the manual shaft into the rear bearing retainer just far enough to allow the manual shaft retaining pin to be installed. Install the retaining pin (Fig. 101).

Installation Page 85

SERVO PISTON AND ACCUMULATOR PISTONS

DISASSEMBLY

1. Place a $\frac{3}{16}$ " deep socket over the long end of the servo piston pin (Fig. 105).

2. Position a "U" shaped spacer against the piston end of the piston assembly and place the socket, piston assembly and "U" shaped spacer between the jaws of a bench vise (Fig 105).

3. Slowly tighten the vise sufficiently to remove the snap ring.

4. Remove the servo piston to piston pin snap ring and washer being careful not to spread snap ring more than necessary as it can be easily distorted.

5. Carefully remove piston assembly from the vise.

6. Remove the servo piston, springs and retainer.

7. From the upper accumulator piston, remove and discard the lip seal.

INSPECTION

1. Inspect servo piston ring and ring groove for broken ring and ring groove for nicks or burrs.

2. Check the release springs for collapsed coils or broken spring.

3. Check the piston stem for scoring.

4. Use tag wire and check the oil passages in the piston.

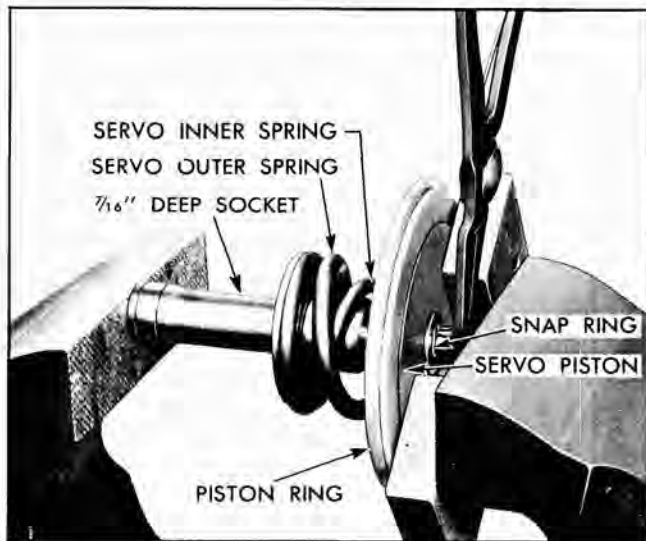


Fig. 105 Method of Removing Snap Ring from Servo Piston Pin

5. Inspect lower accumulator piston ring and ring groove for broken ring and ring grooves for nicks or burrs.

6. Replace the rubber lip type seal on the upper accumulator piston.

7. Inspect the accumulator release springs for collapsed coils or broken ring.

8. Inspect the accumulator piston pin for scoring.

ASSEMBLY

1. Install a new piston seal on the upper accumulator piston, lip facing flat side of piston.

2. Install the spring retainer, springs and servo piston over the servo piston pin (Fig. 106).

3. Place the assembled servo components with a $\frac{7}{16}$ " deep socket over the piston pin and "U" shaped spacer against the servo piston into a vise and, aligning pin carefully, compress the assembly to allow the flat washer and snap ring to be installed (Fig. 98).

4. Install the washer and a new snap ring.

5. Remove the servo piston assembly and tools from the vise.

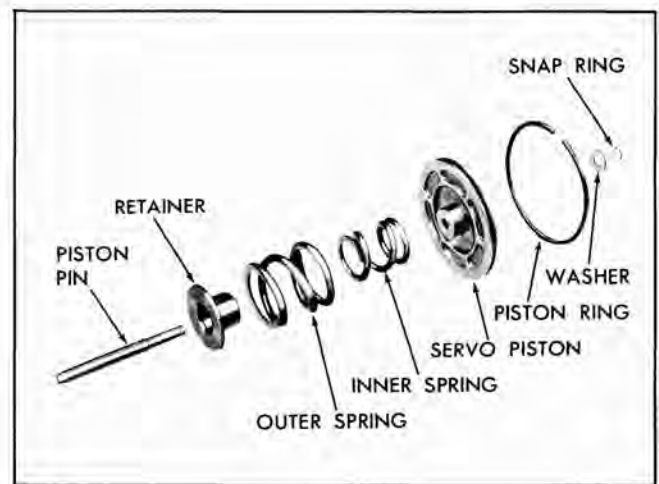


Fig. 106 Servo Piston—Exploded

CONTROL VALVES

The following inspection procedure is to be used for the compensator valve body, the 3-4 boost body, and the control valve body (Fig. 107).

1. Inspect each valve in the valve body for free movement in the valve bore. It may be necessary to stone the lands of the valve lightly to remove small burrs. The valves will have sharp edges to perform a cleaning action within the valve bore. Do not remove square edges.

2. Inspect springs for distortion or collapsed coils.

3. Be sure check ball seats are not pitted or chipped.

4. Inspect spacer plates for restrictions, dents or distortion.

5. Clean valve body thoroughly with air gun.

COMPENSATOR VALVE BODY

DISASSEMBLY

1. Compress compensator plug and remove retaining pin (Fig. 108).

2. Remove compensator plug.

3. Remove secondary compensator valve and spring.

4. Remove primary compensator valve and spring. (PA does not have a primary spring).

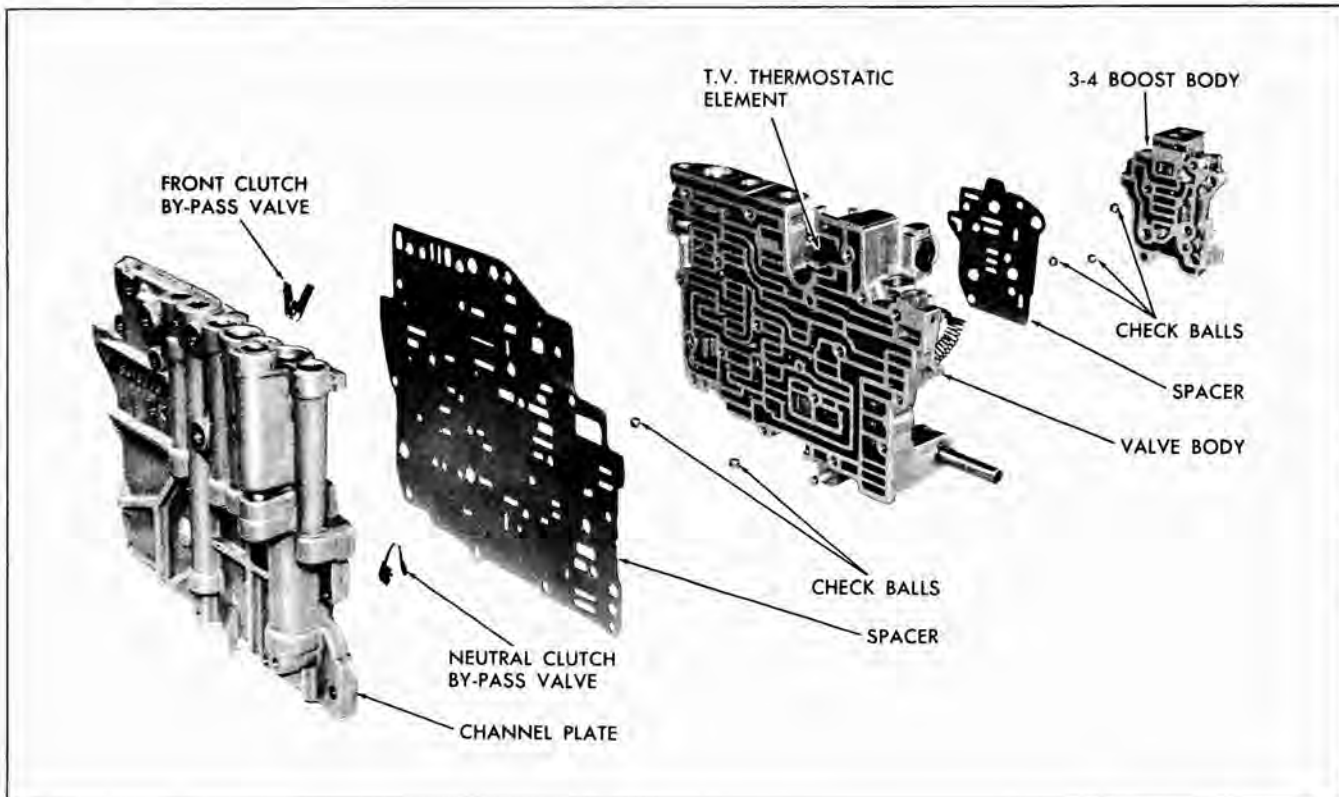


Fig. 107 Control Valve Assembly

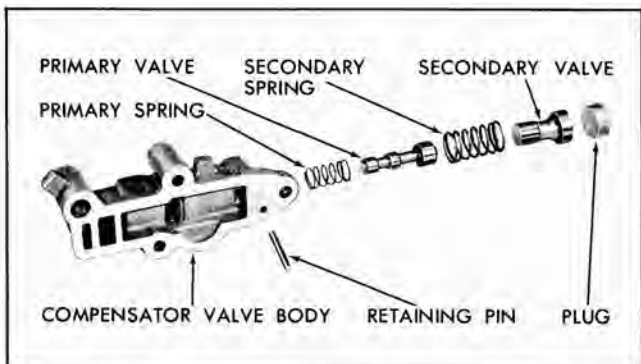
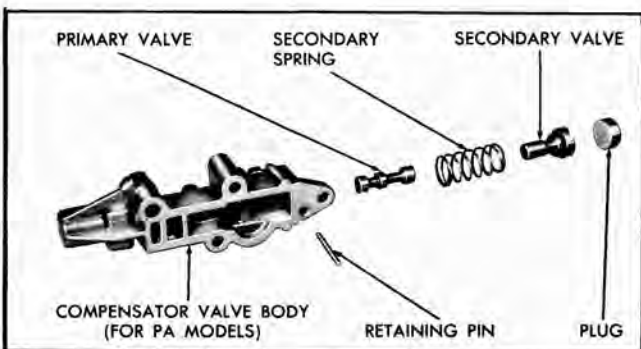


Fig. 108 Compensator Valve—Exploded

ASSEMBLY

1. Install primary compensator spring on primary compensator valve (except PA models).
2. Install primary compensator spring and valve—small end first into body.
3. Install secondary compensator spring on secondary compensator valve.
4. Install the secondary spring and valve into compensator body, spring end first.
5. Install compensator plug threaded side out.
6. Compress compensator plug and install retaining pin.

CONTROL VALVE**DISASSEMBLY: 3-4 BOOST BODY**

1. Remove the 3-4 boost body assembly by removing 4 attaching screws. (One screw is located on channel plate side of body.) The 3-4 boost body contains 3 loose check balls and care should be exercised to prevent their loss (Fig. 107).

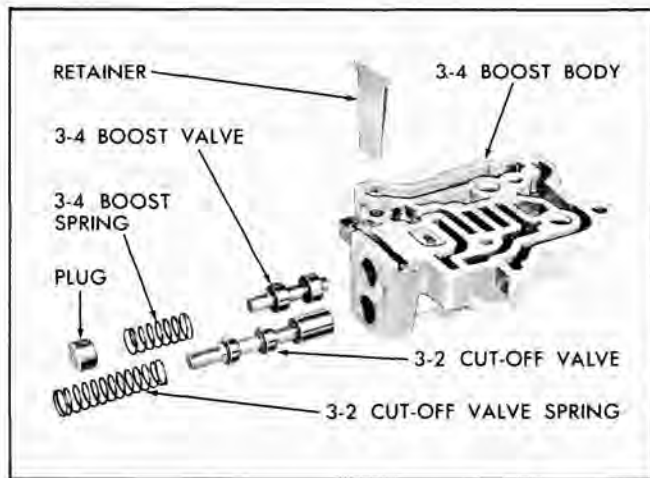


Fig. 109 3-4 Boost Body—Exploded

2. Remove the three check balls and spacer plate from the valve body.
3. Remove the retainer from the 3-4 boost body. Retainer is under spring pressure (Fig. 109).
4. Remove the 3-2 cut off valve spring and valve.
5. Remove the 3-4 boost plug, spring, and valve.

ASSEMBLY: 3-4 BOOST BODY

1. Install the 3-4 boost valve, long stem out, spring and plug in the bore of the boost body nearest the cored face.
2. Compress the 3-4 boost plug against spring tension and partly install the 3-4 boost body retainer.
3. Install the 3-2 cut off valve, stem out, and spring in remaining bore of boost body.
4. Compress the 3-2 cut off valve spring and slide 3-4 boost body retainer over spring. Leave spacer plate and check balls loose at this time.

DISASSEMBLY—CONTROL VALVE BODY

1. Remove channel body from valve body assembly by removing two attaching screws from the valve body side and thirteen attaching screws from the channel plate side (Fig. 107).
2. Remove neutral clutch by-pass valve from cored side of channel plate (Fig. 110).
3. Remove front clutch by-pass valve from channel plate.

4. If necessary to remove pressure relief ball and spring (Fig. 110).
 - a. Turn channel plate over to casting side and remove retaining pin. Pin under extreme pressure.
 - b. Remove pressure relief spring.
 - c. Remove pressure relief ball.
 - d. Assemble pressure relief ball, spring and retaining pin into channel plate.
5. Install neutral clutch by-pass valve and front clutch by-pass valve into channel plate.

Set assembled channel plate aside and continue with disassembly.

6. Remove separator (channel body to valve body). Place on channel body and check alignment of by-pass valves.
7. Remove 2 check balls and T.V. thermostatic element.
8. Remove T.V. plunger guide retainer located in cored passage near T.V. adjusting screw. Retainer is loose. Position control valve assembly with the cored side up and the T.V. lever positioned on the top right hand side.
9. Remove multiple valve plug retainer located in lower left hand corner. Plugs under spring tension.
10. Remove the 3-2 downshift spring and valve from the lowest bore (Fig. 111).

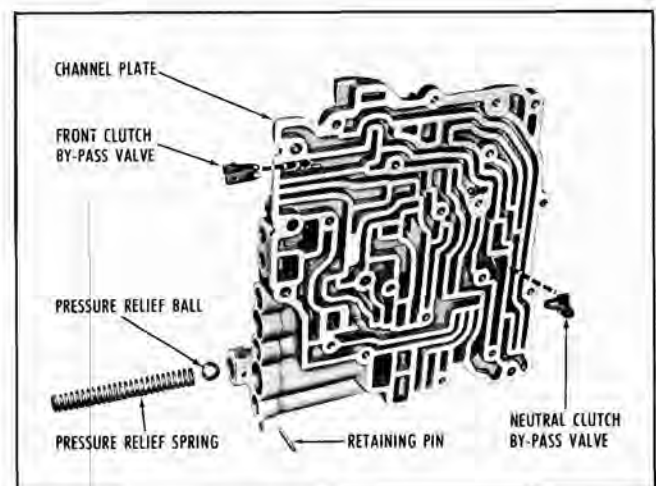


Fig. 110 Channel Plate—Exploded

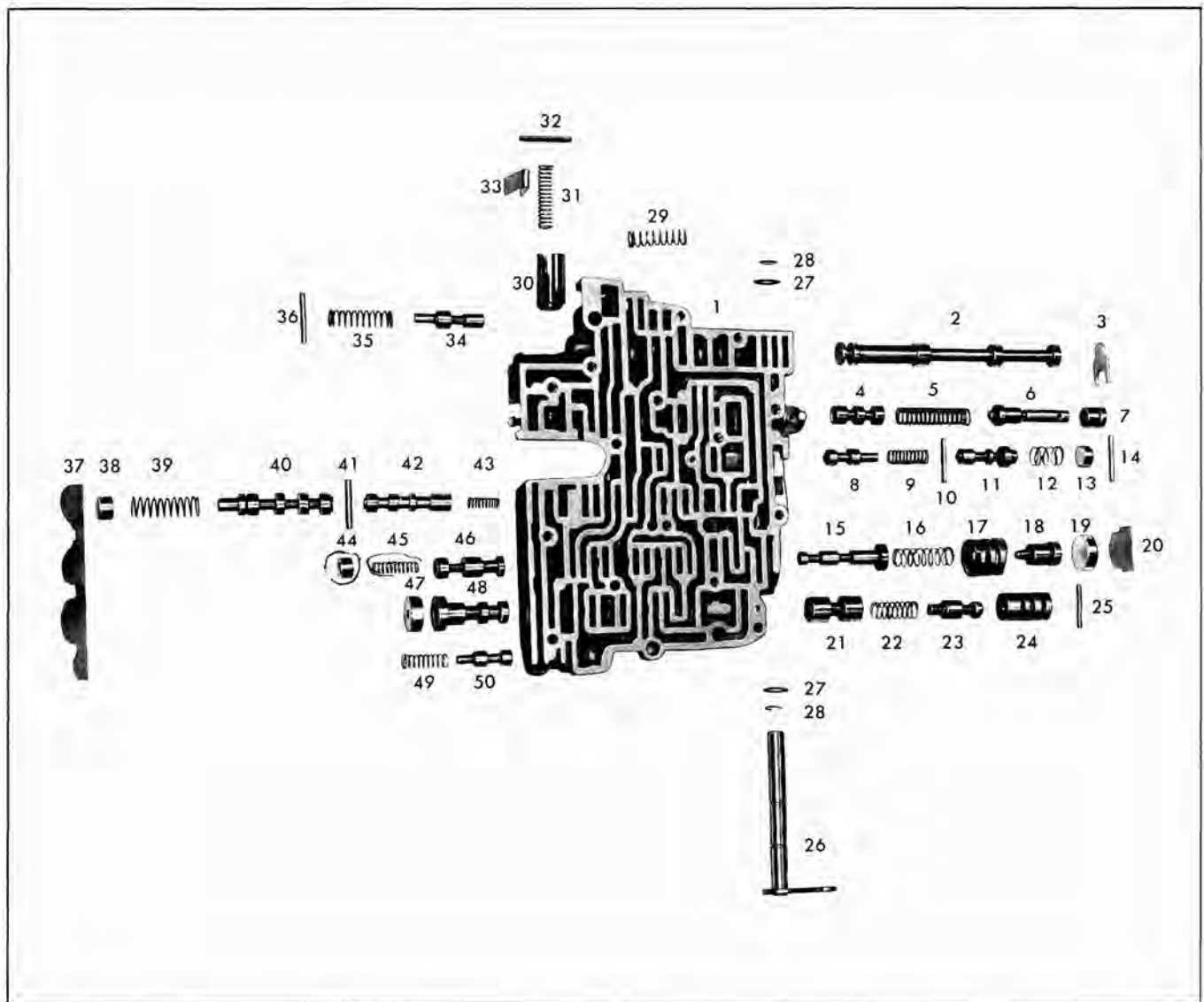


Fig. 111 Control Valve Assembly—Exploded

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. Control Valve Body | 18. 3-4 T.V. Valve | 34. Pressure Drop Valve |
| 2. Manual Valve | 19. Bore Plug | 35. Pressure Drop Valve Spring |
| 3. Retainer, T.V. Plunger Guide | 20. Bore Plug Retainer | 36. Retaining Pin |
| 4. Throttle Valve | 21. 2-3 Valve | 37. Bore Plug Retainer |
| 5. Throttle Valve Spring | 22. 2-3 T.V. Spring | 38. Bore Plug |
| 6. T.V. Plunger | 23. 2-3 T.V. Valve | 39. Coupling Timing Valve Spring |
| 7. Guide, T.V. Plunger | 24. 2-3 T.V. Valve Bushing | 40. Coupling Timing Valve |
| 8. Front Clutch Exhaust Valve | 25. Retaining Pin | 41. Retaining Pin |
| 9. Front Clutch Exhaust Valve Spring | 26. Throttle Control Lever and Shaft Assembly | 42. Pressure Boost Valve |
| 10. Retaining Pin | 27. Washer | 43. Pressure Boost Valve Spring |
| 11. Neutral Clutch Valve | 28. Snap Ring | 44. Bore Plug |
| 12. Neutral Clutch Valve Spring | 29. Detent Spring | 45. 3-4 Shift Spring |
| 13. Bore Plug | 30. Reverse Blocker Piston | 46. 3-4 Governor Valve |
| 14. Retaining Pin | 31. Reverse Blocker Spring | 47. Bore Plug |
| 15. 3-4 Valve | 32. Retaining Pin | 48. 2-3 Governor Valve |
| 16. 3-4 T.V. Spring | 33. Thermostatic T.V. Element | 49. 3-2 Downshift Valve Spring |
| 17. 3-4 T.V. Valve Bushing | | 50. 3-2 Downshift Valve |

11. Remove the valve bore plug from the adjacent bore by inserting snap ring pliers in the hole in the plug.

NOTE: The valve bore plug is a non-operating retaining plug used in valve bores. They should be removed and installed with snap ring pliers.

12. Remove the 2-3 governor valve from the same bore.

13. Remove the valve bore plug and spring from the adjacent bore.

14. Remove the 3-4 governor valve from the same bore.

15. Remove the valve bore plug from the next adjacent bore.

16. Remove the coupling timing valve spring and valve from the same bore.

17. Remove the pressure boost valve retaining pin from the center of the cored side of the valve body in the same bore.

18. Remove the pressure boost valve from the same bore.

19. On the opposite side of the valve body start with the lower bore and remove the retaining pin.

20. Remove the 2-3 T.V. bushing and valve from the same bore.

21. Remove the 2-3 valve spring—then remove the 2-3 valve from the same bore.

22. Remove the valve bore plug retainer and plug, while holding finger over plug as plug is under spring pressure, from the adjacent bore.

23. Remove the 3-4 T.V. valve, spring and bushing from the same bore.

24. Remove the 3-4 valve from the same bore.

25. Remove the retaining pin and valve bore plug from the fourth bore.

26. Remove the neutral clutch valve spring and neutral clutch valve.

27. Remove the front clutch exhaust valve retaining pin, which is under spring pressure, from the same bore on the cored side of valve body. Unload spring pressure from uncored side with a small screw driver to remove pin.

28. Remove the front clutch exhaust valve spring and valve.

29. Mark T.V. adjustment screw and loosen **exactly 5 turns**.

30. Turn the valve body over and remove the throttle lever by removing the outside "C" ring and washer, positioning the shaft so that the lever will clear the T.V. adjustment screw, remove washer.

31. Remove T.V. plunger and guide.

32. Remove T.V. spring and valve.

33. If necessary, remove the reverse blocker piston retaining pin, spring and reverse blocker piston.

34. Remove detent spring. Do not remove detent lever unless necessary to replace. If necessary to replace, drive pin out with small punch.

35. If necessary to remove detent lever, use a small screwdriver to pry lever free from pin, then remove pin. A new lever will be required on assembly.

INSPECTION

1. Inspect each valve in the valve body for free movement in the valve bore. It may be necessary to stone the lands of the valve lightly to remove small burrs. The valves will have sharp edges to perform a cleaning action within the valve bore. Do not remove square edges.

2. Inspect springs for distortion or collapsed coils.

3. Be sure check ball seats are not pitted or chipped.

4. Inspect spacer plates for restrictions, dents or distortion.

5. Clean valve body thoroughly with air gun.

ASSEMBLY—CONTROL VALVE BODY

NOTE: All attaching screws are to be torqued to 2.5 to 3.5 ft. lbs.

All attaching bolts are to be torqued to 6-8 ft. lbs.

1. If previously removed, install manual detent by positioning manual detent in valve body and installing retaining pin.

2. Install detent spring into manual detent.
3. If removed, install the reverse blocker piston, spring and pin.
4. Install the pressure drop valve, stem end of valve last, spring and retaining pin in the top bore adjacent to the detent spring.
5. Install the T.V. valve (round end first) spring, plunger and sleeve into the T.V. bore adjacent to the manual valve bore.
6. Place washer against "C" ring on T.V. lever shaft.
7. Install T.V. lever shaft through hole in valve body so that the T.V. lever will index between the T.V. plunger and throttle adjusting screw.
8. Install washer and "C" ring securing lever assembly to valve body.
9. Turn T.V. adjusting screw back to original position, **exactly 5 turns.**
10. Install the T.V. plunger guide retainer through cored side of valve body into annular groove in T.V. plunger guide.
11. Install the front clutch exhaust valve (land end first) and front clutch exhaust valve spring in the bore adjacent to the T.V. bore.
12. Install short retaining pin through cored side of valve body while compressing the front clutch exhaust valve spring.
13. Install the neutral clutch valve and spring in the same bore.

14. Compress the neutral clutch valve spring and install valve bore plug (threaded end out) and long copper retaining pin.

15. In the next open bore install the 3-4 valve and spring as a combination.

16. Install the 3-4 T.V. spring into spring pocket of 3-4 valve.

17. Install the 3-4 T.V. valve into the 3-4 regulator bushing so that valve will completely enter bore of bushing.

18. Install the 3-4 T.V. valve and bushing into the 3-4 bore in the valve body (small end of T.V. valve first).

19. Install the 3-4 valve bore plug (threaded side out) and retainer.

20. Install the 2-3 valve in the bore adjacent to the 3-4 valve train.

21. Install the 2-3 T.V. and shift valve springs in the same bore.

22. Install the 2-3 T.V. valve into the bushing with the stem end out.

23. Install the 2-3 T.V. valve and bushing into the 2-3 bore, valve end first.

24. Depress the bushing and install short retaining pin from the cored side of the valve body.

25. In the bore adjacent to the "U" shaped "cut-out" install the pressure boost valve, using brass rod to guide valve into bore (long land first). Install retaining pin through same bore from core face of body.

26. Install coupling timing valve (land end first) into the same bore.

27. Install coupling timing valve spring over stem end of coupling timing valve.

28. Install valve bore plug in valve body compressing and partially installing multiple plug retainer. Install retainer in such a manner that only one corner of the plug is retained. This will permit the installation of the remaining valves (Fig. 112).

29. Install the 3-4 governor valve and spring into the adjacent 3-4 bore, flat end first.

30. Install the 3-4 valve bore plug against the 3-4 governor valve, compressing plug against spring tension into the bore and position the retainer again so

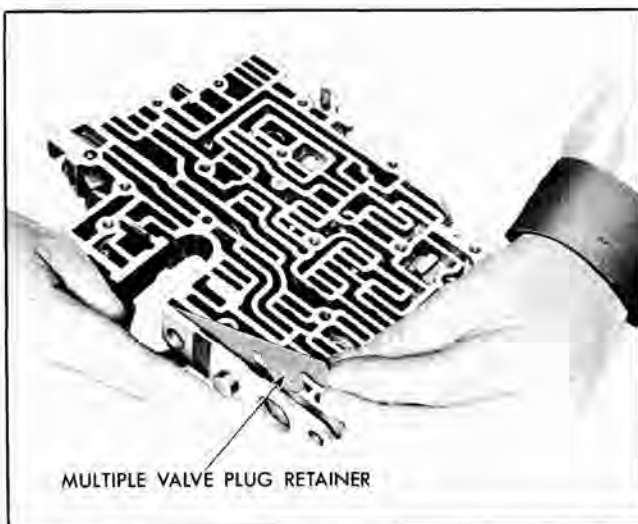


Fig. 112 Installing Multiple Valve Plug Retainer

FRONT UNIT CARRIER ASSEMBLY

1. Inspect front carrier planet pinions for damaged pinion gears, chipped tooth, nicks or burrs.
2. Check for free movement of pinion gears on pinion pins, be sure pinion pins are well staked.
3. Check splines on carrier hub for nicks or burrs.
4. Inspect front sun gear to carrier thrust washer for excessive wear, nicks, burrs or foreign particles embedded on thrust race.

MAINSHAFT AND SUN GEAR

1. Inspect mainshaft and rear unit sun gear for damaged splines, teeth or thrust washer surface. Remove sun gear from mainshaft and inspect damper for cracks, peeling or foreign material.

OUTPUT SHAFT

1. Inspect output shaft splines for nicks, or burrs.
2. Inspect snap ring groove on output shaft for good machine cut and free of dirt and chips.
3. Inspect mainshaft pilot bushing for excessive wear and tight fit.
4. Inspect parking sprocket lugs for burred edges.
5. Inspect speedo drive gear for misalignment and tight fit on output shaft.

REAR PLANET CARRIER AND SHAFT

1. Inspect rear carrier planet pinions for damaged pinion gear and free movement on pinion pins, be sure pinion pins are well staked. Check (8) planet pinion thrust washers, be sure washers have not cut a pocket in the carrier.
2. Inspect the carrier shaft splines for nicks or burrs.
3. Inspect rear carrier to rear internal gear thrust bearing and thrust bearing race. Check for foreign particles embedded in thrust race. Handle the thrust bearings with care throughout the disassembly, inspection and assembly. A slight distortion or bend caused by dropping or careless handling could cause a side loading effect, which may not be visible and cause some of the rollers to dislodge from the cage.
4. Inspect rear sun gear to rear carrier thrust washer and thrust race.
5. Use tag wire and check 6 lubrication ports for restrictions.

OVERRUN BAND

1. Inspect overrun band for excessive wear, cracks in lining and distortion.

that edge of plug is secured and the adjacent bore hole is unobstructed by the retainer.

31. Install the 2-3 governor valve into the adjacent 2-3 shift valve bore.

32. Install the bore plug in the 2-3 bore, compressing the valve against spring pressure and position multiple retainer. Make certain remaining bore is unobstructed.

33. Install the 3-2 downshift valve (land end first) into the remaining bore.

34. Place 3-2 downshift spring over 3-2 downshift valve compressing spring and secure with multiple retainer.

ASSEMBLY OF COMPLETE CONTROL VALVE

1. Install the T.V. thermostatic element open end down in cavity behind throttle valve in control valve body (location—Fig. 107).

2. Position separator plate over cored side of control valve body.

3. Install small 2 ball check valves into pockets on cored side of valve body.

4. Position channel plate on valve body and attach with 13 screws. Leave loose for final adjustment.

5. Turn control valve assembly over and install 3 ball check valves into pockets.

6. Place 3-4 boost valve body spacer on valve body.

7. Place 3-4 boost body on separator plate and install 3 attaching screws. (Do not tighten screws at this time.)

8. Install loosely two screws attaching valve body to channel body.

9. Turn control valve assembly over and install the remaining 3-4 boost body assembly control valve body assembly long attaching screw.

10. Tighten 19 control valve body assembly attaching screws 2.5 to 3.5 lb. ft.

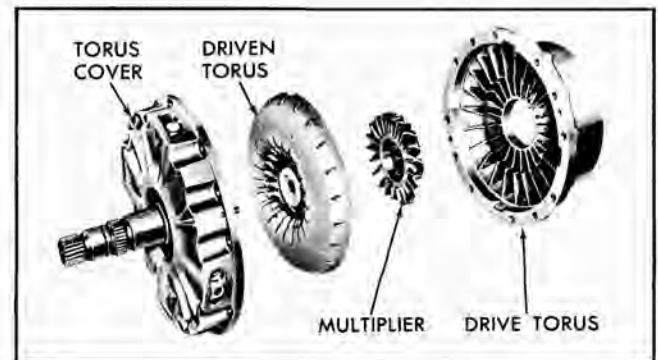


Fig. 113 Torus Assembly

INSPECTION OF REMAINING UNITS

DRIVE TORUS MEMBER AND TORQUE MULTIPLIER

1. Inspect drive torus member for porosity, chipped or damaged vanes (Fig. 113).

2. Inspect drive torus bushing for good staking and excessive wear.

3. Check for damaged splines on torque multiplier, bent or damaged vanes. Check oil seal ring on torque multiplier for broken ring and free movement in ring groove.

4. Check for burrs or restrictions on the clutch plate drive lugs.

5. Check bolt threads in drive member for cross threading.

DRIVEN TORUS MEMBER

1. Inspect driven torus member for bent or damaged vanes.

2. Check splines in driven member hub for nicks or burrs.

3. Check (2) oil seal rings and ring grooves for broken rings, check the oil seal grooves for nicks, burrs, rings, when locked should turn freely in groove.

4. Inspect the balance weight, if present, for good weld.

5. Inspect the driven coupling to torque multiplier thrust bearing race for distorted bearing surface or excessive wear on thrust race. Check for foreign particles on thrust race and clean thoroughly. A slight distortion or bend on the thrust bearing could cause a side loading effect and cause part of the rollers to dislodge from the cage.

INSTALLATION OF UNITS INTO TRANSMISSION CASE

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

| SUBJECT | PAGE | SUBJECT | PAGE |
|--|------|---------------------------------|------|
| Neutral Clutch, Case Center Support and Reverse Clutch | 81 | Rear Bearing Retainer | 85 |
| Front Unit and Rear Unit | 82 | Torus | 85 |
| Parking Linkage | 83 | Case Cover | 87 |
| Output Shaft and Governor | 84 | Servo and Accumulator | 88 |
| | | Control Valve and Oil Pan | 89 |

NEUTRAL CLUTCH, CASE CENTER SUPPORT AND REVERSE CLUTCH

1. Place transmission case in holding fixture in vertical position, front end up.
2. Install neutral clutch backing plate into case—flat side up.
3. Install 4 neutral clutch drive and 4 driven clutch plates as follows:
 - a. Install a composition drive plate above the clutch backing plate and then a steel driven plate with notched lug of plate in a slot adjacent to one of the wide lugs in the case.
 - b. Install a second composition plate and then another steel plate with its notched lug on the opposite side of the wide case lug from the first. The steel plates must be installed in this arrangement to properly un-nest the clutch pack.

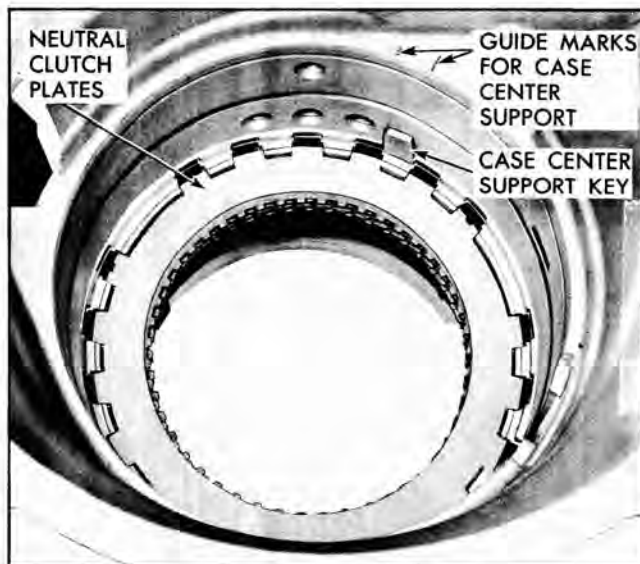


Fig. 114 Neutral Clutch Plates in Case

- c. Alternately, install composition and steel plates so that notches on the first and third steel plate are on one side of a wide lug and the second and fourth steel plate notches are on the opposite side.

4. Install long case center support key with longer lip toward front of case. Hold in place with petroleum (Fig. 114).

5. Mark the case to indicate sides of the key to assist in alignment for installation of case center support (Fig. 114).

6. Install neutral and reverse clutch assembly (case center support) into case, aligning case center support key into key way. Tapping may be required. Make sure oil rings did not come unhooked during installation.

7. Install reverse cone (steel) into case cover reverse piston.

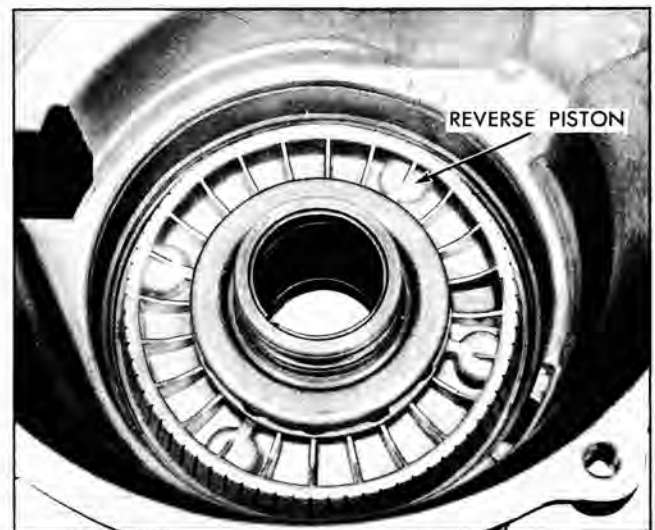


Fig. 115 Reverse Piston in Case

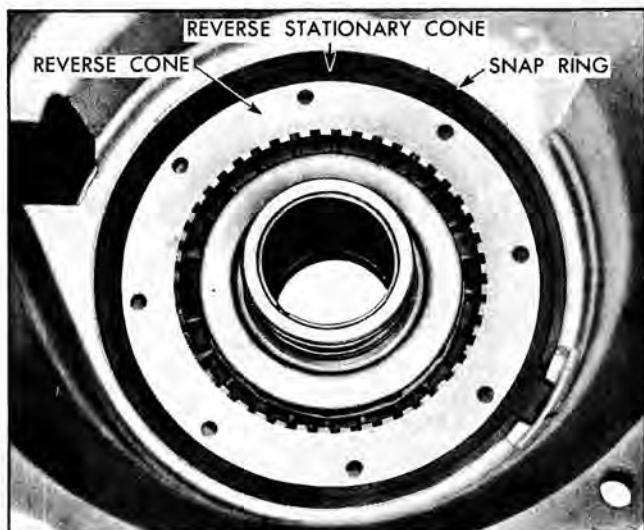


Fig. 116 Reverse Cone in Case

8. Install reverse stationary cone (plastic) in case aligning reverse stationary cone key with key way in cone, lightly tapping into place, if required.

9. Install large reverse cone snap ring into snap ring groove in case with flat ends of snap ring up, and ring gap at open segment of ring groove in case (Fig. 116).

10. Apply air pressure to clutch apply holes (No. 1 and No. 3 Fig. 66). A distinctive clunk will be heard when the pressure is released if the clutch is operating properly.



Fig. 117 Installing Bronze Thrust Washer in Front Clutch Assembly

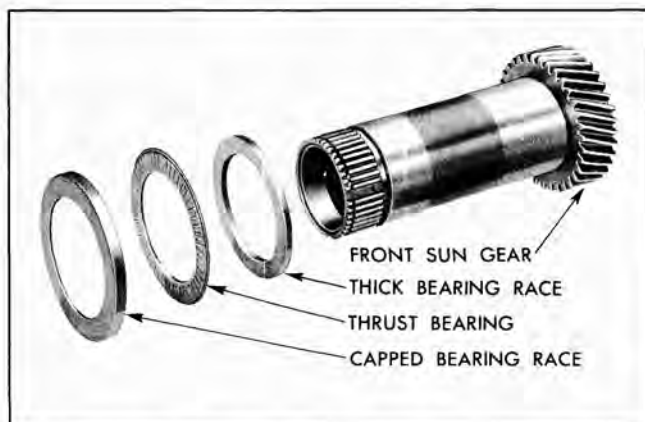


Fig. 118 Front Sun Gear Assembly

11. Reposition transmission, rear end up, and install overrun band over anchor in case.

12. Install rear unit internal gear, sprag assembly and sprag retainer into case, aligning neutral clutch plates with sprag outer race. Be sure sprag retainer bottoms against case center support to insure engagement of all plates.

13. Reposition transmission, bottom up.

FRONT UNIT AND REAR UNIT

1. Install front clutch assembly into front of transmission engaging teeth in front clutch hub with reverse cone. Be sure fiber composition washer is positioned in counterbore of front unit clutch drum (Fig. 117).

2. Install thick bearing race, thrust bearing, thin cupped bearing race on front sun gear and shaft

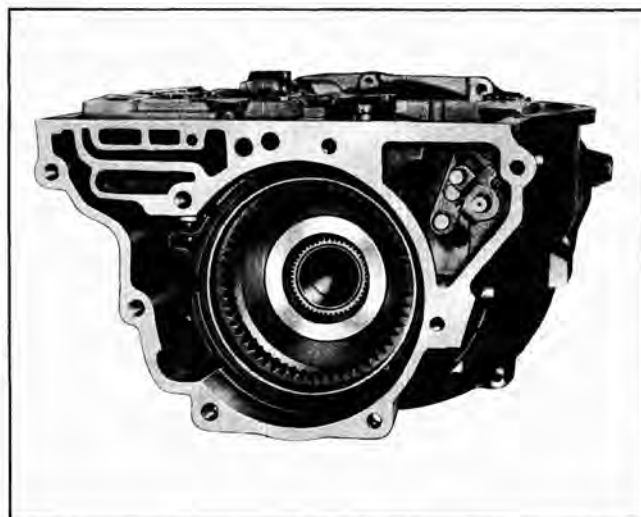


Fig. 119 Rear Internal Gear



Fig. 120 Installing Thrust Bearing on Rear Planet Carrier

assembly (Fig. 118).

3. Install front sun gear and shaft assembly through case center support aligning splines of sun gear shaft with rear internal gear and cutaway splines with sprag retainer. **CAUTION:** Be sure to hold rear unit internal gear forward during this operation (Fig. 119.)

4. Install bearing race (flange up) and bearing on rear planet carrier. Retain with petrolatum (Fig. 120).

5. Install rear planet carrier through front unit sun gear shaft from rear of transmission.

6. Install front carrier thrust bearing race onto rear carrier shaft—inner flange out (Fig. 121).

7. Install front carrier thrust bearing into race.

8. Install thrust bearing race over front thrust bearing—outer flange inward.

9. Holding the rear planet carrier forward install front unit carrier.

10. Install front unit carrier to rear planet carrier

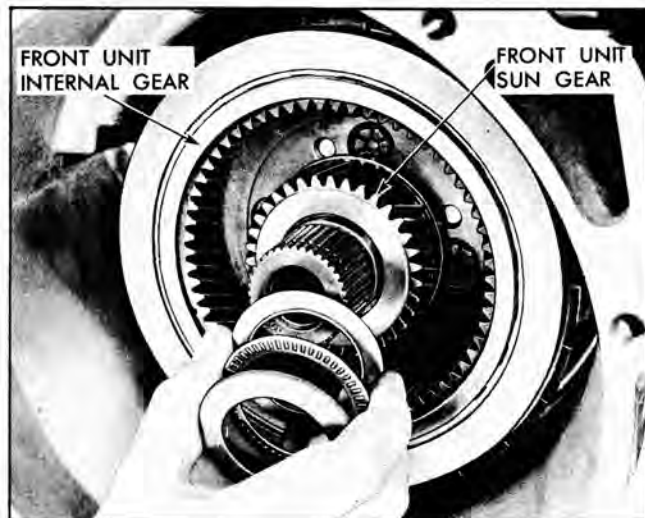


Fig. 121 Installing Thrust Bearing and Races on Front Sun Gear

shaft snap ring while holding rear carrier forward (Fig. 122).

11. Reposition transmission, rear end up.

PARKING LINKAGE

1. Install pawl spacer in case.

2. Install parking assembly, parking pawl first, through hole in rear of case so that pawl tooth faces inside of case (Fig. 123).

3. Install pawl pin into case, through pawl and spacer.

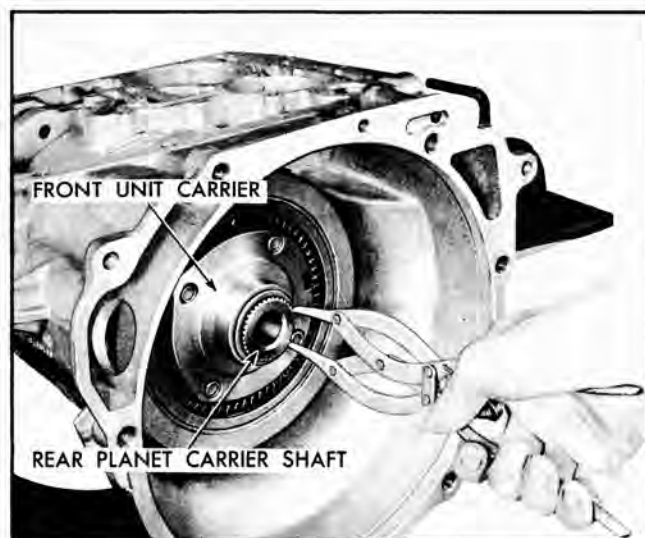


Fig. 122 Installing Front Carrier to Rear Carrier Shaft Snap Ring

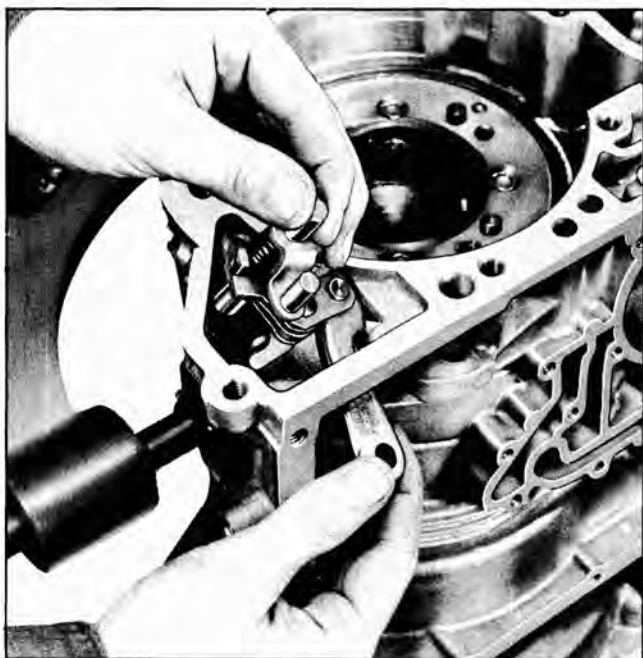


Fig. 123 Installing Parking Linkage in Case

4. Push parking bracket shaft to bottom of its bore.
5. Move pawl to its disengaged position.

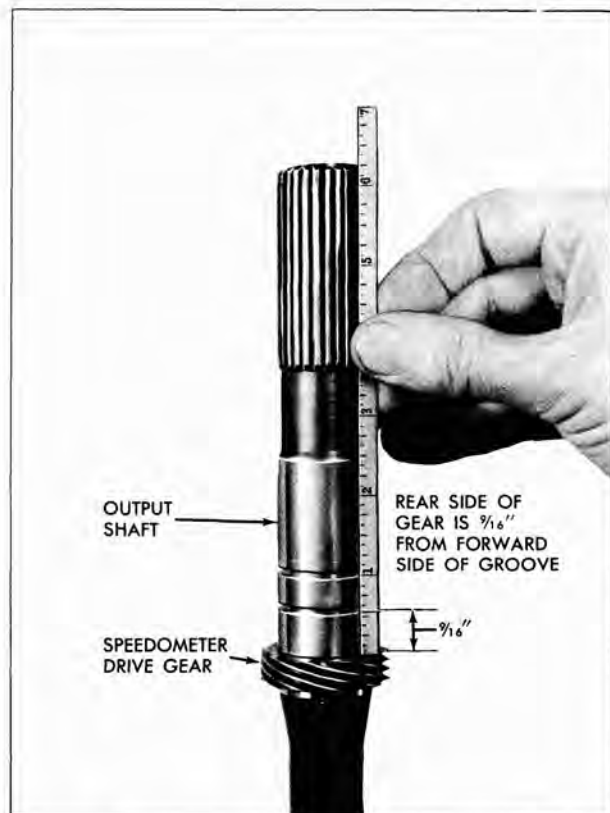


Fig. 124 Locating Speedometer Drive Gear

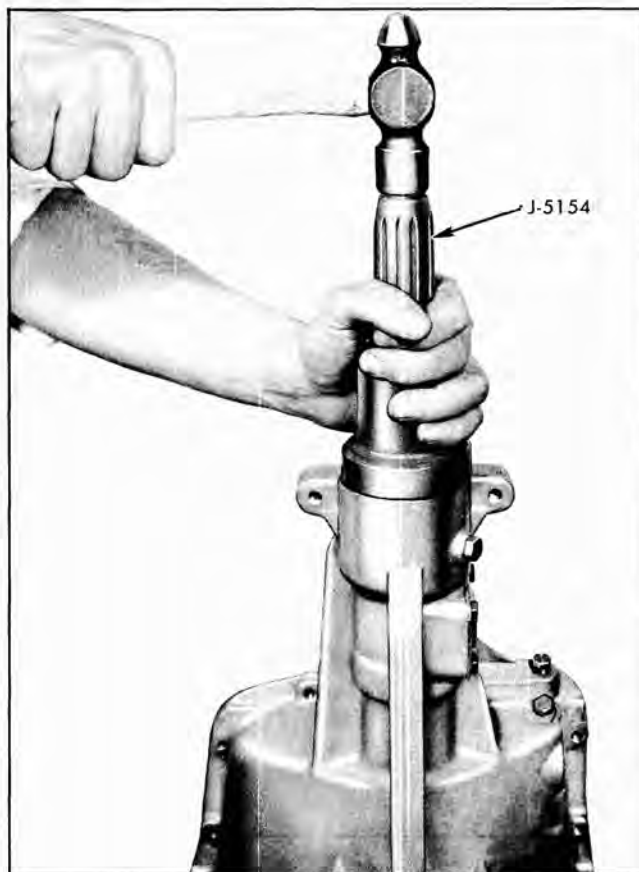


Fig. 125 Installing Rear Seal

OUTPUT SHAFT AND GOVERNOR

1. Install rear unit sun gear to rear carrier bearing race into rear carrier with flange up, retain with petrolatum.
2. Install rear unit sun gear to rear carrier thrust bearing into bearing race.
3. Assemble rear unit sun gear to mainshaft, if removed, and install through rear carrier.
4. Install governor gasket and governor on output shaft.
5. Install speedo drive gear using either tool J-6133 or press plates J-8904. Drive until rear side of gear is $\frac{9}{16}$ inches from front side of nearest snap ring groove (Fig. 124).
6. Install output shaft to rear carrier assembly using alignment marks.
7. Engage parking pawl.
8. Install 4 governor attaching bolts. Torque to 19-23 ft. lbs.
9. Install truearc snap ring on front output shaft groove.

REAR BEARING RETAINER

1. Install rear bearing retainer gasket on rear bearing retainer and retain with petrolatum.

2. Start rear bearing retainer down over output shaft and install rear output shaft snap ring through access hole and over end of output shaft while retainer is being carefully lowered over governor assembly.

3. Carefully, align parking linkage pin and manual detent lever as rear bearing retainer is aligned with dowel pin and case.

4. Using tool J-6133, if necessary, seat rear bearing snap ring. It may be necessary to move output shaft rearward to locate snap ring by repositioning transmission to horizontal position.

5. Install 4 short rear bearing retainer to case attaching bolts at top 4 holes. Install the remaining short bolt inside the rear bearing retainer. Install 3 remaining long rear bearing retainer bolts. Torque all bolts 20-25 ft. lbs.

6. If rear seal was removed, install new rear seal, using tool J-5154 (Fig. 125).

7. Install rear bearing retainer cover plate and gasket with 4 attaching bolts.

8. Reposition transmission, front end up.

TORUS

1. Install front unit drive torus aligning front unit clutch plates with drive slots in drive torus. Looking through vent port in bottom of case, observe that all clutch plates are engaged.

2. Install hook type oil ring on torque multiplier hub, if removed (Fig. 126).

3. Install hook type oil ring on front and rear hubs of driven torus member, if removed.

4. Install torque multiplier into drive torus aligning splines and position torque multiplier so that the I.D. of the hub of the torque multiplier is flush with the planet carrier shaft. A light tap with plastic hammer may be required.

5. Install driven torus to torque multiplier rear bearing race into torque multiplier.

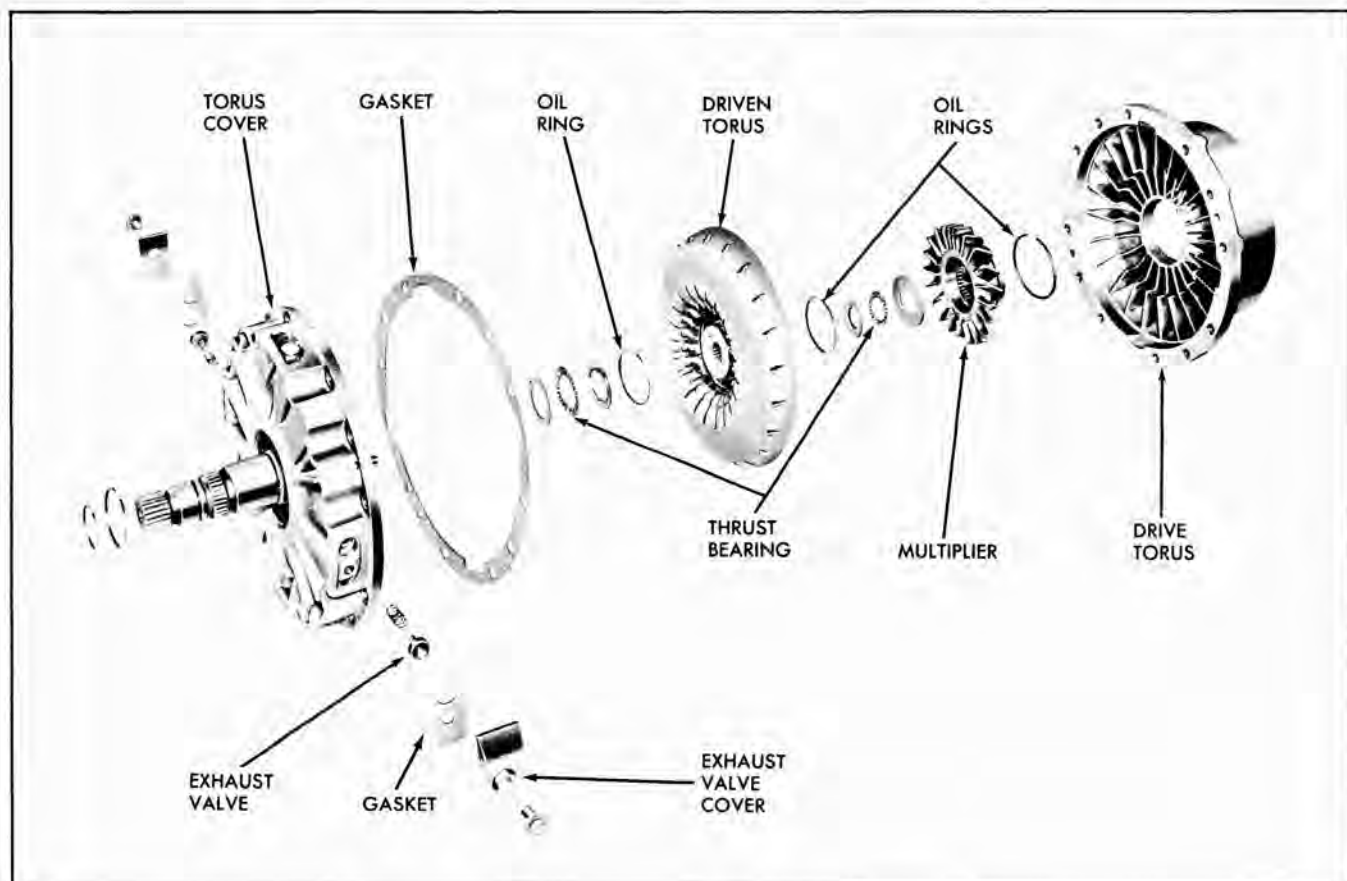


Fig. 126 Torus and Multiplier Assembly—Exploded

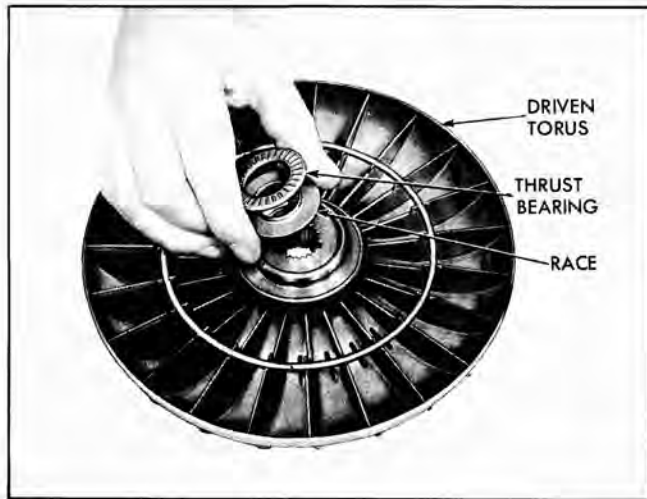


Fig. 127 Installing Thrust Bearing in Driven Torus

6. Install flanged race, flange up into driven torus (Fig. 127).

7. Install bearing into flange race, retain with petrolatum.

8. Install driven torus member over main shaft.

9. Reposition transmission 90 degrees so bottom is up. (Do not rotate more than 90 degrees or parts will fall out of front.)

10. While moving main shaft forward (with small tool inserted in hole of main shaft if necessary), install driven torus to main shaft spiral retaining ring (Fig. 128).

11. Reposition transmission, front end up.

12. Install new drive torus to torus cover metal

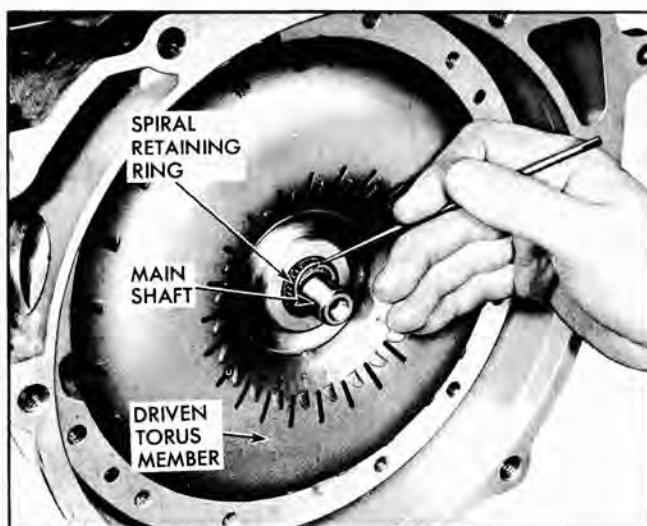


Fig. 128 Installing Spiral Retaining Ring on Main Shaft

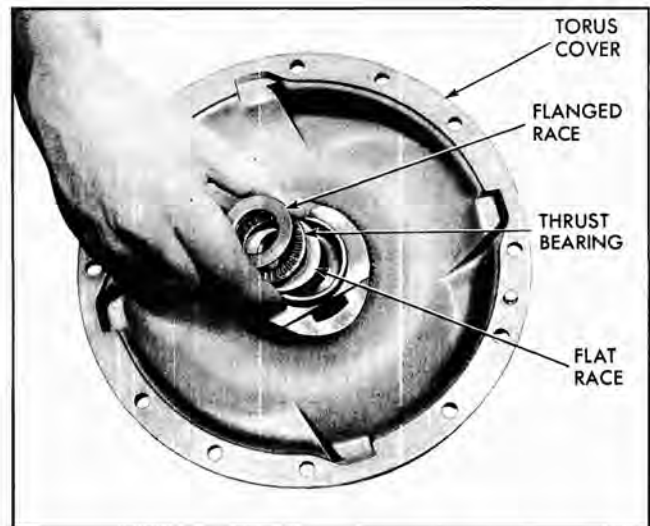


Fig. 129 Installing Thrust Bearing and Race in Torus Cover

gasket on torus drive member. Retain with petrolatum.

13. Install flat bearing race into torus cover (Fig. 129).

14. Install bearing into flanged race.

15. Install bearing and flanged race into torus cover, flange down. Use petrolatum.

16. Install torus cover to the drive torus member, aligning to the dowel pins. J-3387-2, Guide Pins, may be used.

17. Install box head wrench on case, as a tool, (Fig. 130), and install 12 torus cover to drive torus attach-

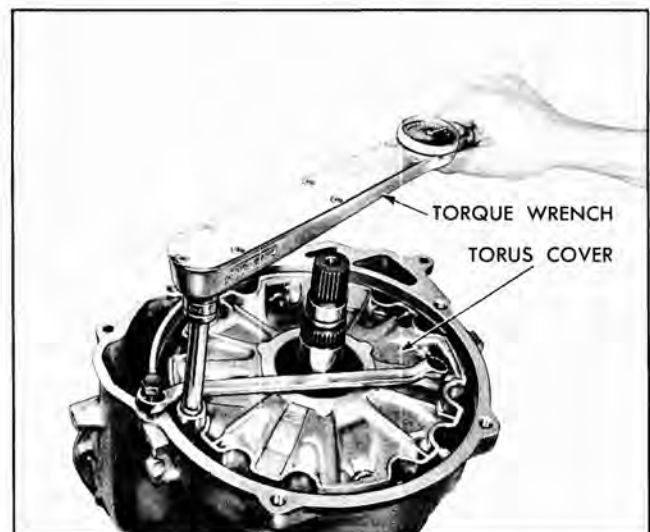


Fig. 130 Torquing Torus Cover Bolts

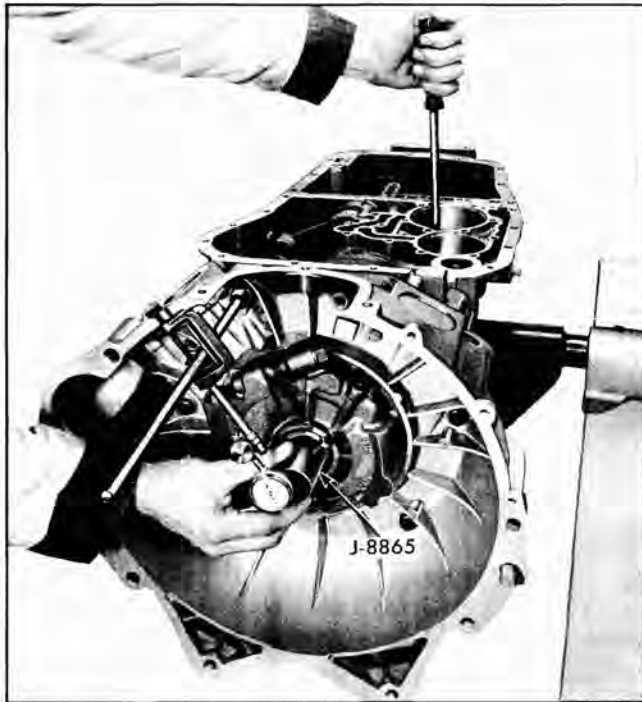


Fig. 131 Tool Set-Up for End Play Check

ing bolts, cross tightening the bolts. Torque to 17-20 ft. lbs.

18. Remove box head wrench.

CASE COVER

1. Install case cover to case gasket on case cover, use petrolatum.

2. Install case cover and pump assembly on transmission case.

3. Install five of the six large case cover to case attaching bolts leaving one hole in which to install dial indicator support. Torque to 30-35 ft. lbs. Of the three small attaching bolts the one long bolt is attached from the front of the case cover. The two remaining cover bolts are installed from the rear of the case cover. Torque 3 short bolts 15-18 ft. lbs.

FRONT UNIT END PLAY CHECK

a. Rotate transmission so bottom is up.

b. Install dial indicator support J-6126 into remaining hole in transmission case (Fig. 131).

c. Assemble end play adapter J-8865 on the input shaft of the torus cover.

d. Clamp dial indicator on support and index indicator with end of tool J-8865.

e. Position a screw driver through case, behind the

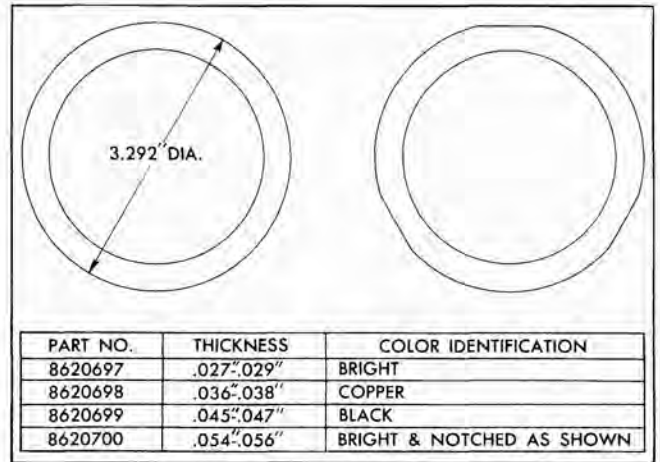


Fig. 132 Table of Selective Washers

flange on the output shaft.

f. Gently pry forward on output shaft to position units forward.

g. At the same time move handle on tool and record end play.

h. End play should be .004" to .022".

If end play is not within these limits, remove case cover and install proper thrust washer or combination of thrust washers between case cover and torus cover to produce .004"-.022" end play (Fig. 132). Replace cover and re-check end play.

i. Remove tools and install remaining case cover to case attaching bolt. Torque to 30-35 ft. lbs.

4. Rotate transmission so front end is up.

5. Install front seal, rubber lip down, using J-761 (Fig. 133). Rotate transmission back to horizontal position, bottom up.

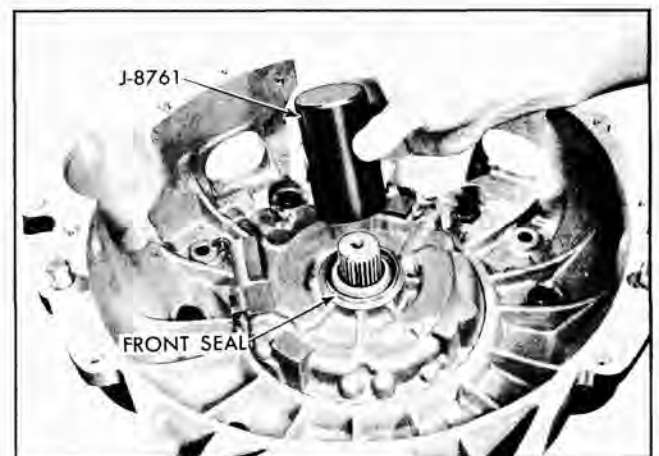


Fig. 133 Installing Front Seal

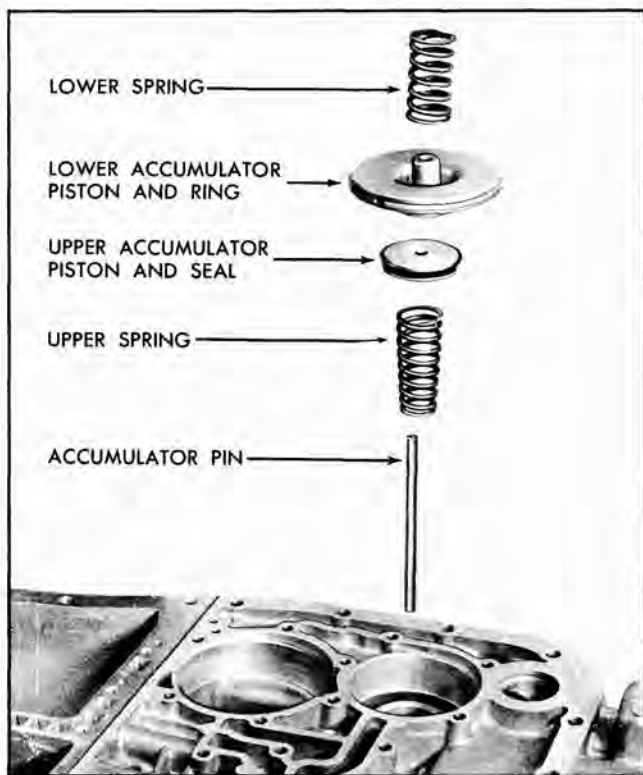


Fig. 134 Accumulator Assembly—Exploded

SERVO AND ACCUMULATOR

1. Install accumulator pin into case.
2. Install upper accumulator spring, small end first (Fig. 134).
3. Install new upper accumulator piston seal with lip of seal facing flat side of piston.
4. Install upper accumulator piston with lip of seal facing away from tapered spring.



Fig. 135 Installing Servo Piston

5. Install lower accumulator piston ring on piston, if removed.

6. Install lower accumulator piston over pin with spring pocket facing out.

7. Install lower accumulator spring into spring pocket as in Fig. 135.

8. Install servo release spring into case bore.

9. Install servo piston assembly into case, stem first (Fig. 128).

10. Install 3 case center support to case seals and springs, seals down (Fig. 136).

11. Install servo and accumulator gasket on servo and accumulator cover. Use petrolatum.

12. Install servo and accumulator cover. Use 4 bolts to locate the cover and then align case center support to case seal springs and accumulator spring. After cover is lined up, install all bolts loosely. Then, while depressing cover by hand, tighten bolts. Torque to 6-8 ft. lbs.

13. Install 8 servo and accumulator cover bolts leaving the remaining bolts until installation of the compensator body and the strainer. Torque to 6-8 ft. lbs. (Fig. 137).

14. On models other than PA, install compensator body assembly on accumulator cover using 3 attaching screws and 1 attaching bolt. Torque screws to 2.5-3.5 ft. lbs., torque bolt to 6-8 ft. lbs. PA compensator must be installed after control valve body.

15. Install seals on both ends of pipe assembly, if removed.

16. Install pipe assembly fixed end first into case cover through opening in case.

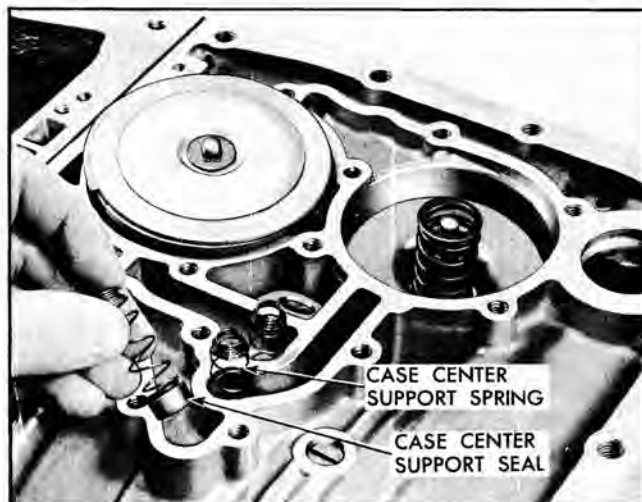


Fig. 136 Installing Case Center Support Seals and Springs

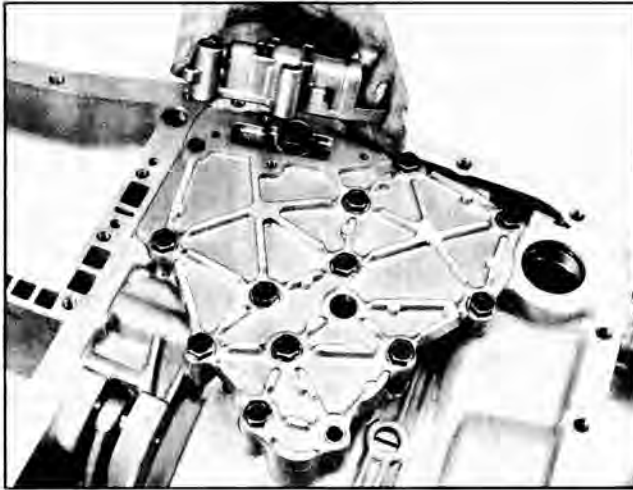


Fig. 137 Installing Compensator Valve Body

17. Install seal and washer, if removed, on pipe assembly attaching bolt, and install bolt to pipe assembly from front side of case cover.

CONTROL VALVE BODY AND OIL PAN

1. Install governor feed screen in rear bearing retainer (Fig. 137).

2. Install manual valve in valve body (Fig. 138).

3. Apply petrolatum to valve body pipe ports so not to injure "O" rings and install valve body assembly to rear bearing retainer, guiding T.V. shaft through opening in rear bearing retainer and position manual valve on pick up pin (Fig. 138). Position pipe assembly to index with pipe ports in valve body and move forward to seat pipe seals. Secure valve body assembly with 5 attaching bolts. Torque to 6-8 ft. lbs. If it is difficult to index pipes with valve body ports, loosen the pipe assembly to case cover bolt one-half turn.

The control valve body is more easily installed with this bolt loose but it must be tightened after control valve is installed.

4. Install compensator valve body on PA models.

5. Install throttle shaft seal over T.V. shaft into case, using care not to fold lip under.

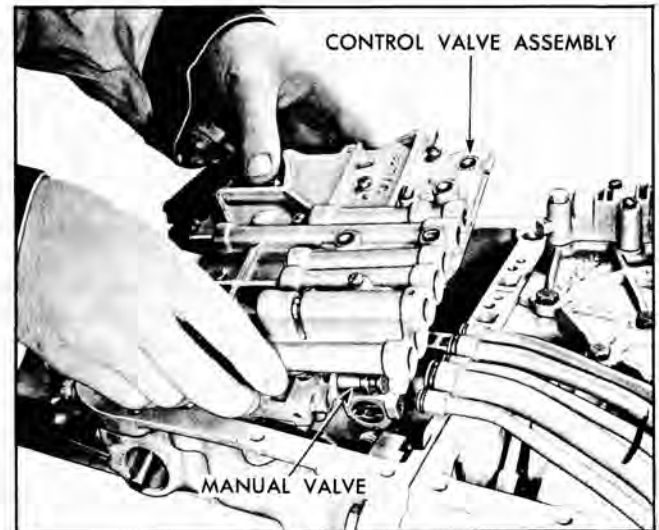


Fig. 138 Installing Control Valve Body

6. Install a case to strainer neck "O" ring in case bore, if removed.

7. Install strainer with neck in case bore and secure strainer in position with one remaining servo and accumulator cover attaching bolt. Torque to 6-8 ft. lbs.

8. Install new oil pan gasket on transmission.

9. Install oil pan on transmission. Secure with 21 attaching bolts. Place the bolts with copper washers in the locations "A" shown in Fig. 139. Torque all bolts to 12-15 ft. lbs.

10. Install outer shift lever and T.V. lever.

11. Install speedometer driven gear assembly.

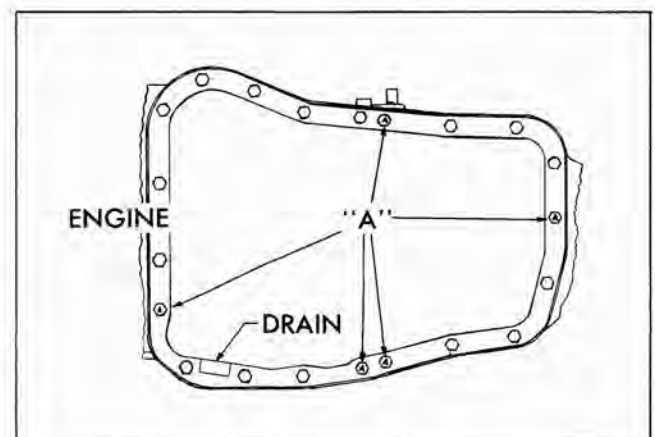


Fig. 139 Copper Washer Locations

INSTALLATION OF TRANSMISSION

1. Place transmission in jack and raise to approximate location in car.
2. Move transmission forward into position engaging transmission input shaft with the damper hub.
3. Install one transmission case cover to engine attaching bolt on each side and then lower the transmission and install the remaining bolts other than the starter attaching bolts and tighten to 50-70 lb. ft.
4. Place splash shield in position and place lower bolt through hole.
5. Place starter in position and install nut on lower bolt finger tight. Install the other splash pan to starter bolt.
6. Install both wires on starter.
7. Install 4 flywheel cover attaching bolts.
8. Install transmission case cover inspection plate with 3 attaching bolts.
9. Install breather pipe and pipe clip attaching bolt.
10. Install rear mount on transmission.
11. Raise transmission as far as necessary and install frame cross-member in the frame with 2 attaching bolts at each end.
12. Lower the transmission so that the 2 rear mount support studs go through the cross-member bracket. Install nuts. Remove transmission jack.
13. Tighten the exhaust pipe to manifold bolts.
14. Wipe some oil on the O.D. of the drive shaft yoke and slide propeller shaft onto transmission output shaft.
15. Remove tape or rubber band from "U" joint bearings and assemble "U" joint. Bend nut locking plate.
16. Install parking brake cable guide rod (cable to frame cross-member).
17. Install parking brake return spring.
18. Install oil cooler lines.
19. Install throttle idler lever.
20. Install throttle control rod (engine to idler lever) and transmission to idler lever control rod.
21. Install gearshift cross-shaft lever and its mounting bracket (2 bolts).
22. Install gearshift control upper rod on cross-shaft lever with "E" ring.
23. Install gearshift control lower rod.
24. Connect speedometer cable.
25. After car has been lowered, connect the battery cable that was removed.
26. Refill transmission with fluid as described on page 41.
27. Adjust throttle and shift linkage following instructions on page 39.
28. Test transmission oil pressure as outlined on page 91 and road test car to see that transmission operates properly.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING GUIDE

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

| SUBJECT | PAGE | SUBJECT | PAGE |
|-----------------------|------|-----------------|------|
| Testing and Diagnosis | 91 | Noise Diagnosis | 94 |
| Diagnosis Guide | 92 | Oil Leaks | 95 |

The information contained in this Diagnosis Guide has been prepared as a Supplementary Guide. It is an aid to and not a substitute for a good basic understanding of the Principles of Operation.

It is of utmost importance to observe and perform all preliminary steps outlined in this Diagnosis Guide.

Make certain that all "on the car repairs" possibilities have been exhausted before the transmission is removed from the car.

TESTING AND DIAGNOSIS

TESTING

This section outlines the procedure to be followed in testing and diagnosis prior to attempting to correct any assumed malfunctions of the 375-62 Roto Hydra-Matic transmission.

1. Check Oil Level

Always check the oil level before road testing. Erratic shifting or other malfunctions can in some cases be traced to improper oil level.

- a. Park the car in a level position and set selector lever in the "P" position. Let engine idle until operating temperature is reached.
- b. Check oil level indicator. If oil level is low add Hydra-Matic fluid to "Full" mark.

CAUTION: Use only "Automatic Transmission Fluid" (type A) which has been approved and labeled "AQ-ATF" or "AQ-ATF-A".

For a proper diagnosis, a thorough knowledge of the operation of the new Hydra-Matic transmission is essential. A predetermined test route should be established to save time and permit comparison of different cars over the same route. Where possible, the route should be laid out to include some hilly section to test for open throttle downshifts, a level section for testing upshift points and a quiet section for testing for noise.

CAUTION: Do not stall test transmission under any conditions.

Always be certain the engine is operating at peak performance. The engine and transmission are designed and built to operate as an integral power unit. Failure of the engine to deliver peak power can result in improper shift characteristics and apparent transmission malfunction.

While road testing, the transmission oil pressure gauge should be connected to the upper of the two test holes on the left-hand side of the rear bearing retainer and the pressure checked as follows:

DRIVE RIGHT

| | MINIMUM | MAXIMUM |
|---|---------|---------|
| 3RD—Steady Road Load at Approximately 25 mph. | 98.6 | 111.4 |

LOW OIL PRESSURE

1. Oil Level—Low
2. Boost Plug—Wrong—Stuck
3. Pressure Regulator Valve
4. Strainer and "O" Ring
5. Manual Valve—Misaligned with Quadrant
6. Foaming or Cavitation
7. Internal Leak
8. Control Valve Assembly—Stuck Valve
9. Front Pump—Slide Stuck—Low Output

HIGH OIL PRESSURE

1. Pressure Regulator Valve—Stuck
2. Boost Plug—Wrong—Stuck
3. Manual Valve—Misaligned with Quadrant
4. Control Valve Assembly—Stuck Valve
5. Front Pump—Slide Stuck—High Output

UPSHIFTS

| Shift | Left Drive Range | | Right Drive Range | | Lo Range | |
|-------|------------------|---------------|-------------------|---------------|-------------------|---------------|
| | Minimum Throttle | Full Throttle | Minimum Throttle | Full Throttle | Minimum Throttle | Full Throttle |
| 2-3 | 14-18 | 33-40 | 14-18 | 33-40 | No Shift Possible | |
| 3-4 | 18-23 | 76-89 | — | 76-89 | — | 76-89 |

DOWNSHIFTS

| Shift | Left Drive Range | | Right Drive Range | | Lo Range | |
|-------|------------------|----------------------|-------------------|----------------------|-----------------|----------------------|
| | Closed Throttle | Full Throttle Forced | Closed Throttle | Full Throttle Forced | Closed Throttle | Full Throttle Forced |
| 2-3 | 20-15* | 84-68 | 84-72 | 84-72 | 84-72 | 84-72 |
| 3-4 | 16-13* | 29-25 | 16-13 | 29-25 | 52-46 | 52-46 |

Fig. 140 Shift Speed Chart

*When this shift occurs, the transmission will free-wheel; therefore, it is impossible to observe shift with throttle closed. To check for shift, decelerate, with throttle closed to specified speed, then accelerate to determine which speed transmission is in.

The term "Minimum Throttle" denotes a fixed throttle opening only sufficient to provide acceleration enough to accomplish each of the shifts. The transmission should shift within the limits indicated in the columns under the heading "Minimum Throttle."

The conditions under which downshifts occur are as follows: (1) Closed throttle: When the accelerator

pedal is in the released position and the car is coasting gradually losing speed. (2) Forced: When the accelerator pedal is fully depressed through the detent to full throttle. NOTE: When driving in the left drive range in fourth gear at about 35 mph or less, partially depressing the accelerator pedal will cause the fourth to third downshift.

When checking shift points keep in mind that there may be a slight variation from the speeds shown in the shift speed chart (Fig. 139). Slight variations are no cause for adjustment providing shifts are smooth.

DIAGNOSIS

EXTERNAL LINKAGE

The importance of proper linkage adjustment can not be over-emphasized. Improper linkage adjustment can cause rough erratic shifting, missing shifts, or the inability to select one or more of the ranges.

NO DRIVE IN DRIVE RANGE

1. Neutral Clutch
2. Sprag Assembly—Or Race
3. Coupling

4. Low Oil Level
5. Low Oil Pressure
6. Passage Restricted
7. Internal Leak
8. Linkage—Manual
9. Control Valve Assembly
10. Reverse Cone Sticking

POWER FLOW—REVIEW

| DRIVE RANGE | STAGE | CPLG | FRONT CLUTCH | OVERRUN BAND | NEUTRAL CLUTCH | REVERSE CLUTCH |
|-------------|--------------|--------|--------------|--------------|----------------|----------------|
| PARK | — | Filled | Off | Off | Off | Off |
| NEUTRAL | — | Filled | Off | Off | Off | Off |
| DRIVE LEFT | First-Second | Filled | Off | Off | On | Off |
| | Third | Empty | On | Off | On | Off |
| | Fourth | Filled | On | Off | On | Off |
| DRIVE RIGHT | First-Second | Filled | Off | On | On | Off |
| | Third | Empty | On | On | On | Off |
| | Fourth | Filled | On | Off | On | Off |
| LO | First-Second | Filled | Off | On | On | Off |
| | Third | Empty | On | On | On | Off |
| | Fourth | Filled | On | Off | On | Off |
| REVERSE | — | Filled | Off | Off | Off | On |

DRIVE IN NEUTRAL

1. Neutral Clutch
2. Linkage—Manual

NO REVERSE

1. Linkage—Manual
2. Low Pressure
3. Reverse Cone Clutch
4. Restricted Passage
5. Neutral Clutch

DRIVE IN "RIGHT DRIVE" OR LOW RANGE ONLY

1. Sprag Assembly
2. Neutral Clutch

FORWARD DRIVE IN REVERSE

1. Manual Linkage
2. Neutral Clutch

REVERSE DRIVE IN NEUTRAL

1. Reverse Cone Clutch

DRIVE IN THIRD AND FOURTH ONLY

1. Control Valve Assembly

DRIVE IN FIRST, SECOND AND FOURTH ONLY

(MIGHT BE REPORTED AS 2-3 SLIP)

1. Control Valve Assembly
2. Coupling

DRIVE IN FIRST, SECOND AND THIRD ONLY

1. Governor (G-2)
2. Control Valve Assembly

SLIPPING 2-3 SHIFT

(CAN BE REPORTED AS 2-4 ONLY)

1. Front Clutch
2. Control Valve Assembly
3. Accumulator
4. Compensator Body Assembly
5. Low Oil Pressure
6. T.V. Linkage
7. 2-3 Oil Passages

SLIPPING 3-4

1. Coupling
2. Control Valve Assembly
3. Front Clutch

SLIPPING ALL RANGES

1. Low oil pressure

ROUGH 2-3 SHIFT

1. Accumulator
2. Compensator Body Assembly
3. Front Clutch
4. Front Clutch Passage
5. Control Valve Assembly
6. T.V. Linkage
7. Coupling

ERRATIC SHIFTS

1. Governor Assembly
2. Control Valve Assembly

HIGH OR LOW UPSHIFTS.

1. T.V. Linkage (Short-High Upshifts)
(Long-Low Upshifts)
2. Control Valve Assembly
3. Governor
4. T.V. Lever

5. Governor Oil Passage
6. T.V. Pressure
7. Line Pressure

NO ENGINE BRAKING INTERMEDIATE OR LOW RANGE

1. Overrun Band
2. Overrun Servo

NO PART THROTTLE OR DETENT DOWNSHIFTS

1. T.V. Linkage
2. Control Valve Assembly
3. Accelerator Travel
4. Governor

SELECTOR LEVER WILL NOT GO INTO REVERSE

1. Manual Linkage
2. Reverse Blocker Valve
3. Governor

SELECTOR LEVER WILL NOT GO INTO PARK

1. Parking Linkage
2. Manual Linkage

NOISE DIAGNOSIS

| Occurs Under Following Conditions | Possible Cause |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. All ranges—More pronounced with hot oil—1st and 2nd gear approximately 1000 to 1200 R.P.M. (Moan) | 1. Oil Pump |
| 2. 3-2-3-4 Shift (Whine) | 2. Oil Pump |
| 3. 3rd and Reverse Gear Noise Low RPM (Only) | 3. Front Unit Gear Set |
| 4. 1st-2nd-3rd, Reverse and Neutral Gear Noise—High R.P.M. Predominate noise 3rd during 3-4 shift | 4. Rear Unit Gear Set |
| 5. 3-4 Hot Oil Low R.P.M. | 5. (Coupling Fill) Pump Whine |
| 6. All Except 3rd | 6. Coupling |
| 7. Buzzing | 7. T.V. Valves and Governor |
| 8. Rattle—Light Load—4th | 8. Damper |

OIL LEAKS

Before attempting to correct an oil leak, the actual source of the leak must be determined. In many cases the source of the leak can be deceiving due to "wind flow" around the engine and transmission. If any doubt exists as to the source of the leak there are two ways to determine it.

1. RED DYE

The addition of red dye to the transmission oil will indicate if the leak is from the transmission.

2. BLACK LIGHT

The use of a "Black Light"* to identify the oil from the leak is also suitable. Comparing the oil from the leak to that on the engine or transmission dip stick when viewed by black light will determine the source of the leak.

*A "Black Light" testing unit may be obtained from several different service tool suppliers.

Oil leaks around the engine and transmission are generally carried toward the rear of the car. For example, a transmission "oil filler tube to oil pan leak" will sometimes appear as a leak at the rear of the transmission.

1. TRANSMISSION OIL PAN

- a. Improperly installed or damaged gasket.
- b. Attaching bolts not correctly torqued.
- c. Filler pipe flange weld or stripped threads.
- d. Filler pipe.
- e. Oil pan not flat.
- f. Rear bearing retainer and/or case not positioned correctly at oil pan.

2. REAR BEARING RETAINER

- a. Rear seal not installed properly or damaged.
- b. Gasket (rear bearing retainer to case) damaged or improperly installed.

- c. Rear bearing retainer to case attaching bolts not correctly torqued.
- d. Speedo gear housing not tight or seal damaged.
- e. Main line pressure plug not tight.
- f. T.V. line pressure plug not tight.
- g. Porus casting.
- h. T.V. lever seal.
- i. Cover plate not flat.
- j. Cover plate gasket improperly installed or defective.
- k. Cover plate screw not correctly torqued.

3. COOLER CONNECTIONS

- a. Adaptor not correctly torqued.
- b. Adaptor defective.

4. CASE COVER ASSEMBLY LEAKS

- a. Gasket-Case to Case Cover improperly installed.
- b. Bolts-Improperly torqued.
- c. Washer Seals-Damaged.
- d. Plate-Not flat.
- e. Plate Gasket-Defective.

5. FRONT END LEAKS

- a. Front pump "O" ring cut or improperly installed.
- b. Front seal.
- c. Case to case cover gasket.
- d. Case cracked or porus.
- e. Cut or improperly installed "O" ring-coupling feed limit valve, (in pump).
- f. Cut or improperly installed "O" ring-pressure regulator assembly, (in pump).
- g. Manual shaft seal-defective or improperly installed.

SPECIFICATIONS

GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS

| | |
|--|--|
| Input Shaft End Play | .004"-.022" |
| Gear Ratios | |
| 1st | 3.50:1 |
| 2nd | 2.93:1 |
| 3rd | 1.56:1 |
| 4th | 1.00:1 |
| Reverse | 3.53:1 |
| Fluid | |
| Type | Automatic Transmission Fluid (Type A) bearing Armour Institute Qualification No. "AQ-ATF" |
| Capacity | |
| Refill (after drain) | Approx. 4 $\frac{1}{4}$ qts.* |
| Refill (after removing control valve) | Approx. 5 $\frac{3}{4}$ qts.* |
| Refill (after overhaul) | Approx. 8 $\frac{1}{2}$ qts.* |
| *Correct amount of fluid should always be determined by indication on oil level indicator with transmission warm, car level, and engine idling with control lever in Park. | |
| Change transmission oil and strainer screen every | 25,000 miles |

REAR AXLE RATIOS

| | Ratio | |
|------------------------------------|-------|---------|
| Standard—All except Catalina | 2.87 | (43:15) |
| Standard—Catalina | 2.69 | (43:16) |
| Economy—All except Catalina | 2.69 | (43:16) |
| Economy—Catalina | 2.56 | (41:16) |
| Performance—All Series | 3.08 | (40:13) |
| 425-A Engine | 3.08 | (40:13) |
| 425-E Engine | 2.56 | (41:16) |
| Air Conditioning—All Series | 2.87 | (43:15) |

SPEEDOMETER GEAR USAGE CHART

| Rear Axle Ratio | Speedometer Sleeve Assembly | |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|-----------|
| | Ratio | Color |
| 40:13 (3.08) | 23:10 | Yellow |
| 43:15 (2.87) | 21:10 | Orange |
| 43:16 (2.69) | 20:10 | Red |
| 41:16 (2.56) | 19:10 | Dark Gray |

SPRING SPECIFICATIONS

This table is intended only as an identification guide since the spring specifications are subject to change during the model year.

| Name | Approx. Free Length | Diameter | No. Of Coils | Color |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------|----------|-----------------|------------|
| Damper Outer | 2.67 | .80 | 12.5 | Black |
| Damper Inner | 2.02 | .49 | 14.5 | Black |
| Pump Priming Inner | .49 | .38 | 5.35 | Plain |
| Pump Priming Outer | .73 | .51 | 5.75 | Plain |
| Cplg. Feed Limit Valve | 2.66 | .49 | 23 | Plain |
| Pressure Regulator | 1.58 | .48 | 12.75 | Yellow |
| Coupling Exhaust Valve | .72 | .34 | 7 | Plain |
| Frnt. Clutch Release | 1.04 | .44 | 8.5 | Plain |
| Neutral Cl. Release | .87 | .34 | 10 | Green |
| Reverse Clutch Release | .79 | .36 | 7.8 | Plain |
| Servo Outer | 1.50 | 1.75 | 3.5 | Plain |
| Servo Inner | 1.34 | 1.25 | 3.5 | Plain |
| Accumulator Lower (P, PE) | 1.56 | 1.03 | 6 | Plain |
| Accumulator Lower (PA, PB) | 1.56 | 1.03 | 6.25 | Yellow |
| Accumulator Upper | 1.96 | .91-.77 | 9.3 | Plain |
| Servo Release | 1.83 | .67 | 9 | Plain |
| Primary Comp. Valve (P, PE) | .60 | .39 | 6.5 | Copper Fl. |
| Primary Comp. Valve (PB) | .67 | .39 | 6.5 | Red |
| Secondary Comp. Valve (P, PB, PE) | 1.28 | .57 | 8.5 | Green |
| Secondary Comp. Valve (PA) | 1.32 | .65 | 7.5 | Gray |
| Park Brake | .66 | .61 | 6.6 | Plain |
| Cplg. Timing | 1.14 | .41 | 9.5 | Blue |
| Ft. Cl. Exhaust Valve | .91 | .32 | 11 | Gray |
| Pressure Boost | 1.00 | .22 | 15.5 | Gray |
| Detent (P, PB, PE) | 1.25 | .36 | 10.5 | Gold |
| Detent (PA) | 1.28 | .36 | 11 | Blue |
| Neutral Cl. Valve | .70 | .44 | 5.5 | Plain |
| Pressure Drop | 1.30 | .36 | 11.5 | Plain |
| Pressure Relief | 3.04 | .42 | 26.5 | Yellow |
| Reverse Blocker | 1.32 | .32 | 16.5 | Yellow |
| Throttle Valve (P, PA, PB) | 1.68 | .39 | 17 | Plain |
| Throttle Valve (PE) | 1.60 | .39 | 16 | Green |
| 2-3 T.V. | .99 | .40 | 9.5 | Yellow |
| 3-2 Cut-Off Valve | 1.78 | .35 | 15.5 | Plain |
| 3-2 Down Shift Valve | .94 | .32 | 10.5 | Cad. Fl. |
| 3-4 Boost Valve | 1.35 | .35 | 10.5 | Cad. Fl. |
| 3-4 T.V. (P, PA, PB) | 1.38 | .41 | 10 | Yellow |
| 3-4 T.V. (PE) | 1.51 | .41 | 10.5 | Gray |
| 3-4 Valve (P, PA, PB) | .96 | .27 | 13 | Gold |
| 3-4 Valve (PE) | 1.06 | .27 | 14 | Red |

TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

| Location | Lb. Ft. | Location | Lb. Ft. |
|--|---------|---|---------|
| Channel Plate to 3-4 Boost Body | 2.5-3.5 | Case Cover to Case (Large) | 15-18 |
| Channel Plate to Valve Body | 2.5-3.5 | Case Cover to Pump | 15-18 |
| Valve Body to Channel Plate | 2.5-3.5 | Oil Pan to Case | 12-15 |
| 3-4 Boost Body to Valve Body | 2.5-3.5 | Front Internal Gear to Clutch Housing | 22-27 |
| Compensator Body to Servo & Accumulator Cover | 2.5-3.5 | (Governor) Output Shaft to Carrier | 19-23 |
| Servo and Accumulator Cover to Case | 6-8 | Torus Exhaust Valve to Torus Cover | 19-23 |
| Rear Bearing Retainer Cover to Retainer | 6-8 | Rear Bearing Retainer to Bushing Sleeve | 12-15 |
| Valve Body to Case | 6-8 | Torus Cover to Driving Torus | 17-20 |
| Compensator Valve Body to Case | 6-8 | Case Cover to Pipe | 10-12 |
| Pump Cover to Pump Body | 6-8 | Rear Bearing Retainer to Case | 20-25 |
| Case to Case Cover (Small) | 15-18 | Plate to Case Cover | 18-20 |
| | | Coupling Feed Limit Valve Plug | 15-20 |
| | | Pressure Regulator Plug | 15-20 |

THRUST BEARINGS

| LOCATION | O.D. | I.D. | NO. OF ROLLERS |
|---------------------------------|------|------|----------------|
| Coupling Cover to Case Cover | 3.36 | 2.61 | 32 |
| Torus Cover—Driven Torus | 1.63 | 1.00 | 30 |
| Driven Torus—Carrier Shaft | 1.50 | .89 | 29 |
| Front Carrier—Front Sun Gear | 2.20 | 1.66 | 52 |
| Front Sun Gear—Internal Gear | 2.73 | 1.91 | 54 |
| Rear Internal Gear—Rear Carrier | 2.86 | 2.13 | 56 |
| Rear Sun Gear—Rear Carrier | 2.05 | 1.38 | 42 |
| Rear Bearing Ret.—Output Shaft | 1.92 | 1.19 | 38 |

THRUST WASHERS

| | O.D. | I.D. | Thickness |
|----------------------------------|------|------|-----------|
| Front Internal Gear—Case Support | 2.49 | 2.06 | .090 |
| Case Cover Selective Washers | 3.29 | 2.62 | .028 |
| | 3.29 | 2.62 | .037 |
| | 3.29 | 2.62 | .046 |
| | 3.29 | 2.62 | .055 |

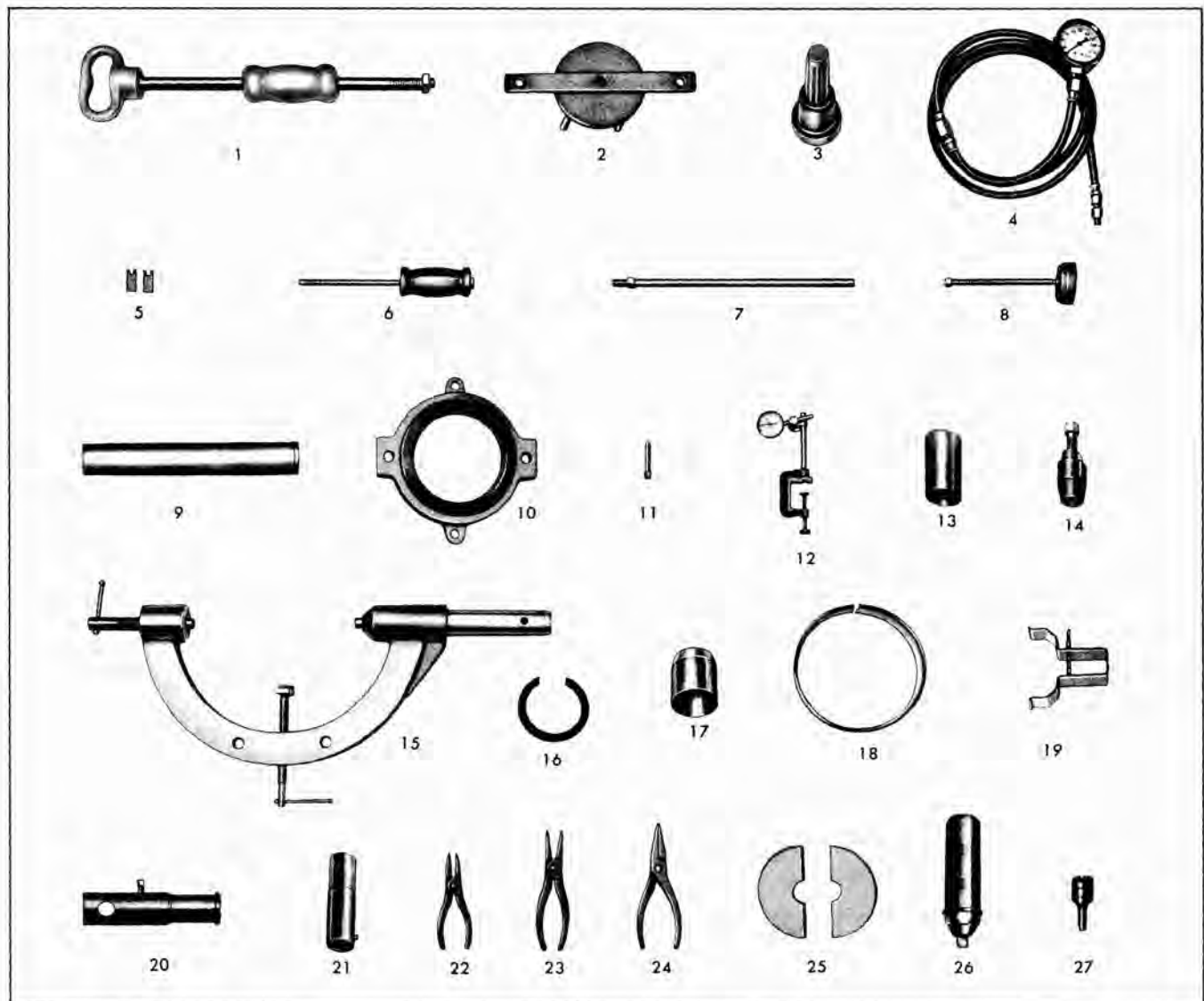


Fig. 141 Special Hydra-Matic Tools

SPECIAL HYDRA-MATIC TOOLS

| No. on Tool Fig. 141 No. | Tool Name | No. on Tool Fig. 141 No. | Tool Name | No. on Tool Fig. 141 No. | Tool Name |
|--------------------------|---|--------------------------|--|--------------------------|--|
| 1 | J-2619 Slide Hammer | 11 | J-7687 Linkage Gauge Pin | 20 | J-8845 Rear Bearing Retainer Bushing Remover |
| 2 | J-4670-C Clutch Spring Compressor | 12 | KMO-30 or J-8001 Dial Indicator Set | 21 | J-8865 Input Shaft End Play Checking Adapter |
| 3 | J-5154-A or J-5154 Rear Oil Seal Installer | 13 | J-8761 Pump Oil Seal Installer | 22 | J-8871 Truarc Plier 90 Degree Tip External |
| 4 | J-5907 Pressure Checking Gauge (with hose) | 14 | J-8762 Pump Oil Seal Remover (Optional) | 23 | J-8872 Truarc Plier 90 Degree Tip Internal |
| 5 | J-6122 Fluid Coupling Valve Retainers (2) | 15 | J-8763 Transmission Holding Fixture | 24 | J-8873 Truarc Plier 90 Degree Tip Internal |
| 6 | J-6125 Slide Hammer | 16 | J-8765 Reverse-Neutral Clutch Piston Adapter | 25 | J-8904 Speedo Gear Remover and Installer |
| 7 | J-6126 Dial Indicator Support | 17 | J-8766 Reverse Clutch Inner Seal Protector | 26 | J-9590 Exhaust Valve Cover Wrench |
| 8 | J-6129 Clutch Spring Compressor (Use with J-4670-C) | 18 | J-8767 Reverse Clutch Outer Seal Protector | 27 | J-9596 Exhaust Valve Cover Screw Remover and Installer |
| 9 | J-6133-A Installer | 19 | J-8768 Reverse Cone Puller | | |
| 10 | J-6407 Press Plate Holder | | | | |

INDEX

| SUBJECT | PAGE | SUBJECT | PAGE |
|--|------|--|-------|
| Accumulator | | Downshift | |
| Inspection | 72 | Forced 4-3 | 35 |
| Installation | 88 | Forced 3-2 | 37 |
| Operation | 19 | Part Throttle 4-3 | 35 |
| Removal | 47 | Draining and Refilling Transmission | 41 |
| Replacement | 44 | Second | |
| Adjustments In Car | | Hydraulic Action | 25 |
| Neutralizer Switch | 40 | Power Flow | 12 |
| Selector Level Linkage | 40 | Floor Shift | |
| Throttle Control Linkage | 39 | Adjustment | 40 |
| Case | | Removal | 45 |
| Inspection | 57 | Fluid | |
| Case Center Support | | Capacity | 96 |
| Inspection | 65 | Coupling Fundamentals | 7 |
| Installation | 81 | Draining and Refilling | 41 |
| Removal | 54 | Service Recommendations | 96 |
| Compensator Operation | 19 | Type Used | 4, 96 |
| Console and Floor Shift | 45 | Fluid Coupling | |
| Control Valve | | Hydraulic Operation | 7 |
| Inspection | 73 | Front Clutch Accumulator | 19 |
| Installation | 89 | Fluid Coupling | |
| Removal | 47 | Inspection | 79 |
| Replacement | 43 | Installation | 85 |
| Diagnosis | | Removal | 52 |
| Guide | 92 | Front Unit End Clearance Check | 49 |
| Instructions | 91 | Fundamental Principles | |
| Disassembly, Inspection, and Assembly of Units | | Cross-section | 10 |
| Case | 57 | Fluid Coupling and Torque Multiplier | 7 |
| Case Center Support | 65 | Governor | 18 |
| Case Cover and Pump | 57 | Operating Principles | 6 |
| Control Valves | 73 | Planetary Gear Train | 6 |
| Front Clutch | 62 | Power Flow | 11 |
| Governor | 69 | Pump | 16 |
| Parking Linkage | 70 | Relation of Units | 9 |
| Planet Carriers | 79 | Sprag Clutch | 8 |
| Rear Bearing Retainer | 71 | Governor | |
| Rear Internal Gear and Sprag | 67 | Inspection | 69 |
| Roller Clutch | 68 | Installation | 84 |
| Servo and Accumulator | 72 | Operation | 18 |
| Torus Cover | 62 | Removal | 43 |
| Torus Members | 79 | Replacement | 43 |

| SUBJECT | PAGE | SUBJECT | PAGE |
|-------------------------------------|--------|-----------------------------------|------|
| Hydraulic Action, Description | 16 | L Range | |
| First and Second | 25 | Hydraulic Action | 33 |
| Third | 26, 30 | Lubrication | |
| Fourth | 28 | Checking Oil Level | 41 |
| Forced 4-3 Downshift | 35 | Manual Valve | |
| Forced 3-2 Downshift | 37 | Description | 21 |
| LO Range | 32 | Minor Services and Repairs | |
| Neutral or Park | 22 | Accumulator Replacement | 44 |
| Part Throttle 4-3 Downshift | 35 | Checking Oil Level | 41 |
| Reverse | 34 | Control Valve Replacement | 43 |
| Input Shaft End Play | 96 | Coupling Feed Limit Valve | 42 |
| Inspection | | Fluid | |
| 2000 Mile | 38 | Capacity | 41 |
| New Car | 38 | Draining | 41 |
| Oil Level | 38, 41 | Refilling | 41 |
| Parts | 56 | Governor | 43 |
| Installation, Transmission | 90 | Parking Linkage Replacement | 44 |
| Installation, Units into Case | | Pressure Regulator Valve | 42 |
| Accumulator | 88 | Line Boost Plug | 42 |
| Case Center Support | 81 | Rear Seal and Rear Bushing | 42 |
| Case Cover | 87 | Servo Replacement | 44 |
| Control Valve | 87 | Throttle Control Lever | 39 |
| Front Unit | 82 | Neutral | |
| Governor | 84 | Hydraulic Action | 22 |
| Neutral Clutch | 81 | Power Flow | 11 |
| Oil Pan | 89 | Neutral Clutch | |
| Output Shaft | 84 | Inspection | 66 |
| Parking Linkage | 83 | Installation | 81 |
| Rear Bearing Retainer | 85 | Regulator Valve | 21 |
| Rear Unit | 82 | Removal | 54 |
| Reverse Clutch | 81 | Neutralizer Switch | 40 |
| Servo | 88 | New Car Inspection | |
| Torus | 85 | Service Recommendations | 38 |
| Intake Pipe | | Oil Circuit Diagram | 36 |
| Installation | 90 | Oil Cooler Lines | |
| Removal | 41 | Installation | 90 |
| Limit Valve, Coupling Feed | | Removal | 46 |
| Hydraulic Operation | 21 | Oil Leaks | 95 |
| Linkage Adjustment | | Oil Level Indicator | |
| Neutralizer Switch | 40 | Service Recommendations | 38 |
| Selector Lever | 40 | Oil Pan | |
| Throttle Control | 39 | Installation | 89 |
| | | Removal | 47 |

| SUBJECT | PAGE | SUBJECT | PAGE |
|--|--------|----------------------------------|--------|
| Oil Pressure Test | 91 | Pressure Regulator | |
| Oil Pump Operation | 16 | Inspection | 59 |
| Oil Screen | | Installation | 42 |
| Installation | 89 | Removal | 42 |
| Removal | 47 | Replacement | 42 |
| Operating Instructions | | Rear Bearing Retainer | |
| Cold Weather | 3 | Installation | 42, 85 |
| Drive Range (DR) | 3 | Removal | 42, 49 |
| Low Range (L) | 4 | Rear Unit | |
| Parking (P) | 4 | Inspection | 67 |
| Reverse (R) | 4 | Installation | 82 |
| Starting Engine | 3 | Removal | 52 |
| Towing | 4 | Removal, Transmission | 46 |
| Overrun Band and Servo | | Removal, Units from Case | |
| Description | 20 | Accumulator and Servo | 47 |
| Inspection | 80 | Case Center Support | 54 |
| Installation | 82 | Case Cover and Pump | 51 |
| Removal | 54 | Control Valve | 47 |
| Park | | Parking Linkage | 55 |
| Power Flow (same as Neutral) | 11 | Rear Bearing Retainer | 49 |
| Parking Linkage | | Reverse Clutch | 54 |
| Inspection | 70 | Torus, Front and Rear Unit | 52 |
| Installation | 44, 83 | Repairs, Minor | |
| Removal | 44, 55 | Accumulator | 44 |
| Periodic Service Recommendations | 38 | Coupling Feed Limit Valve | 42 |
| Planetary Gear Train | 6 | Control Valve Assembly | 43 |
| Power Flow | | Governor | 43 |
| First and Second | 12 | Line Boost Plug | 42 |
| Third | 13 | Parking Brake Linkage | 44 |
| Fourth | 14 | Pressure Regulator Valve | 42 |
| Neutral | 11 | Rear Seal and Rear Bushing | 42 |
| Reverse | 15 | Servo Replacement | 44 |
| Review Action of Units | 16 | Throttle Control Lever | 39 |
| Pressure Regulation | | Reverse | |
| TV | 18 | Hydraulic Action | 34 |
| Pump | | Installation | 81 |
| Inspection | 57 | Power Flow | 15 |
| Installation | 61 | Removal | 54 |
| Operation | 16 | Reverse Blocker | |
| Removal | 51 | Inspection | 76 |
| | | Valve | 21 |

| SUBJECT | PAGE | SUBJECT | PAGE |
|-----------------------------------|-----------|-------------------------------|------|
| Reverse Clutch | | Fourth | |
| Inspection | 66 | Hydraulic Action—Drive Left | 28 |
| Installation | 81 | Power Flow | 14 |
| Removal | 54 | | |
| Road Test | 91 | Throttle Control Linkage | |
| Roller Clutch | 68 | Adjustment | 39 |
| Third | | Inspection | 39 |
| Hydraulic Action—Drive Left | 26 | Lever Installation | 90 |
| Hydraulic Action—Drive Right | 30 | Lever Removal | 39 |
| Power Flow | 13 | Replacement | 39 |
| Selector Lever Linkage Adjustment | 40 | Thrust Bearing Specifications | 98 |
| Serial Number | 5 | Thrust Washer Specifications | 98 |
| Service Recommendations | | Tools, Special | 99 |
| New Car Inspection | 38 | Towing | 4 |
| Oil Level Indicator | 38, 41 | Torque Specifications | 98 |
| Transmission Fluid | 4, 41, 96 | | |
| Minor Repairs | 41 | Torus Members | |
| Servo, Overrun Band | | Inspection | 77 |
| Inspection | 72 | Installation | 85 |
| Installation | 88 | Removal | 52 |
| Removal | 47 | | |
| Replacement | 44 | Transmission | |
| Schematic Circuit Diagram | 36 | Description | 3 |
| Shift Speed Chart | 92 | Installation | 90 |
| Specifications | | Removal | 46 |
| General | 96 | Valves, Description | 21 |
| Springs | 97 | Accumulator | 22 |
| Thrust Washers | 98 | Coupling Exhaust | 21 |
| Thrust Bearings | 98 | Coupling Feed Limit | 21 |
| Torque | 98 | Coupling Timing | 21 |
| Sprag Clutch | | Front Clutch Exhaust | 21 |
| Operation | 8 | Manual | 21 |
| Spring Specifications | 97 | Neutral Clutch | 21 |
| Testing | | Pressure Boost | 21 |
| Oil Pressure | 95 | Pressure Drop | 21 |
| Road | 91 | Reverse Blocker | 21 |
| Thermostatic TV Controls | 18 | TV Plunger (Detent Valve) | 21 |
| | | 2-3 Shift | 21 |
| | | 3-2 Cut Off | 21 |
| | | 3-2 Downshift | 21 |
| | | 3-4 Boost | 21 |
| | | 3-4 Shift | 21 |

SUPER HYDRA-MATIC TRANSMISSION

This part of the 1962 Hydra-Matic Shop Manual describes the fundamental principles of the Super Hydra-Matic transmission and contains complete instructions for operating and servicing the unit.

A basic understanding of the principles of operation and use of the diagnosis and testing guide in rear of manual will aid the service man in quickly determining the cause of any malfunction.

The step by step procedures in the manual are appropriately illustrated to assist the service craftsman in doing a quality job.

Adjustments and certain minor services are performed with the transmission in the car; major repairs or reconditioning require removal of the transmission from the car.

The Titles in Table of Contents on the right hand side of this page register with black tabs at the beginning of each section. An Alphabetical Index at the rear of manual should be used to locate specific information on servicing the unit.

Table of Contents

| TITLE | PAGE |
|---|------|
| DESCRIPTION AND OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS | 3 |
| FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES | 6 |
| PERIODIC SERVICE RECOMMENDATIONS | 35 |
| ADJUSTMENTS WITH TRANSMISSION IN CAR | 36 |
| MINOR SERVICE AND REPAIRS | 38 |
| REMOVE TRANSMISSION | 40 |
| REMOVE UNITS FROM CASE | 41 |
| DISASSEMBLY, INSPECTION AND ASSEMBLY OF UNITS | 49 |
| INSTALL UNITS INTO CASE | 79 |
| INSTALL TRANSMISSION | 90 |
| TESTING AND DIAGNOSIS | 92 |
| SPECIFICATIONS | 100 |
| SPECIAL TOOLS | 105 |
| INDEX | 106 |

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

| SUBJECT | PAGE | SUBJECT | PAGE |
|---------------------------------|------|---------------|------|
| Operating the Super Hydra-Matic | 3 | Serial Number | 5 |
| Hydra-Matic Drive Fluid | 4 | | |

SUPER HYDRA-MATIC DRIVE

The Super Hydra-Matic drive consists of a fluid coupling, which replaces the conventional clutch, combined with a hydraulically controlled automatic transmission having four speeds forward and one reverse. Gear shifting is automatic and is controlled by the requirements of road conditions encountered and the wishes of the driver.

OPERATING THE SUPER HYDRA-MATIC

The Hydra-Matic drive is convenient to operate in that the driver need only select, by use of the control lever and indicator segment (Fig. 1), the speed range in which he wishes the car to operate. The speed ranges are clearly shown on the indicator segment, and are illuminated when the instrument panel lights are turned on. The speed ranges are designated as follows:

P—Parking and starting

N—Neutral and starting

▲DR—(D on floor shift cars)—For all normal forward driving and maximum fuel economy.

DR▲—(S on floor shift cars)—For faster acceleration when driving in congested traffic and for engine braking in hilly terrain.

L—For controlled power

R—Reverse

TO START ENGINE

1. Place control lever in P or N position. Starter is inoperative in any other position.

2. Engine cold—Depress accelerator pedal to floor once and release (this presets automatic choke and throttle.)

Engine Warm—Hold accelerator pedal about half open.

3. Turn ignition key to right to engage starter, release as soon as engine starts.

NOTE: At temperatures below 0°F. it may be



Fig. 1 Indicator

necessary to hold the accelerator pedal down slightly while starting.

Do not pump the accelerator at any time. Avoid racing the engine during the warm-up period. Should the engine flood, hold the accelerator pedal to the floor forcibly while starting the engine.

COLD WEATHER

In cold weather (0°F. and colder) the engine must idle with the control lever in P (park) or N (neutral) position until engine and transmission are warmed up. This can more safely be done in the P (park) position as the transmission will then keep the car from rolling on a grade or incline. When engine is cold and running at fast idle, the car will creep when the control lever is moved to a driving position. A slight application of the foot brake or parking brake will hold the car until motion is desired.

OPERATING IN DR RANGE

DR range has two driving positions, each marked by an arrow. The control lever can be moved at will from one arrow position to the other when traveling at any car speed on dry roads where traction is good.

The left hand arrow position in DR range is provided for all normal forward driving; it reduces engine speed, provides better driving comfort and improves fuel economy. When driving in this range, extra performance can be obtained by fully depressing the accelerator pedal. This will cause the transmission to shift down into third speed. The car speed determines the amount the accelerator pedal must be depressed to cause this shift. At a speed of about 35 mph or less the accelerator pedal need only be partially depressed to cause the shift and at speeds of 35

mph to 65 mph it is necessary to completely depress the pedal. The transmission will automatically return to fourth speed as car speed increases or the accelerator pedal is released. Refer to figure 187 for shift speeds.

The right hand arrow position in DR range is provided for improved performance at medium car speeds and is very useful when driving in congested traffic or in hilly terrain where overrun braking is required. In this range the transmission is prevented from shifting into fourth speed (except at very high car speeds). In effect it becomes a 3 speed transmission in DR right range. It is also effective when ascending or descending long mountain grades.

When driving in either DR range at a car speed of less than 25 mph an extra burst of speed can be obtained by completely depressing the accelerator pedal. This will cause the transmission to shift down to second speed. The transmission will automatically return to third or fourth speed, depending on the DR range being used, as the car speed increases or pedal is released.

Placing the selector lever in the right hand arrow position in DR range is also recommended when starting out with a hot engine after parking, or idling for an extended period, during extremely hot weather. Under these conditions the application of the overrun clutch in drive right will prevent the engine from stalling if there is excessive vapor in the fuel lines. After a short distance of operation, the control lever may be placed in drive left position if desired.

Acceleration in left hand DR range – The shift points from first speed to second, second speed to third, and third speed to fourth (direct drive) will occur at progressively higher car speeds depending on the amount the accelerator pedal is depressed.

Caution Against Coasting in Neutral—Do not coast with the control lever in the N (neutral) position. It is unlawful in some states and sometimes is harmful to the transmission.

Stopping the Car—Leave the control lever in the driving position selected and release the accelerator pedal. The engine is then left “in gear” which helps to slow down the car. For further stopping effort apply the brakes in the conventional manner. **CAUTION:** *When the driver leaves the car, with the engine running the control lever should always be in P (park) position.* This precaution prevents movement of the car, should the accelerator pedal be accidentally depressed by a passenger and also will keep the car from rolling on a grade or incline.

OPERATING IN L RANGE

L (low) range prevents the transmission from shifting above 2nd speed (unless car speed exceeds approximately 45 mph). L range is provided for pulling through deep sand or snow and ascending or descending steep grades where traffic signs call for placing the transmission in first or second gears (keep below 45 mph to avoid a 2-3 up shift).

The control lever can be moved from either DR position to L at any car speed. The shift from DR range into L will not occur at a car speed above 43 mph. **CAUTION:** *Do not shift into L range on slippery roads as a skid may be induced.*

REVERSE

To engage reverse, simply move the control lever to the R position. Moving lever between L and R while applying light accelerator pedal pressure permits rocking the car when required to get out of deep snow, mud or sand. Avoid engaging reverse at speeds above 5 mph.

PARKING

For additional safety when car is parked leave the selector lever in the P (park) position. Mechanical engagement of parts within the transmission will then keep the car from rolling. The selector lever must be raised to move it into or out of the P (park) position.

TOWING

A 1962 Hydra-Matic equipped car can be towed at speeds up to 30 miles per hour for distances up to 50 miles, if it is known there is nothing wrong with the transmission. When towing at speeds above 30 miles per hour, disconnect propeller shaft from transmission. Check oil level after towing and add fluid if required to bring to proper level.

PUSHING

DO NOT attempt to start the engine by pushing the car. Since the pump in the transmission is driven by the engine, there is no pressure to apply the clutches when the engine is not running. The transmission, therefore, cannot transmit power to the engine to start it.

HYDRA-MATIC DRIVE FLUID

It is important to use only Automatic Transmission Fluid (Type A) identified by Armour Institute Qualification Number “AQ-ATF...”. Fluids carrying this identification followed by the letter “A” may also be used. This is an all-season fluid, ideal for year-

round operation. No special additives to these fluids are required or recommended. **NOTE:** in cases of emergency, when the specified fluid is not available, any good quality 20 W engine oil will operate for a temporary period. When such oil is used, however, it should be removed as soon as possible and the transmission refilled with the recommended fluid.

Instructions for checking fluid level and for draining and refilling transmission are given on page 38.

SERIAL NUMBER

The serial number plate on Hydra-Matics used in Bonneville and Star Chief models is located at the left side of the rear face of the transmission (Fig. 2). The serial number begins with a designation such as PS-62 which denotes the transmission used with the 2-jet carburetor. PAS-62 is used with Tri-Power, PBS-62 with a 4-jet carburetor, and PES-62 with the Economy engine.



Fig. 2 Serial Number Plate

It is very important that any communication with Pontiac Motor Division concerning Hydra-Matic transmissions always contains the transmission serial number. Likewise, all parts returned to Pontiac Motor Division should be tagged with the transmission serial number.

FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES OF THE SUPER HYDRA-MATIC TRANSMISSION

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

| SUBJECT | PAGE | SUBJECT | PAGE |
|--|------|---------------------------------|-------|
| Planetary Gear Train | 6 | Power Flow in Super Hydra-Matic | 11 |
| Fluid Coupling | 7 | Hydraulic Action in Hydra-Matic | 12-18 |
| Sprag Clutch | 8 | Operation of Front Pump | 19 |
| Hydra-Matic Components and Their Location | 8 | Governor | 19 |
| Principles of Operation of Super Hydra-Matic | 9 | Control Valves | 20-21 |

PURPOSE OF A TRANSMISSION

The purpose of a transmission is to provide suitable gear ratios between the engine and rear wheels for all driving conditions. Gear ratios are obtained through planetary gears in the Hydra-Matic transmission.

PLANETARY GEAR TRAIN

A planetary gear train (Fig. 3) consists of three members:

1. A center or "sun" gear.
2. A planet carrier with three or four planet pinion gears.
3. An internal gear.

The center or "sun" gear is surrounded by and meshes with the planet pinion gears, which rotate freely on pins attached to a common bracket called the "planet carrier." A ring with teeth machined on the inside circumference surrounds the assembly and meshes with the planet pinion gears. This is called the "internal" gear, because of its internal teeth.

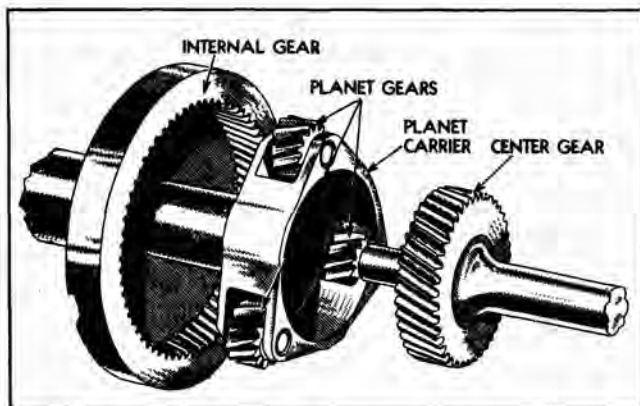


Fig. 3 Planetary Gear Train

ADVANTAGES OF A PLANETARY GEAR TRAIN

1. A planetary gear train is compact and sturdy because the load is distributed over several gears instead of only two as in the sliding gear type of gear train. Planetary gears are smaller and occupy less space, they can transmit more tooth load because there is more tooth area in contact at all times.

2. Planetary gears are always completely in mesh, thus there is no possibility of tooth damage due to gear clash or partial engagement.

3. The common axis for all members of the planetary train makes the unit more compact and facilitates its use as a coupling when any two of its members are locked together.

OPERATION OF A PLANETARY GEAR TRAIN

1. A planetary gear train can be used to increase power and decrease speed in either of two ways.

a. One method of obtaining speed reduction (power multiplication) is to hold the internal gear stationary while power is applied to the center gear (Fig. 4). As the center gear turns, the planet pinion gears, which are in mesh with it, rotate on their respective pins. Since they are also in mesh with the stationary internal gear, they must "rotate around" inside the internal gear, carrying the planet carrier with them in the same direction of rotation as the center gear. The planet carrier then rotates at a speed less than that of the center gear, and the planetary gear train functions as a power-increasing, speed-reducing unit.

b. The same result can be obtained by holding the center gear stationary and applying power to the internal gear. In this case, rotation of the internal gear causes the planet pinion gears to rotate on their respective pins and at the same time "rotate around" the center gear, thus rotating the planet carrier at a

speed less than that of the internal gear. The gear train then functions as a power-increasing, speed-reducing unit.

2. A planetary gear train can be used to reverse direction of rotation when the planet carrier is held stationary. In this instance, if power is applied to the center gear, the planet pinion gears rotate on their respective pins; but since the carrier is stationary, they act merely as idlers, transmitting power to the internal gear and causing it to rotate in the opposite direction.

In all of the examples described, one member has been held stationary, the power applied to another member, and taken off the third member.

3. A planetary gear train can be used as a coupling for direct mechanical drive when any two members are locked together.

Under this condition movement can not take place between the gears and the entire gear train will rotate as a unit.

4. When none of the members are held or locked together the planetary gear train will not transmit power; therefore it is in neutral.

FLUID COUPLING

A fluid coupling is a hydraulic clutch used to transmit engine torque to the transmission. The use of the fluid coupling eliminates the need for a manual clutch and also provides a cushioning effect of the gear changes between the engine and the transmission.

A second and smaller fluid coupling is used in the front unit. When filled, this coupling locks two members of the planetary gear train together to provide direct drive.

The fluid coupling consists of two parts called "torus members" splined to independent shafts and located in a fluid-filled housing.

The principal parts of each torus member (Fig. 5) are, the outer shell, hub, inner shell, and vanes interconnecting the shells. The two members of each coupling are identical in construction except for the hubs which are different in size to fit their respective shafts.

A schematic cross section of two torus members attached to independent shafts and located in a fluid-filled housing is illustrated in Fig. 6. The shape of the compartment formed by the vanes is shown shaded. NOTE: An actual illustration of the component parts which make up the main fluid coupling is shown in Fig. 7.

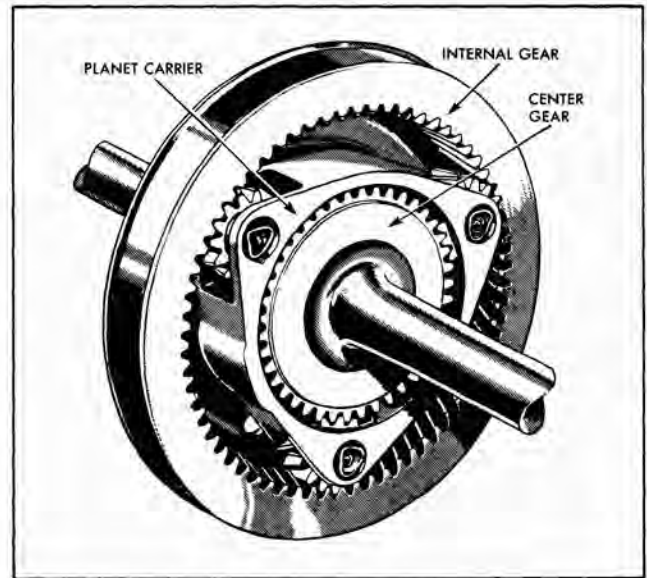


Fig. 4 Planetary Gears

In operation, rotation of the drive torus member causes the fluid within that member to be forced radially outward. Fluid then crosses over and strikes the vanes of the driven torus member, causing it to rotate in the same direction as the drive member (Fig. 8).

The higher the speed of the drive member, the greater the centrifugal force exerted by the circulating fluid on the driven member. Consequently, a fluid coupling is:

- Very efficient at high speed.
- Less efficient at low speed.
- Very inefficient at idle speed.

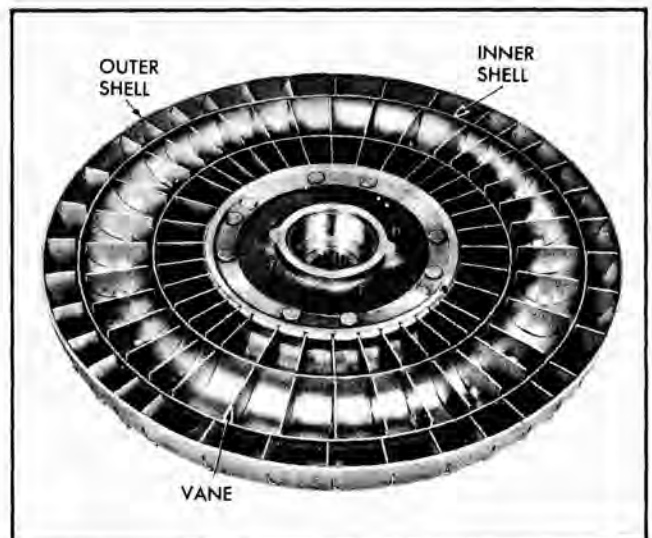


Fig. 5 Torus Member

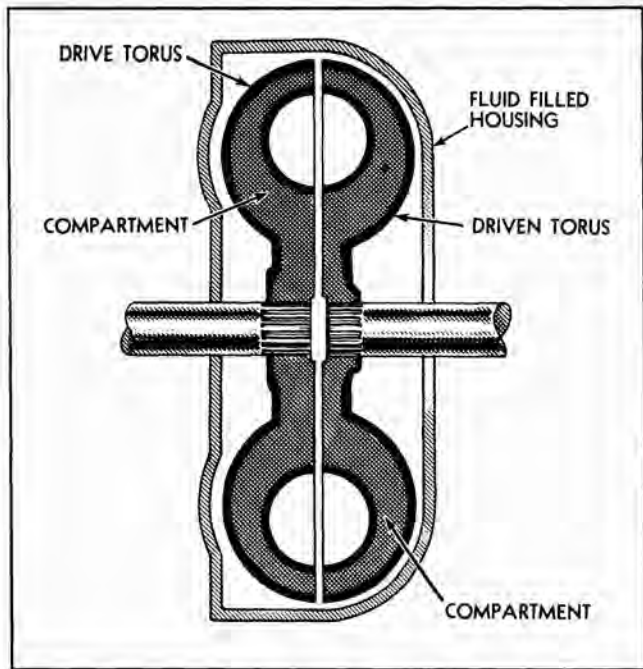


Fig. 6 Cross Section of Fluid Coupling

SPRAG CLUTCH

A sprag clutch is a device having irregular members wedged between two concentric members. It allows rotation of a unit in one direction and locks the unit from rotating in the opposite direction. Sprag clutches are used in the Hydra-Matic to lock one member of each planetary gear set for reduction. In direct drive the sprag clutches allow free rotation.

The sprag clutch consists of three parts, the inner race, the sprag assembly, and the outer race (Fig. 9). The inner race is connected to the part which is to be held for reduction, or allowed to rotate for direct drive. The outer race is fastened to the transmission case and is stationary.

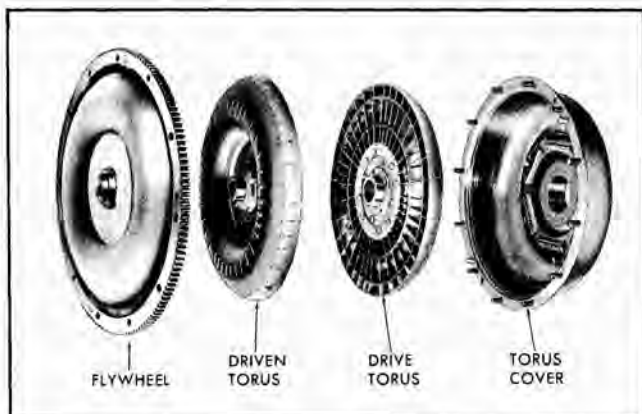


Fig. 7 Fluid Coupling Units

When torque is applied to the inner race in a counterclockwise direction as indicated by the dotted arrows, the sprags will be wedged between the inner and outer races. This wedging action, shown by the dotted sprags, locks the inner race from turning.

When torque is applied to the inner race in a clockwise direction as indicated by the solid arrows, the sprags will fall free. When the sprags fall free as indicated by the solid sprags, the inner race is allowed to rotate freely in a clockwise direction.

HYDRA-MATIC DRIVE COMPONENTS AND THEIR LOCATION

It is possible to obtain only two forward speeds, reduction and direct, from one planetary gear train or unit when applying power at the same source (for example, the "sun" or center gear). As a greater variation of speed ratios is required to satisfactorily operate a vehicle, the Hydra-Matic transmission contains two planetary gear trains arranged to provide four speeds forward. It also contains a third planetary gear train for reverse. In all forward speeds the reverse planetary unit has no function and simply revolves with the output shaft.

While the large torus members are actually located in the forward end of the transmission, they function between the front and rear planetary units. This is due to the fact that the drive torus (rear member) is part of the front unit planet carrier and the driven

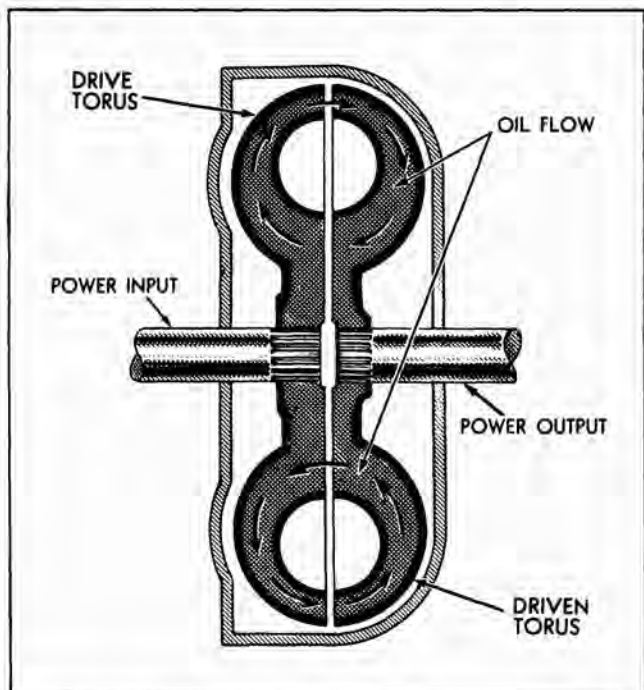


Fig. 8 Fluid Coupling in Operation

torus (front member) is splined on the main shaft, which includes the rear planetary unit center gear.

DRIVE TORUS SPEED REDUCTION

When the car is standing, with the engine running and the control lever in Drive, Lo, or Reverse, the large drive torus of the main coupling rotates at 65% engine speed. This speed reduction of the large drive torus allows the engine to idle without the car "creeping" forward excessively. When the transmission shifts to second speed, the front planetary unit is locked in direct drive. The drive torus then turns at engine speed.

Power is transmitted from the flywheel to the torus cover, (Fig. 10) through the front planetary, which is in reduction, to the rear torus member of the main fluid coupling. The rear torus is the drive member, while the front torus is the driven member.

PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION OF HYDRA-MATIC TRANSMISSION

Various parts of the Hydra-Matic transmission used in obtaining reduction and direct drive are shown in the simple schematic illustrations, figures 12-17 in their true relationship to one another. All parts connected by a line in the illustrations are actually connected together in the transmission. For example, the front unit planet carrier, the main drive torus member, the intermediate shaft and the rear clutch hub are all connected together and rotate as a unit. The simple schematics can be compared to figure 11 which is an actual cross section of the transmission.

RELATIONSHIP OF UNITS

The torus cover and flywheel are bolted to the engine flex plate (Fig. 10) and, therefore, rotate with the engine at all times. The front unit internal gear is connected to the torus cover and also to the drive torus of the front unit fluid coupling, thus, the front unit internal gear and front coupling drive torus member always rotate with the engine crankshaft.

The front unit sun gear is mounted on the front end of the shaft of the front unit coupling driven torus. The rear end of this shaft is connected to the inner race of the front sprag clutch and to the overrun clutch plate. Therefore, the front coupling driven torus and the sun gear can turn in a clockwise direction, but the sprag will not allow them to turn counterclockwise. If the overrun clutch plate is applied, the sun gear cannot turn in either direction.

The planet carrier of the front unit is connected

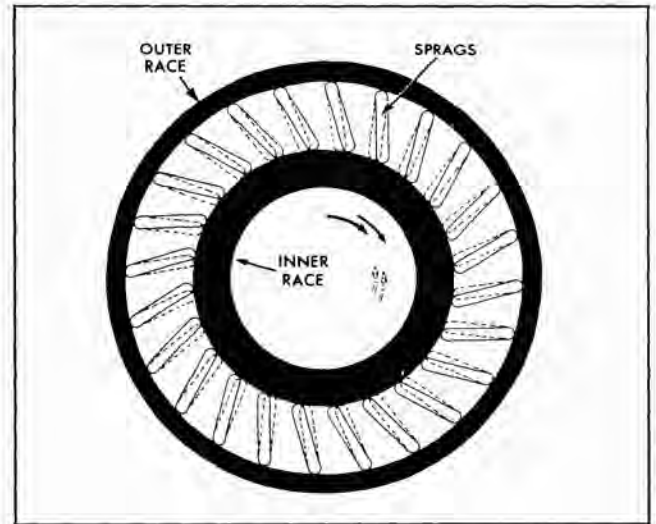


Fig. 9 Sprag Clutch

directly to the main drive torus which in turn is splined to the intermediate shaft. The rear unit clutch hub is splined to the rear end of the intermediate shaft and drives the rear clutch drive plates. Therefore, the main drive torus and the rear clutch hub and drive plates always rotate with the front unit planet carrier.

The main driven torus is splined to the front end of the main shaft. The sun gear of the rear unit is splined to the rear end of the main shaft. Thus, whenever the driven torus member rotates the sun gear of the rear unit rotates with it.

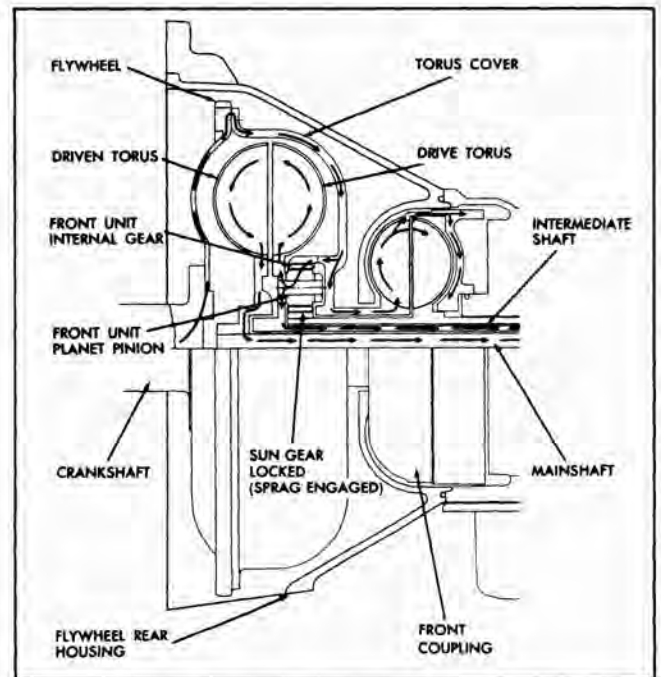


Fig. 10 Drive Torus Speed Reduction

The internal gear of the rear unit is connected to the rear clutch drum which in turn is connected to the rear clutch driven plates and to the rear sprag inner race. The reverse sun gear is also connected to the rear clutch drum by means of the reverse drive flange. Thus, the rear internal gear, rear sprag inner race, rear clutch driven plates and reverse sun gear turn as a unit.

The outer race of the rear sprag is connected to the case by means of the neutral clutch plates. When the neutral clutch is released the sprag outer race is free to rotate, but when the neutral clutch is applied the rear sprag outer race is locked to the case. The Lo band encircles the rear clutch drum and when applied, locks the drum to the case.

The rear unit planet carrier is an integral part of the output shaft of the transmission. The reverse planet carrier is splined to the output shaft. The rear unit planet carrier, reverse planet carrier and output shaft, therefore, operate as one unit.

The reverse internal gear is locked to the case when clamped between the reverse stationary cone and the reverse piston.

HYDRAULIC APPLICATION OF UNITS

Direct drive or reduction in each of the units is controlled hydraulically. Reduction in the front unit is obtained when the front unit coupling is empty. Direct drive is secured when the coupling is filled. Reduction in the rear unit is obtained when the rear clutch is released by spring pressure. Direct drive in

the rear unit is obtained by hydraulically applying the rear clutch.

The overrun clutch, neutral clutch, LO band and reverse cone clutch are all applied, when necessary, by hydraulic pressure.

The hydraulic pressure is maintained by a pump which is driven by the front coupling drive torus whenever the engine operates.

Oil pressure is directed to the proper places in the transmission by means of a control valve assembly. When the driver places the selector lever in the desired range, the control valve is positioned to automatically direct oil to the proper places in the transmission.

POWER FLOW IN HYDRA-MATIC TRANSMISSION

The power flow (parts that are rotating) for each transmission speed is indicated by arrows on illustrations 12 through 17. The solid black areas indicate the sprags or clutches are on and front coupling is full.

The front coupling driven torus shaft, the intermediate shaft, and the main shaft are all concentric. In other words, the mainshaft operates inside the hollow intermediate shaft which in turn operates inside the hollow front unit driven torus shaft. The sprag assemblies also are concentric with the shafts; thus, the inner race of each sprag is the one nearest the centerline of the transmission.

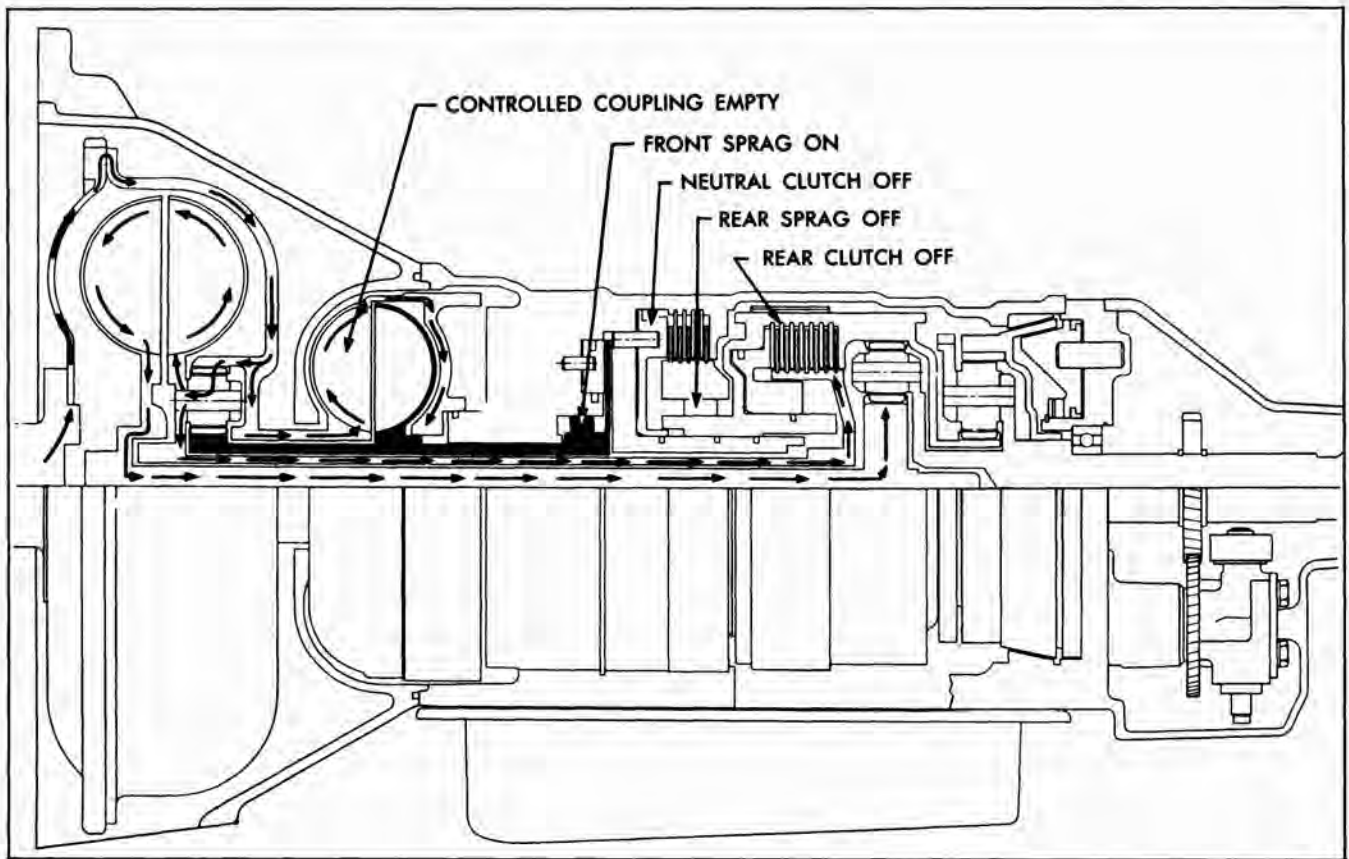


Fig. 12 Power Flow—Neutral—Engine Running

**FRONT UNIT
(REDUCTION)**

SPRAG —ON
COUPLING—EMPTY

NEUTRAL CLUTCH

OFF

**REAR UNIT
(NEUTRAL)**

SPRAG —OFF
REAR CLUTCH—OFF
L BAND —OFF

**REVERSE UNIT
(NEUTRAL)**

CLUTCH—OFF

Power flows mechanically from the flywheel to the torus cover and to the internal gear which is attached to the torus cover.

At the internal gear mechanical power divides.

Part of the power is directed into the front unit coupling, however, in neutral the front coupling is empty and power is not transmitted to the front unit driven member.

Power is also directed from the internal gear to the carrier assembly of the front unit where it divides and is directed to the rear unit in the following two ways.

1. FLUID

Since the front unit is in reduction the front unit carrier will be rotating at a slower rate. The carrier

is attached to the drive torus member which through oil will drive the driven torus member. In turn the driven member drives the connected main shaft, and rear unit sun gear.

Here power stops for the rear unit is in neutral because the neutral clutch is released.

2. MECHANICAL

Power is directed mechanically back from the front unit carrier to the rear unit through the intermediate shaft which is splined to the drive torus member. The intermediate shaft is also splined to the rear clutch hub in the rear unit.

Here power stops because the rear clutch plates are released and the rear unit is in neutral.

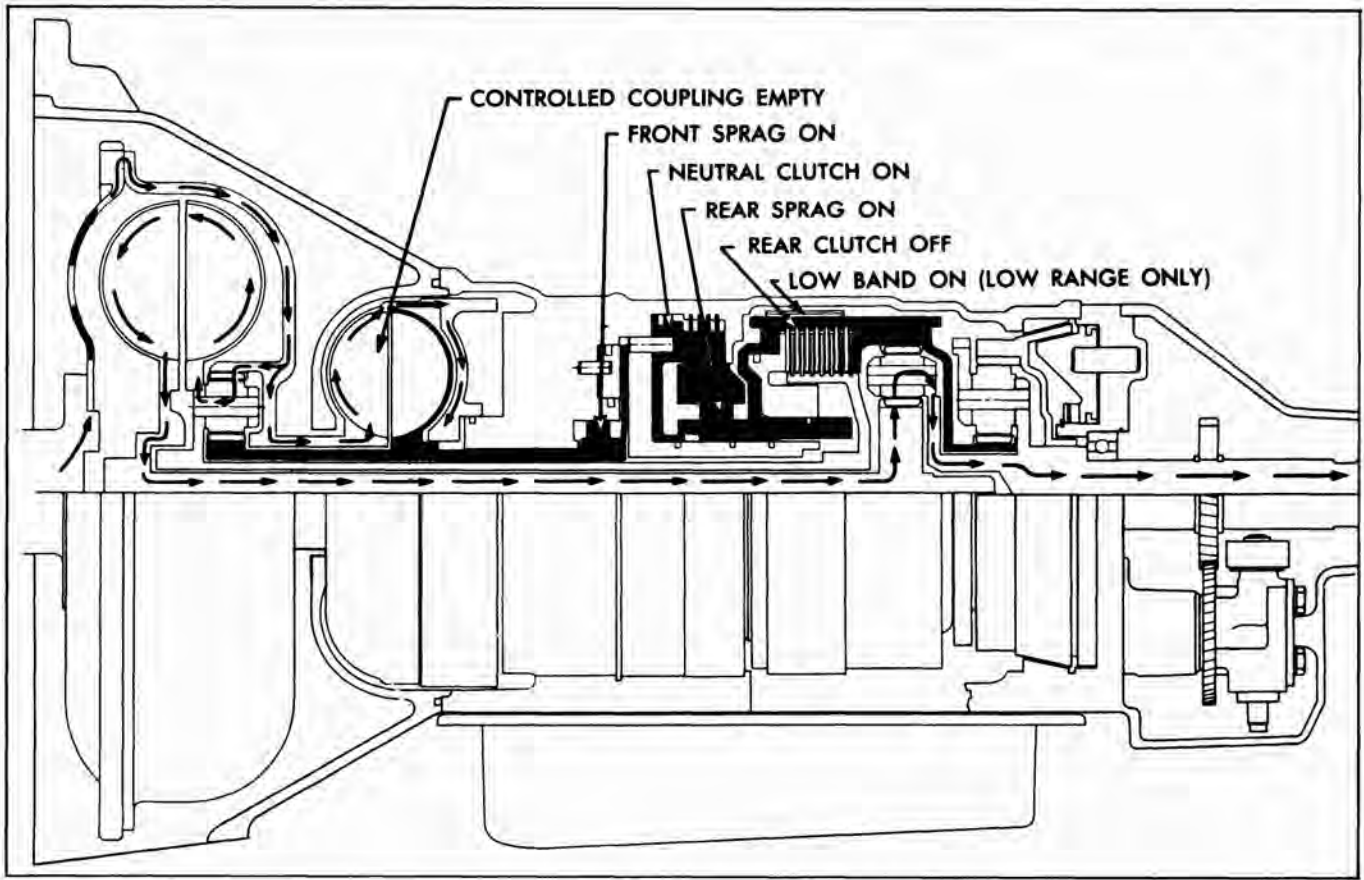


Fig. 13 Power Flow—First Speed—Drive Left

**FRONT UNIT
(REDUCTION)**

SPRAG —ON
COUPLING—EMPTY

Power flows mechanically from the flywheel to the torus cover and to the internal gear attached to the torus cover.

At the internal gear mechanical power divides.

Part of the power is directed into the front unit coupling, however, in 1st speed the front coupling is empty and power is not transmitted to the front unit driven member.

Power is also directed from the internal gear to the carrier assembly of the front unit.

The center gear is held by the front sprag assembly

**NEUTRAL CLUTCH
ON**

so that the pinions of the carrier walk around the center gear at a slower rate or reduction. The front unit carrier is attached to the drive torus member and will through oil drive the driven torus member. In turn the driven torus member drives the connected main shaft and rear unit sun gear.

The rear unit sun gear drives the pinions of the rear unit carrier at a reduced speed or reduction around the internal gear for the internal gear is being held by the rear unit sprag assembly.

The carrier of the rear unit is part of the output shaft, hence power will be directed from the carrier through the output shaft.

**REAR UNIT
(REDUCTION)**

SPRAG —ON
REAR CLUTCH—OFF

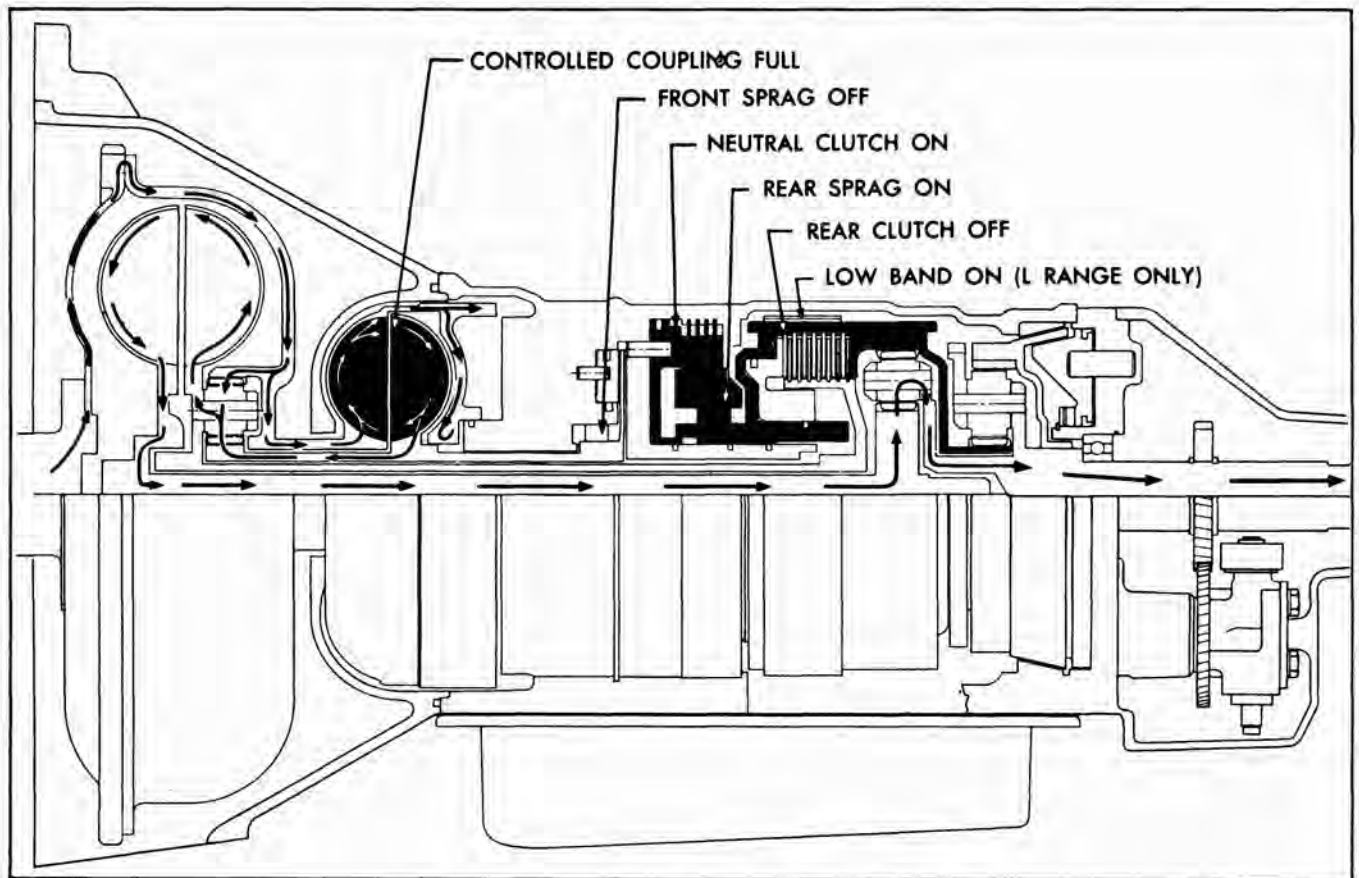


Fig. 14 Power Flow—Second Speed—Drive Left

**FRONT UNIT
(DIRECT DRIVE)**

SPRAG —OFF
COUPLING—FULL

Power flows mechanically from the flywheel to the torus cover and to the internal gear attached to the torus cover.

At the internal gear mechanical power divides.

Part of the power is directed into the front unit coupling. The front unit drive member will drive through oil the front unit driven torus member which is attached to the front unit center gear.

Thus, we have two members of the front unit gear set rotating in the same direction at the same relative speed which will give direct drive. (Internal gear and

**NEUTRAL CLUTCH
ON**

center gear.) These two members drive the planet carrier.

The planet carrier attached to the drive torus member will drive through oil the driven torus member. In turn the driven torus member drives the connected main shaft and rear unit sun gear.

The rear unit sun gear drives the pinions of the rear unit carrier at a reduced speed or reduction around the internal gear for the internal gear is being held by the rear unit sprag assembly.

The carrier of the rear unit is part of the output shaft, hence power will be directed from the carrier through the output shaft.

**REAR UNIT
(REDUCTION)**

SPRAG —ON
REAR CLUTCH—OFF

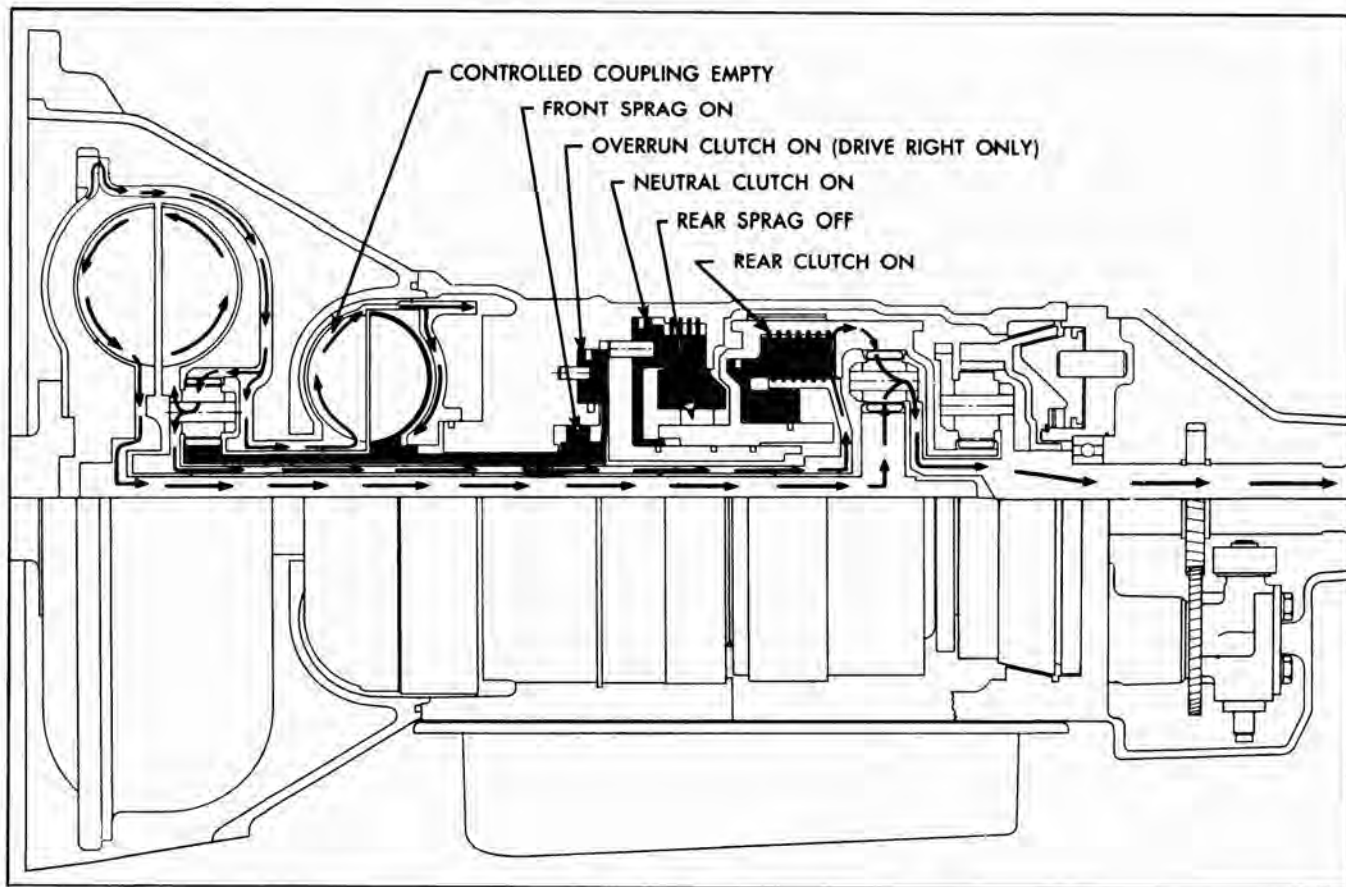


Fig. 15 Power Flow—Third Speed—Drive Left

**FRONT UNIT
(REDUCTION)**

SPRAG —ON
COUPLING—EMPTY

**NEUTRAL CLUTCH
ON**

**REAR UNIT
(DIRECT DRIVE)**

SPRAG —OFF
REAR CLUTCH—ON

Power flows mechanically from the flywheel to the torus cover and to the internal gear attached to the torus cover.

At the internal gear mechanical power divides.

Part of the power is directed into the front unit coupling, however, in 3rd speed the front coupling is empty and power is not transmitted to the front unit driven member.

Power is also directed from the internal gear to the carrier assembly of the front unit where it divides and is directed to the rear unit in the following two ways.

1. FLUID

The center gear of the front unit is held by the front sprag assembly so that the pinions of the carrier walk around the center gear at a slower rate or in

reduction. The front unit carrier is attached to the drive torus member and will through oil drive the driven torus member.

In turn the driven torus member drives the connected main shaft and rear unit sun gear which will drive the pinions of the rear unit carrier.

2. MECHANICAL

Power is directed mechanically from the carrier of the front unit to the rear unit through the intermediate shaft which is splined to the drive torus member. The intermediate shaft is splined to the rear clutch hub which transmits power through the clutch plates drum and rear internal gear.

The carrier of the rear unit is part of the output shaft, hence power will be directed through the output shaft.

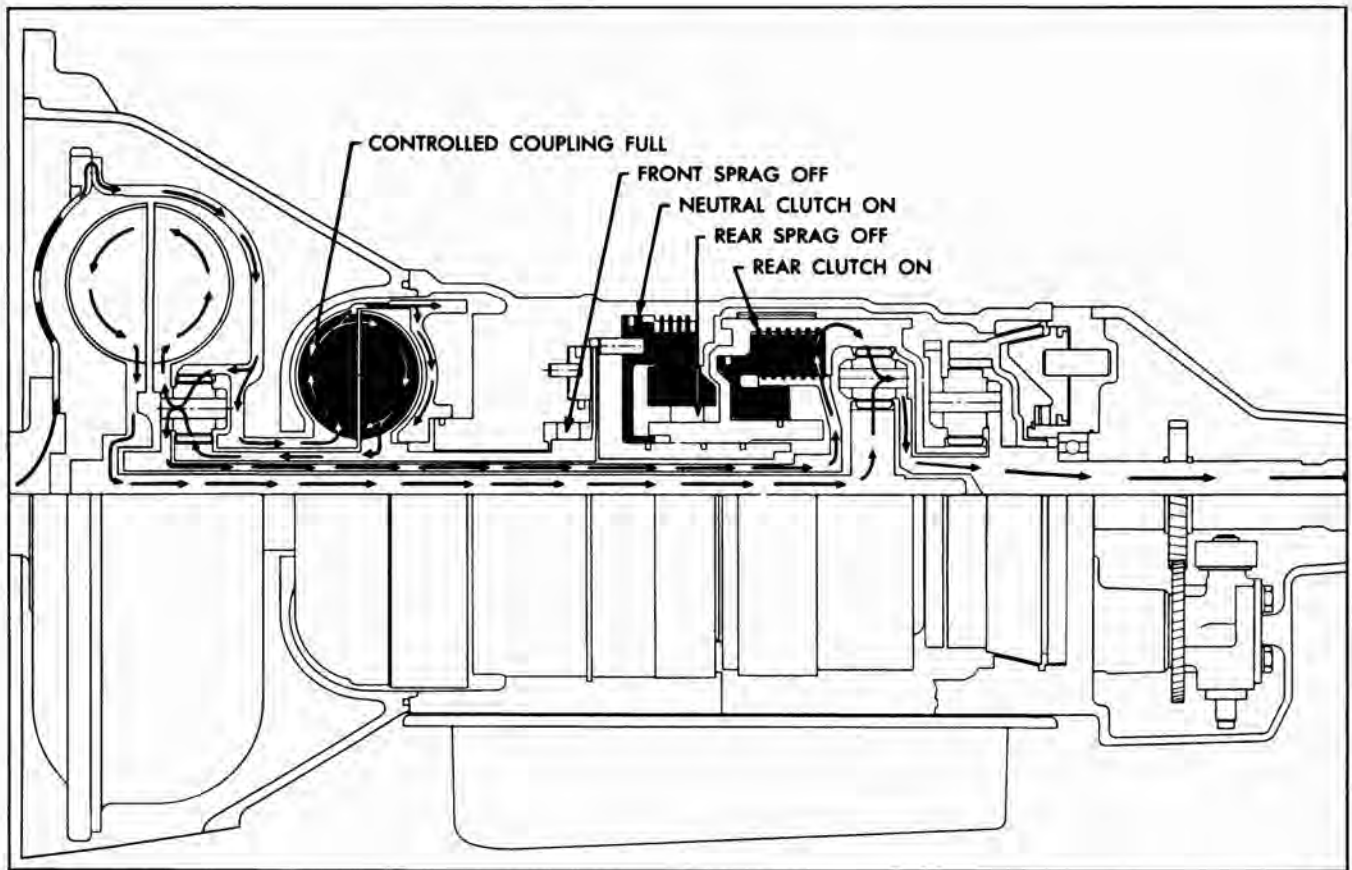


Fig. 16 Power Flow—Fourth Speed—Drive Left

FRONT UNIT (DIRECT DRIVE)

SPRAG —OFF
COUPLING—FULL

Power flows mechanically from the flywheel to the torus cover and to the internal gear attached to the torus cover.

At the internal gear mechanical power divides.

Part of the power is directed into the front unit coupling. The front unit drive member will drive through oil the front unit drive torus member, which is attached to the front unit center gear.

Thus, we have two members of the front unit gear set rotating in the same direction at the same relative speed which will give direct drive (internal gear and center gear). These two members drive the planet carrier.

Power is also directed from the internal gear to the carrier assembly of the front unit where it divides and is directed to the rear unit in the following two ways.

1. FLUID

Since the front unit is in direct drive the front unit

NEUTRAL CLUTCH

ON

REAR UNIT (DIRECT DRIVE)

SPRAG —OFF
REAR CLUTCH—ON

carrier will be rotating at engine speed. The carrier is attached to the drive torus member which through oil will drive the driven torus member. In turn the driven torus member drives the connected main shaft and rear unit sun gear. The rear sun gear will drive the pinions of the rear unit carrier.

2. MECHANICAL

Power is directed mechanically from the carrier of the front unit back to the rear unit through the intermediate shaft which is splined to the drive torus member.

The intermediate shaft is splined to the rear clutch hub which transmits power through the clutch plates, drum and rear internal gear.

Thus, with the rear unit sun gear driven by fluid power and the rear unit internal gear driven by mechanical power, the rear unit planet carrier, which is part of the output shaft is in direct drive.

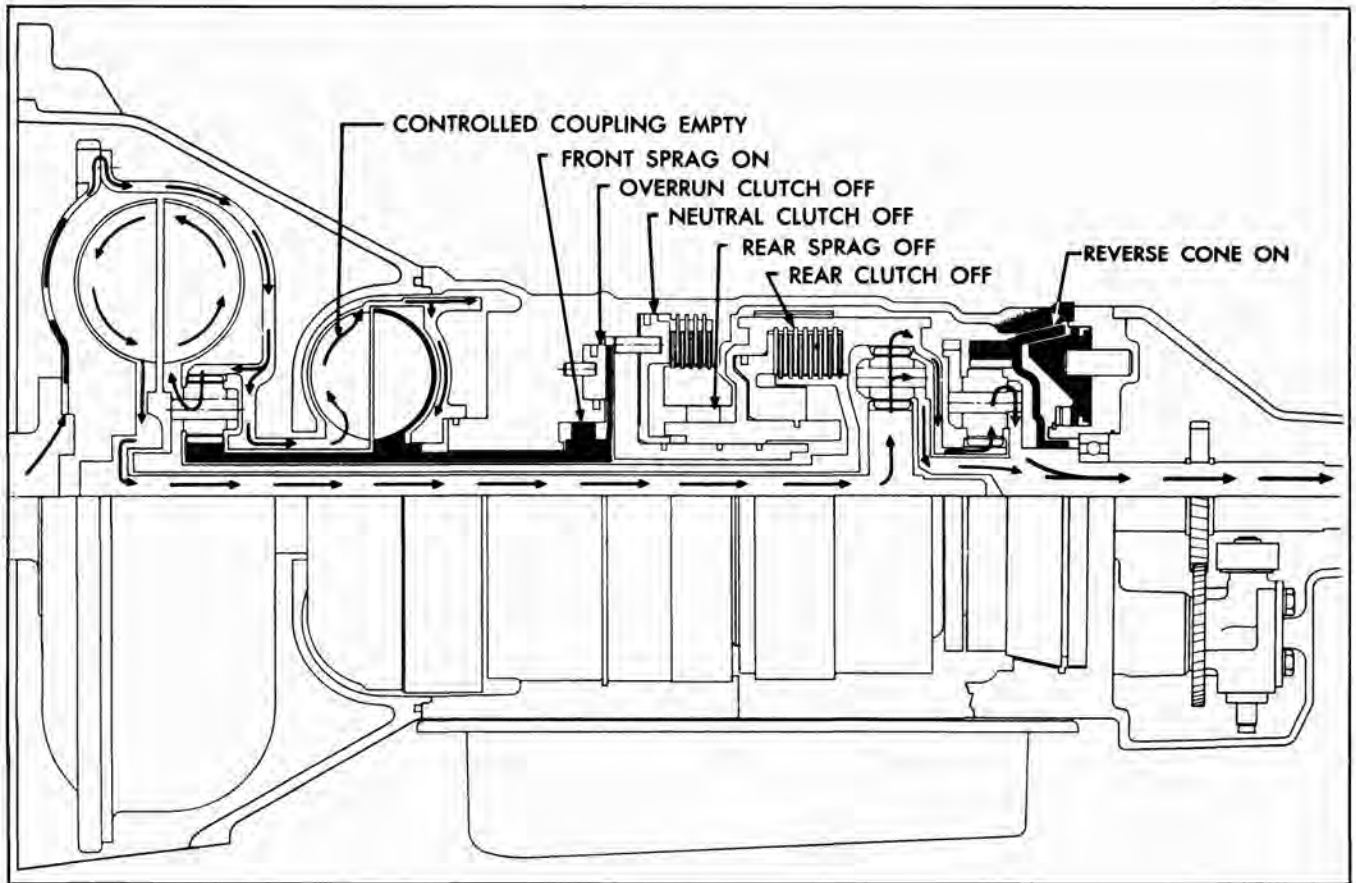


Fig. 17 Power Flow—Reverse

| FRONT UNIT (REDUCTION) | NEUTRAL CLUTCH | REAR UNIT (NEUTRAL) | REVERSE UNIT (REDUCTION) |
|-----------------------------|----------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| SPRAG —ON COUPLING—EMPTY | OFF | SPRAG —OFF REAR CLUTCH—OFF | CLUTCH—ON |

Power flows mechanically from the flywheel to the torus cover and to the internal gear attached to the torus cover.

At the internal gear mechanical power divides.

Part is directed into the front unit coupling, however in reverse the front coupling is empty and no power is transmitted to the front unit driven member.

Power is also directed from the internal gear to the carrier assembly of the front unit.

The center gear is held by the front sprag assembly so that the pinions of the carrier walk around the

center gear at a slower rate or reduction. The front unit carrier is attached to the drive torus member and will through oil drive the driven torus member. In turn the driven torus member drives the connecting main shaft and rear unit sun gear.

Since the rear sprag is released the sun gear of the rear unit will drive the rear internal gear counterclockwise or reverse. The internal gear through a flange will drive the center gear of the reverse unit counterclockwise. Power then travels through the reverse planetary carrier to the output shaft in reduction and backwards because the internal gear is held by the reverse cone clutch.

REVIEW ACTION OF UNITS

In order to diagnose transmission difficulties it is very important to know what happens in each unit during each shift. The following list of speeds and

conditions are effective with engine driving the car (car not coasting) and should provide an easy means of reviewing this information.

| Range | Gear | Coupling Filled | Front Sprag Effective | Overrun Clutch Applied | Neutral Clutch Applied | Rear Sprag Effective | Rear Clutch Applied | Lo Band Applied | Reverse Cone Applied |
|---------|---------|-----------------|-----------------------|------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|-----------------|----------------------|
| Park | — | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| Neutral | — | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| ▲Dr | First | | ✓ | | ✓ | ✓ | | | |
| | Second | ✓ | | | ✓ | ✓ | | | |
| | Third | | ✓ | | ✓ | | ✓ | | |
| | Fourth | ✓ | | | ✓ | | ✓ | | |
| Dr▲ | First | | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | | | |
| | Second | ✓ | | | ✓ | ✓ | | | |
| | Third | | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | | ✓ | | |
| | Fourth | ✓ | | | ✓ | | ✓ | | |
| Lo | First | | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | | ✓ | |
| | Second | ✓ | | | ✓ | ✓ | | ✓ | |
| | Third | | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | | ✓ | | |
| | Fourth | ✓ | | | ✓ | | ✓ | | |
| Reverse | Reverse | | ✓ | | | | | | ✓ |

REMEMBER

The front unit is in reduction when the coupling is empty, direct drive when the coupling is full.

The rear unit is in reduction when the clutch is released, direct drive when clutch is applied.

HYDRAULIC ACTION IN THE HYDRA-MATIC TRANSMISSION

The proper shifting of the transmission is controlled by hydraulic oil pressure. The direction of this oil pressure to the proper places in the transmission is accomplished by the control valve assembly.

The diagrams and text on the following pages explain how the transmission is hydraulically controlled for each shift and operating condition.

OPERATION OF PUMP

The pump is a large, variable capacity, vane type pump driven by the engine. A slide is incorporated in the pump that automatically regulates pump output according to the needs of the transmission. Maximum pump output is obtained when the slide is in the up position. As the slide moves down, pump output is lowered until zero output is reached.

Movement of the slide is accomplished by directing oil from the pressure regulator to the top or bottom of the slide. With the engine off, the pump is at rest and the slide is held in the up position by the priming springs (Fig. 18). As the pump rotor operates, its output is directed to the pressure regulator valve. When output pressure is low, the pressure regulator valve is held deep in its bore by the pressure regulator valve spring. With the pressure regulator valve in this position, oil is directed below the slide to hold the slide up for maximum output. As the pump output pressure increases, the pressure regulator valve is moved outward, directing oil above the slide to push it down and decrease the output (Fig. 19).

Main line pressure as regulated by the pressure regulator valve is approximately 95 psi except in fourth speed with selector in drive left or in reverse. When the transmission shifts into fourth speed with the selector lever in drive left, line drop oil from the 3-4 shift valve is directed to the pressure regulator valve to push the valve outward. This reduces the pressure in fourth speed to approximately 65 psi thereby decreasing the amount of work performed by the pump during normal cruising. This makes more engine power available to drive the car and reduces the transmission operating temperature.

In reverse, additional pressure is desirable to assure positive holding of the reverse cone clutch. To provide this additional pressure, reverse oil is directed to the reverse booster plug in the pressure regulator. Reverse booster pressure aids the pressure regulator spring in holding the pressure regulator valve in its bore, thereby increasing main line pressure to 145-190 psi.

Incorporated in the pump is the torus feed valve. Movement of the torus feed valve is controlled by slide position. With the slide up, (maximum output) the torus feed valve is closed (Fig. 18). As the slide moves downward, the torus feed valve moves down and opens the feed passages to supply oil to the cooler and to the main torus assembly (Fig. 19).

When the pressure in the main torus assembly

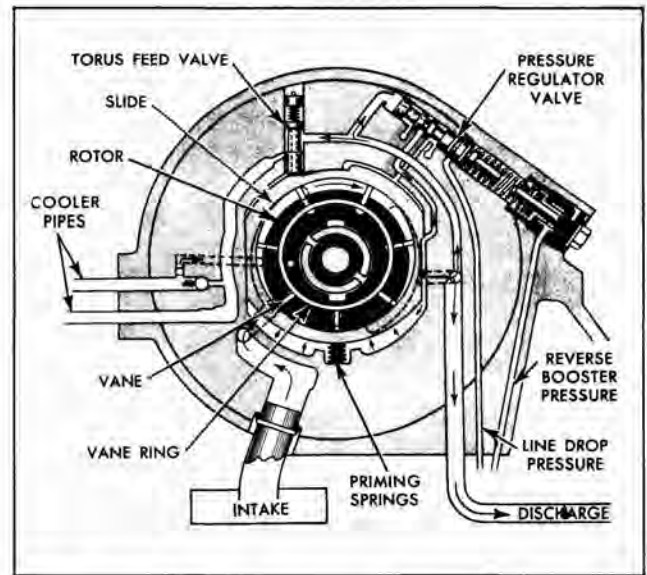


Fig. 18 Pump Delivering Maximum Output

reaches a predetermined value, the torus check valve (in the driven torus) opens allowing oil to pass into the transmission lubrication passages.

The oil cooler ball check valve is a safety device that will unseat and allow oil to pass directly to the main torus assembly if the oil cooler should become blocked.

GOVERNOR

The timing of shift points with relation to vehicle speed is obtained by means of a governor which is driven through helical gears from the output shaft

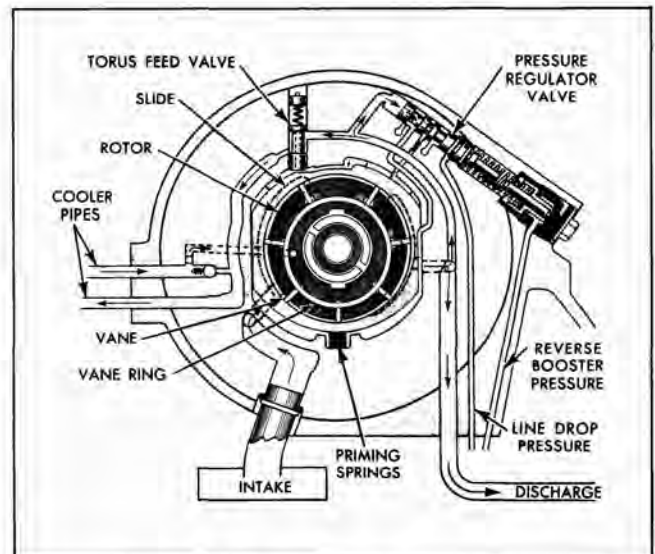


Fig. 19 Pump Delivering Minimum Output

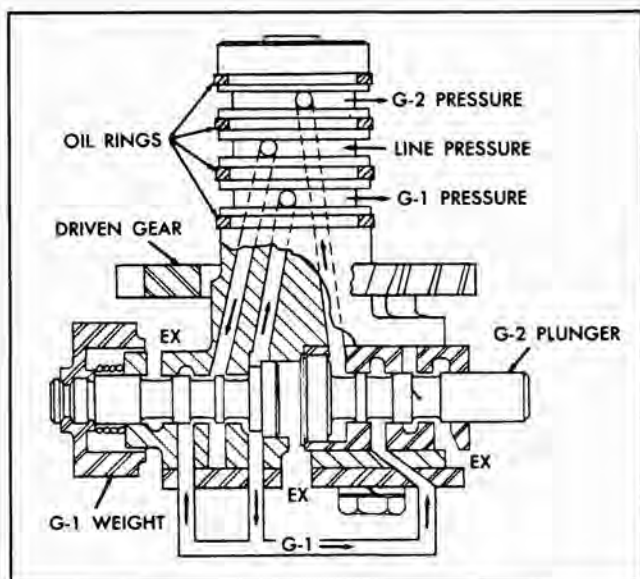


Fig. 20 Governor Assembly

as illustrated in Fig. 11. The drive gear (keyed to output shaft) contains 23 teeth and the driven gear (bolted to governor) 22 teeth thus providing for a uniform wear pattern.

Whenever the vehicle is moving, the governor rotates and centrifugal force tends to throw the governor valves outward, thus allowing main line pressure to be metered past the G-1 valve and regulated to become G-1 governor pressure. G-1 governor pressure is then directed to the control valve assembly and to

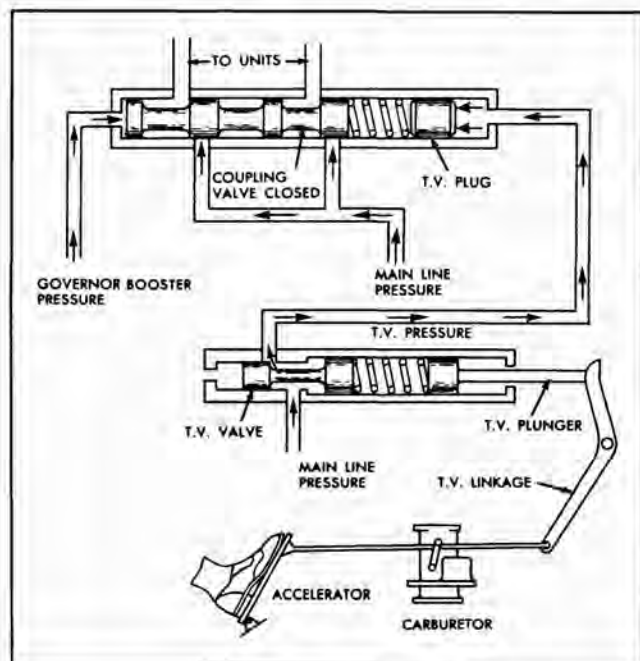


Fig. 21 TV Pressure

the G-2 valve. As the G-2 valve opens, G-1 pressure enters and is re-regulated to G-2 pressure. As governor speed increases the centrifugal force on the valves increases and opens the valves wider against opposing oil pressure. Governor pressure is thus regulated from a minimum of zero to full main line pressure in direct proportion to vehicle speed.

The weight on the G-2 valve is very small and its centrifugal force is small compared to the G-1 valve. The G-2 valve, therefore, opens very slowly so that maximum G-2 pressure is not reached until the vehicle attains a very high speed.

To provide an initial G-1 pressure at very low speeds, a spring is placed under the G-1 weight to help hold the valve open.

GOVERNOR BOOSTER VALVE

Since governor pressure is not great enough to open the coupling valve at the desired low vehicle speed, a booster valve is used. Governor pressure acting on the G-1 booster valve allows main line pressure to be regulated to G-1 booster pressure which is variable and capable of opening the coupling valve at desired speed.

TV PRESSURE

In order to provide greater acceleration or more pulling power, it is desirable to have shifts delayed until higher car speeds are reached. This delay is automatically accomplished by opposing governor pressure with a pressure, called TV pressure, which varies according to throttle opening. As illustrated in Fig. 21, when the accelerator pedal is depressed, linkage in conjunction with the carburetor acts against the TV plunger. The TV plunger acting on the spring opens the TV valve allowing a regulated (throttle or TV) pressure to act against the TV plug. The TV plug then assists the coupling valve spring in holding the coupling valve closed.

The vehicle must attain a higher speed because of the increased force on coupling valve spring before the governor will deliver sufficient pressure to the G-1 booster valve to open coupling valve and cause the transmission to shift into direct drive.

MANUAL VALVE

The manual valve is connected by linkage to the selector lever located at the steering wheel. Movement of the lever positions the manual valve for the speed range desired by the driver and directs flow of oil to apply the neutral clutch.

COUPLING VALVE

The coupling valve directs flow of oil to close the coupling exhaust valve and to fill the coupling.

LIMIT VALVE

The limit valve acts as a double safety device in the transmission.

First, it regulates line pressure passing from the manual valve to the coupling valve and thence to fill the front unit coupling. When the engine is started the limit valve remains closed until main line pressure builds up to approximately 55 psi. When this pressure is reached, the small inner limit valve spring is compressed and the valve opens the passage to the coupling valve.

If, due to a severe leak in the front coupling, the pressure should drop below 55 psi the limit valve will immediately close. It will then act as a pressure regulator keeping the pressure at 55 psi, thus protecting the neutral clutch and rear clutch from slipping and overheating.

The limit valve also acts as a relief valve. If main line pressure exceeds approximately 200 psi, the large (outer) spring behind the limit valve will be compressed and the limit valve will move far enough to open the exhaust port. Excessive output will then be dumped back into the sump relieving the excessive pressure.

ACCUMULATOR VALVE

The accumulator valve allows unregulated TV pressure to be directed to the accumulator to assist the accumulator spring (Fig. 22) until TV pressure reaches 20 lbs. At this point the accumulator valve and plug assembly begins to regulate TV pressure to the accumulator. Thus, with TV pressure higher than the 20 lbs. the pressure in the accumulator will vary according to throttle opening, but will always be less than TV pressure. It is obvious from the above that good transmission operation is dependent upon the free movement of the TV accumulator valve.

NEUTRAL CLUTCH REGULATOR VALVE

The neutral clutch regulator valve is used to provide smooth application of the neutral clutch in accordance with throttle opening.

CLOSED THROTTLE OPERATION

When the transmission is shifted from neutral to drive (with the accelerator pedal released) there will

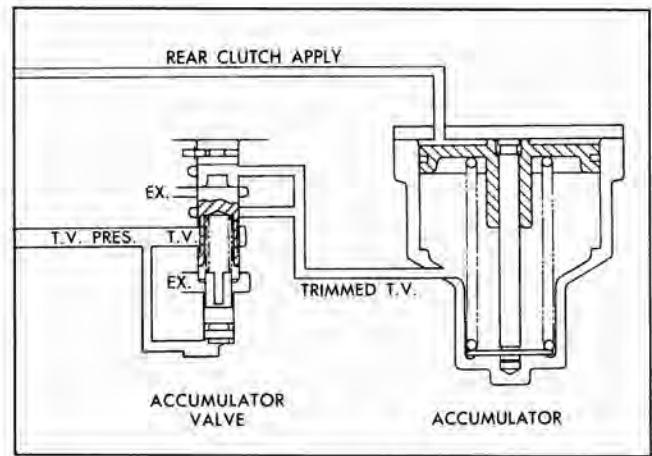


Fig. 22 Oil Flow Through Accumulator Valve

be no TV pressure. Main line pressure will move the neutral clutch valve against spring pressure causing neutral clutch apply oil to be metered through the orifice in the reed valve (Fig. 23). Thus, the application of the neutral clutch with zero throttle opening is relatively smooth.

OPEN THROTTLE OPERATION

If the throttle is open when shifting from neutral to drive, TV pressure will move the regulator valve to the open position. The more TV pressure applied the farther the valve will be opened. Thus, there is less restriction to neutral clutch apply oil and the neutral clutch will engage more firmly. With full TV pressure there will be no restriction of neutral clutch apply oil.

NEUTRAL CLUTCH RELEASE

When the neutral clutch is released, as when shifting from drive to reverse, the reed valve lifts off its seat allowing a rapid dumping of oil from the neutral clutch.

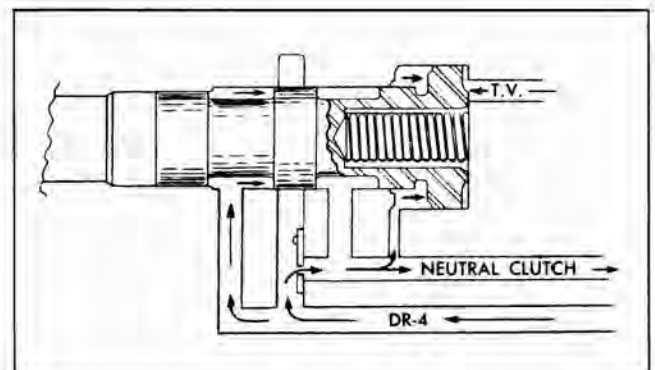


Fig. 23 Neutral Clutch Regulator Valve

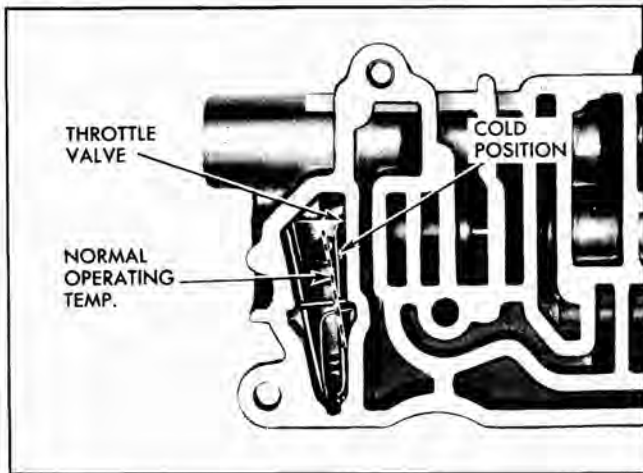


Fig. 24 TV Thermostatic Element in Manual Valve Body

THERMOSTATIC TV CONTROLS

Bi-metal thermostatic elements are used to compensate for increased viscosity of cold oil and thus provide a smooth, rapid 1-2 shift over the entire transmission oil temperature range.

One element, called the TV thermostatic element, is located in the manual valve body behind the throttle valve and is retained by a clip, Fig. 24. This element opposes opening of the throttle valve when the transmission oil is cold; then, as the oil temperature rises toward normal, the effect of the element is minimized, allowing normal TV pressure to be obtained. A screw in end of manual valve body is preset to render the thermostatic element ineffective at transmission oil temperatures above 75°F.

The other element, called the coupling fill thermostat, is located in the channel plate, Fig. 25. During

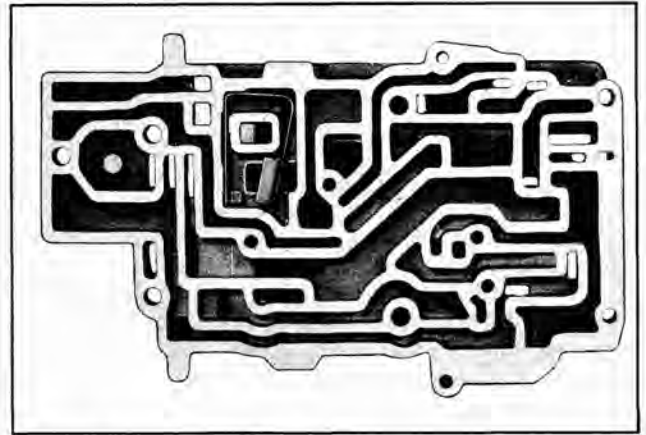


Fig. 25 Coupling Fill Thermostat in Channel Plate

cold oil operation the thermostat is contracted allowing the coupling fill passage to be fully open and thus provide a faster fill. As the transmission oil approaches normal operating temperature, the thermostat partially closes the passage.

REVERSE UNIT

The reverse unit in the controlled coupling Hydra-Matic transmission consists of a reverse planetary gear set with a cone clutch which holds the reverse internal gear. The reverse cone clutch is engaged by a piston which is oil applied.

Teeth on the perimeter of reverse planet carrier form a sprocket which receives a parking pawl to provide a positive lock when the selector lever is in the "P" (park) position. In the "Park" position the transmission is in neutral making it possible to start the engine or leave the car on an incline with the engine running.

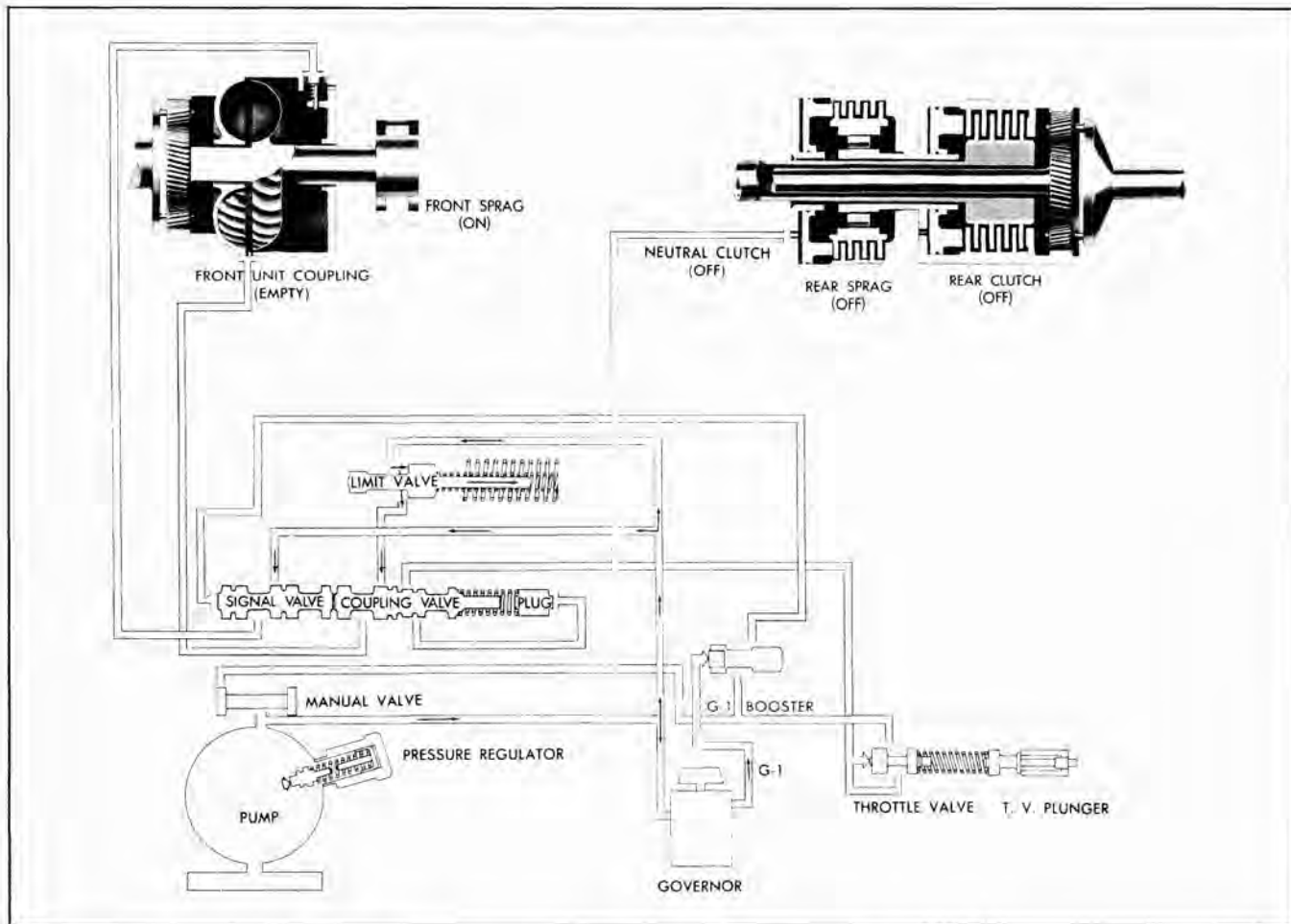


Fig. 26 Hydraulic Action in Neutral—Engine Running, Car Standing

**FRONT UNIT
(REDUCTION)**

COUPLING—EMPTY
SPRAG —ON

**REAR UNIT
(NEUTRAL)**

REAR CLUTCH —OFF
SPRAG —OFF
NEUTRAL CLUTCH—OFF

When the engine is started, the pump builds up oil pressure which is directed to: (Fig. 26) The manual valve; governor; governor boost valve; limit valve and one land of the coupling valve. When oil pressure builds up to about 55 psi, the limit valve is moved to the open position allowing main line pressure to be directed to a second land of the coupling valve. (The limit valve acts merely as a safety device to maintain the oil pressure within safe limits (see page 00). Normally, main line pressure is always against two lands of the coupling valve.

The governor is used to supply a graduated pressure which increases in proportion to car speed. At

a standstill some governor pressure will exist because the G-1 governor plunger is partially opened by spring pressure. This pressure is directed to the governor boost valve.

The governor boost valve supplies a variable pressure to the coupling valve. This pressure varies in proportion to governor pressure but is always greater than governor pressure.

The neutral clutch is spring released and oil applied. Since no oil pressure is present, it is released. With the neutral clutch released, the rear unit can not transmit motion and the transmission is in neutral.

The hydraulic circuit is exactly the same with the selector in park position. In park position the transmission output shaft is mechanically locked to the transmission case by a pawl which engages the teeth on the reverse planet carrier. The car is, therefore, locked from moving when the selector lever is in the park position.

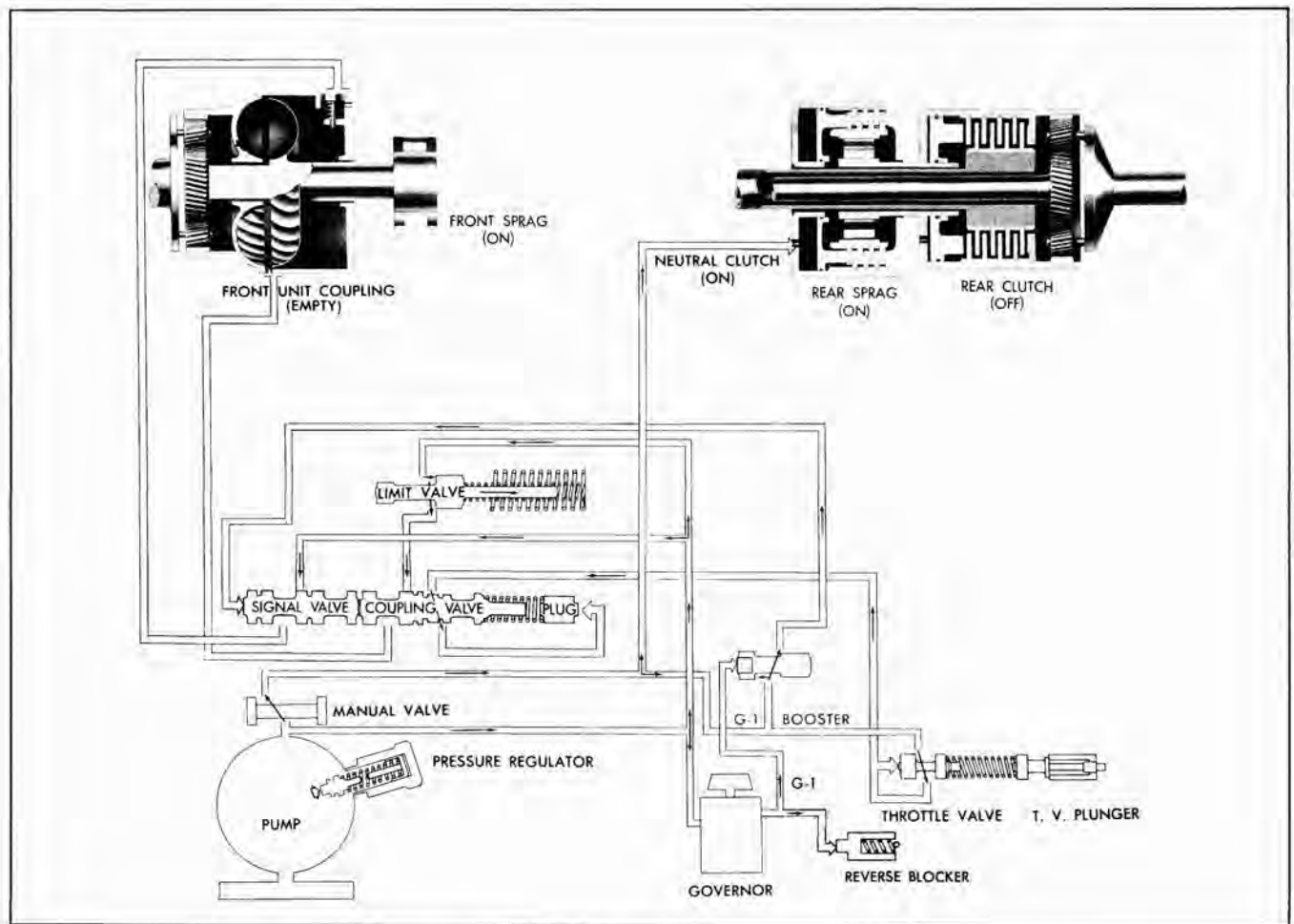


Fig. 27 Hydraulic Action in First Speed—Drive Left

**FRONT UNIT
IN REDUCTION**

COUPLING—EMPTY
SPRAG —ON

**REAR UNIT
IN REDUCTION**

REAR CLUTCH —OFF
SPRAG —ON
NEUTRAL CLUTCH—ON

When the selector lever is placed in drive left position, main line pressure is directed from the manual valve to the neutral clutch and to the TV valve (Fig. 27) (Main line pressure is also directed

to the 2-3 and 3-4 shift valves which are not shown here). The neutral clutch is thus applied, locking the outer race of the rear sprag to the transmission case, thus completing the power flow.

The front unit is already in reduction, since the coupling is empty, and with the neutral clutch applied the rear unit is also in reduction through the rear sprag. The transmission is therefore in first speed and the car will begin to move if the accelerator is depressed.

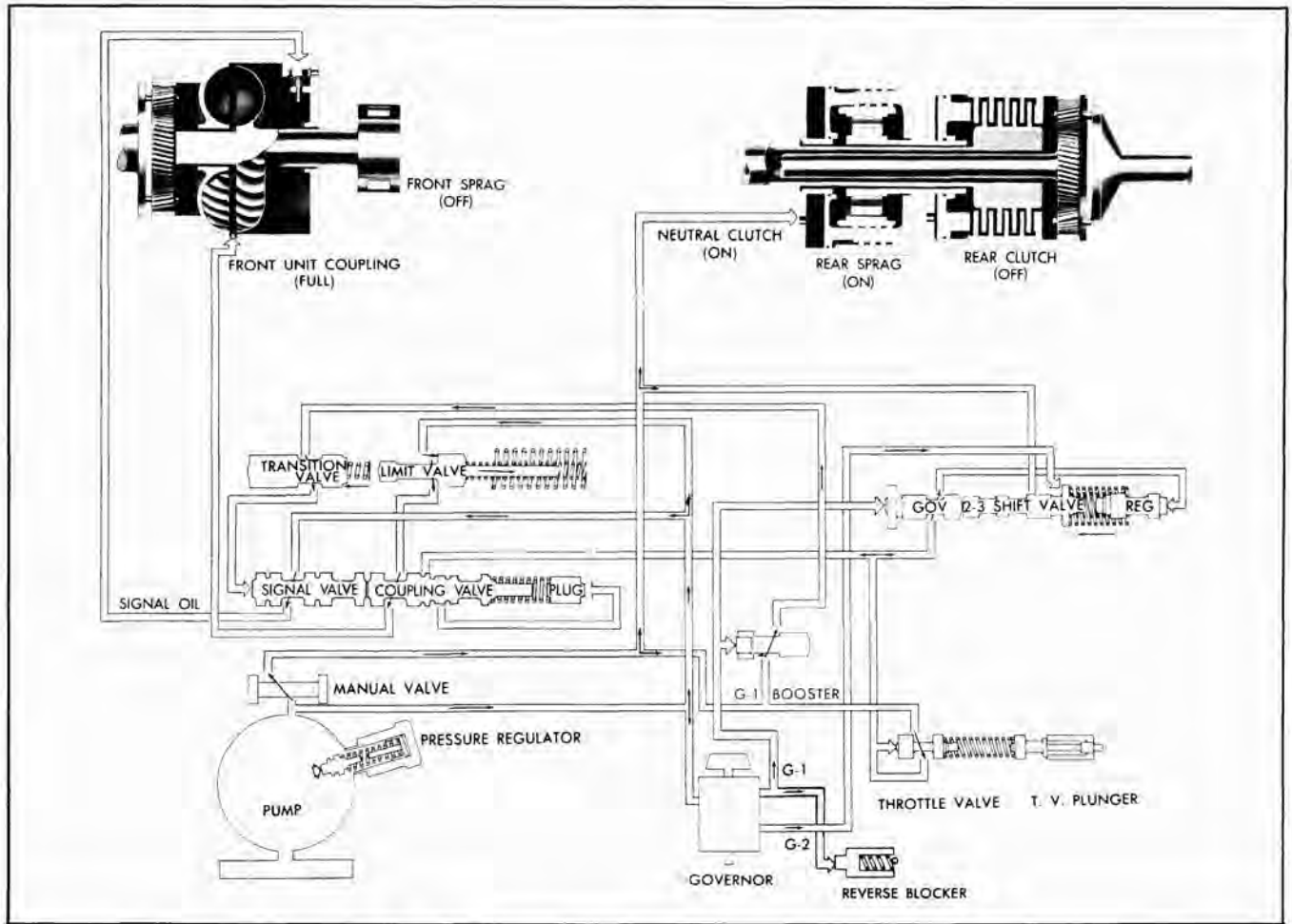


Fig. 28 Hydraulic Action in Second Speed—Drive Left

**FRONT UNIT
IN DIRECT DRIVE**

COUPLING—FULL
SPRAG —OFF

**REAR UNIT
IN REDUCTION**

REAR CLUTCH —OFF
SPRAG —ON
NEUTRAL CLUTCH—ON

As the car accelerates in first speed, governor pressure increases and governor boost pressure increases correspondingly. When governor boost pressure becomes sufficient, the coupling and coupling signal valves are moved against spring pressure and TV pressure to the open position (Fig. 28). The more the accelerator pedal is depressed the greater TV pressure becomes. Thus with more throttle opening the car must reach a higher speed to develop enough governor boost pressure to cause the valves to open. When the coupling and coupling signal valves open, coupling signal oil passes through the coupling signal

valve and closes the exhaust valves in the front unit coupling. Coupling fill oil, supplied to the coupling valve through the limit valve, passes through the coupling valve to fill the front unit coupling. As the coupling fills, the driven torus begins to rotate driving the front unit sun gear. When completely full, the sun gear and internal gear of the front unit are rotating at the same speed and the front unit is in direct drive.

As the coupling valve opens, TV pressure to the coupling valve plug is cut off.

The limit valve serves as a safety feature when the front coupling is filled. As mentioned earlier, approximately 55 psi is required to open the limit valve initially. If, due to a leak in the coupling fill circuit, the pressure drops below 55 psi, the limit valve will close preventing further drop in oil pressure.

The rear unit is unaffected and remains in reduction.

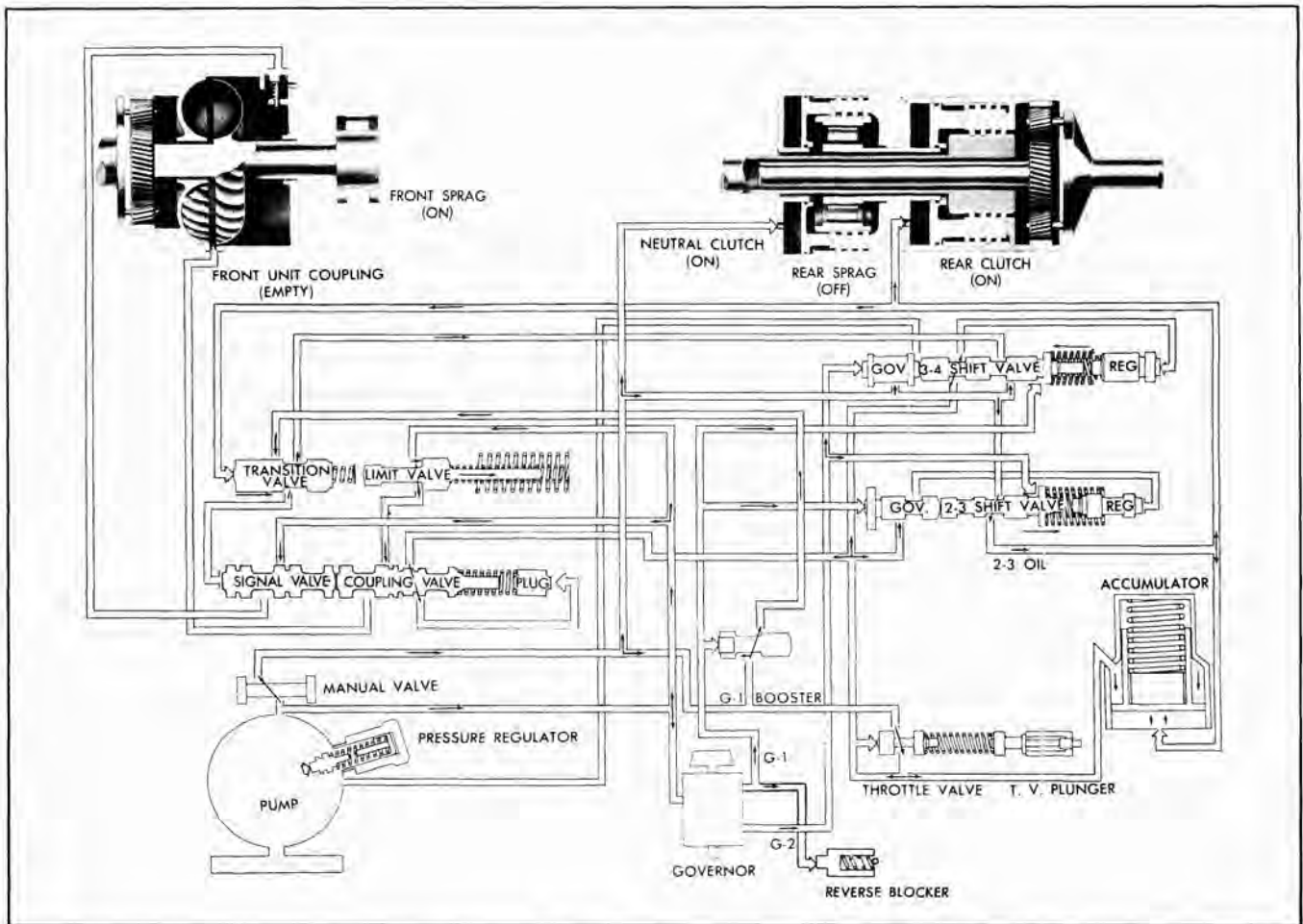


Fig. 29 Hydraulic Action in Third Speed—Drive Left

**FRONT UNIT
IN REDUCTION**

COUPLING—EMPTY
SPRAG —ON

**REAR UNIT
IN DIRECT DRIVE**

REAR CLUTCH —ON
SPRAG —OFF
NEUTRAL CLUTCH—ON

As car speed increases in second speed, governor pressure increases. When governor pressure becomes sufficient, it moves the 2-3 shift valve to the open position against spring pressure and TV pressure (Fig. 29). Opening the 2-3 shift valve allows main line pressure to pass to the transition valve, rear clutch and accumulator. The action is as follows:

Main line pressure directed to apply the rear clutch must also compress the spring behind the accumulator piston. This action softens the rear clutch apply to provide a smooth 2-3 shift. TV pressure is also

used behind the accumulator piston to provide for more positive clutch application on heavy throttle shifts.

Simultaneously with the application of the rear clutch, 2-3 shift oil moves the transition valve to the right. This cuts off governor boost pressure which originally moved the coupling and coupling signal valves to the open position. The coupling valve spring then moves the coupling and coupling signal valves back to the closed position, cutting off coupling signal oil and coupling fill oil. The coupling then empties through the exhaust valves and the front unit goes into reduction.

With the rear clutch applied the rear unit is in direct drive, and with the front unit coupling empty, the front unit is in reduction. The transmission is, therefore, in third speed.

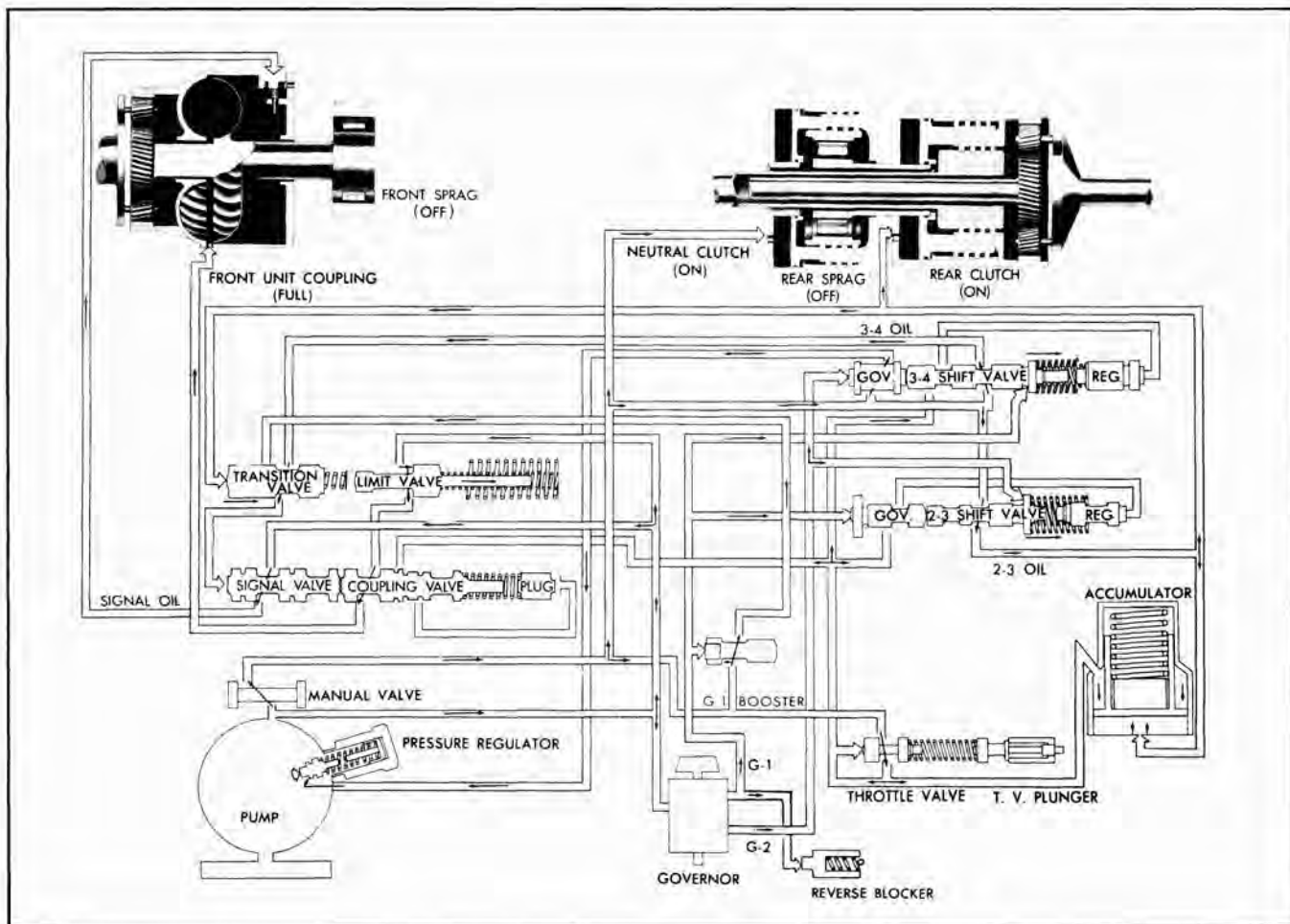


Fig. 30 Hydraulic Action in Fourth Speed—Drive Left

**FRONT UNIT
IN DIRECT DRIVE**

COUPLING—FULL
SPRAG —OFF

**REAR UNIT
IN DIRECT DRIVE**

REAR CLUTCH —ON
SPRAG —OFF
NEUTRAL CLUTCH—ON

When car speed increases in third speed, governor pressure will become sufficient to move the 3-4 shift valve to the open position (Fig. 30). Main line pressure will then pass from the 3-4 shift valve to the transition valve.

With the transition valve still in its right hand position, main line pressure from the 3-4 shift valve can pass through the transition valve into the same passage which carried governor boost oil in 1st and 2nd gear. Thus main line pressure is directed to the

left end of the coupling and coupling signal valves to move them to the open position.

Signal oil then passes from the coupling signal valve to close the front coupling exhaust valves. At the same time fill oil from the coupling valve enters and fills the coupling placing the front unit in direct drive. The rear unit remains in direct drive and the transmission is in fourth speed.

Main line pressure also passes through the 3-4 governor plug to the pressure regulator. The purpose of this oil is to resist the pressure regulator spring and reduce main line oil pressure after the transmission has shifted into fourth speed.

Not shown on the diagram is the fact that line drop pressure also is routed through the manual valve so that it is cut off in drive right and lo ranges.

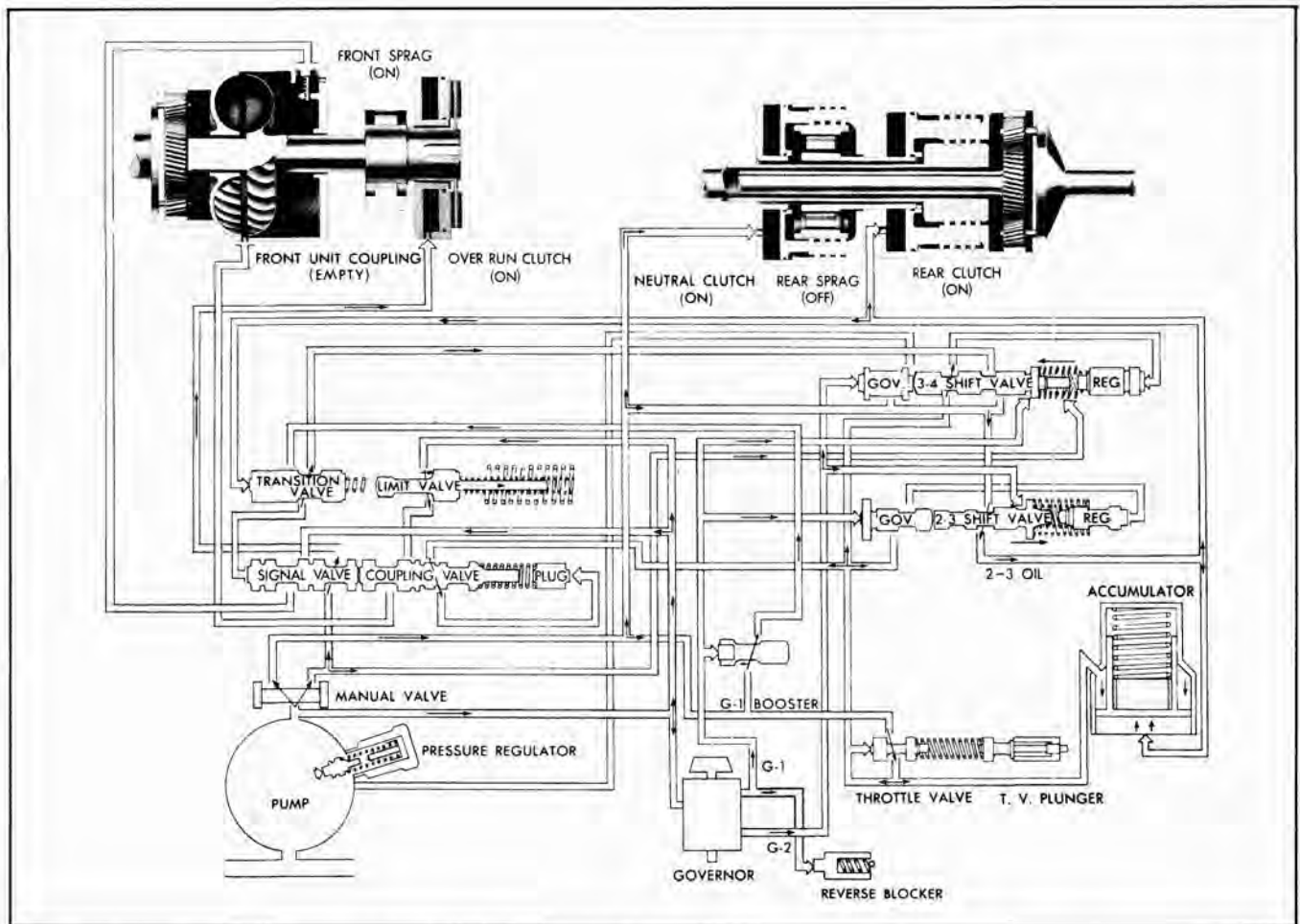


Fig. 31 Hydraulic Action in Third Speed—Drive Right

**FRONT UNIT
IN REDUCTION**

COUPLING —EMPTY
SPRAG —ON
OVERRUN CLUTCH—ON

**REAR UNIT
IN DIRECT DRIVE**

REAR CLUTCH —ON
SPRAG —OFF
NEUTRAL CLUTCH—ON
LO BAND —OFF

When the selector lever is moved to the drive right position, "drive left oil" is still directed to the same places as with the lever in drive left (Fig. 31).

In the drive right position, however, an additional passage is opened to direct main line pressure (drive right oil) from the manual valve to the back side of

the 3-4 shift valve. This pressure in addition to TV pressure and spring force normally prevents an upshift to fourth speed; however, at approximately 70 mph governor pressure becomes great enough to overcome these pressures and the 3-4 shift valve will open making a 3-4 upshift possible.

Drive right oil is also directed to apply the overrun clutch. Application of the overrun clutch is necessary to provide engine braking in third speed for descending long grades etc. Drive right oil to the overrun clutch is routed through the coupling valve so that when the front unit shifts into direct drive for second speed or fourth speed, the overrun clutch is released.

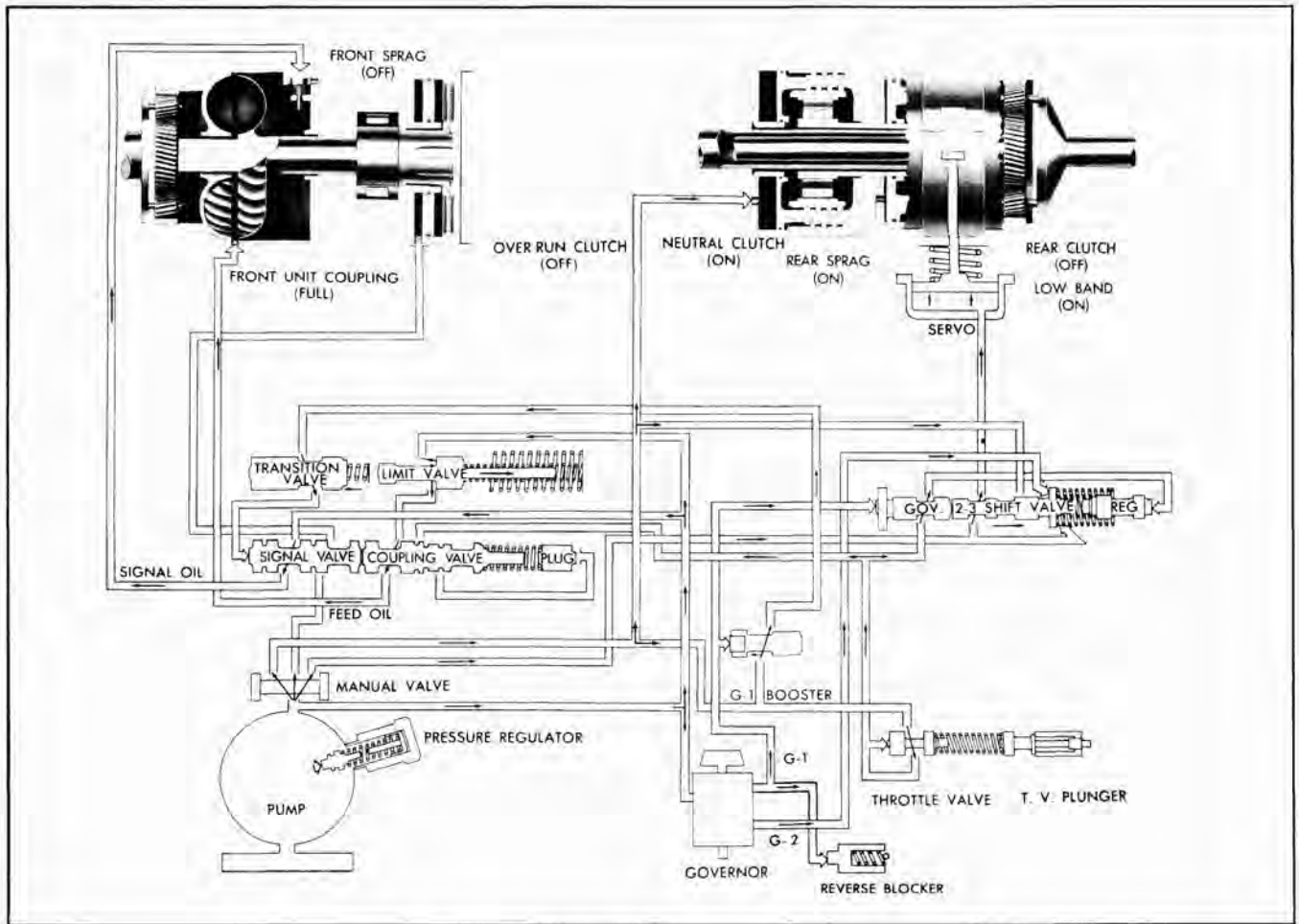


Fig. 32 Hydraulic Action in Second Speed—Lo Range

| FRONT UNIT IN DIRECT DRIVE | | REAR UNIT IN REDUCTION | |
|-------------------------------|-------|---------------------------|------|
| COUPLING | —FULL | REAR CLUTCH | —OFF |
| SPRAG | —OFF | SPRAG | —ON |
| OVERRUN CLUTCH | —OFF | NEUTRAL CLUTCH | —ON |
| | | LO BAND | —ON |

When the selector lever is moved to the lo range position, main line pressure is directed into the lo range circuit in addition to the drive left and drive right circuit (Fig. 32). The transmission starts in first speed and shifts to second speed in exactly the same manner as in drive left or drive right.

Lo range oil is directed through the 2-3 shift valve to apply the lo band, to the back side of the 2-3 shift valve to keep it closed, and to the transition valve to assist spring pressure.

The pressure behind the 2-3 shift valve prevents a 2-3 upshift unless car speed exceeds approximately 50 mph. Application of the lo band provides engine braking when the car is descending grades in first or second.

“Lo oil” to the back side of the 2-3 shift valve and to the lo band is cut off when the shift valve opens. This releases the lo band when the car is driven fast enough to cause a 2-3 shift.

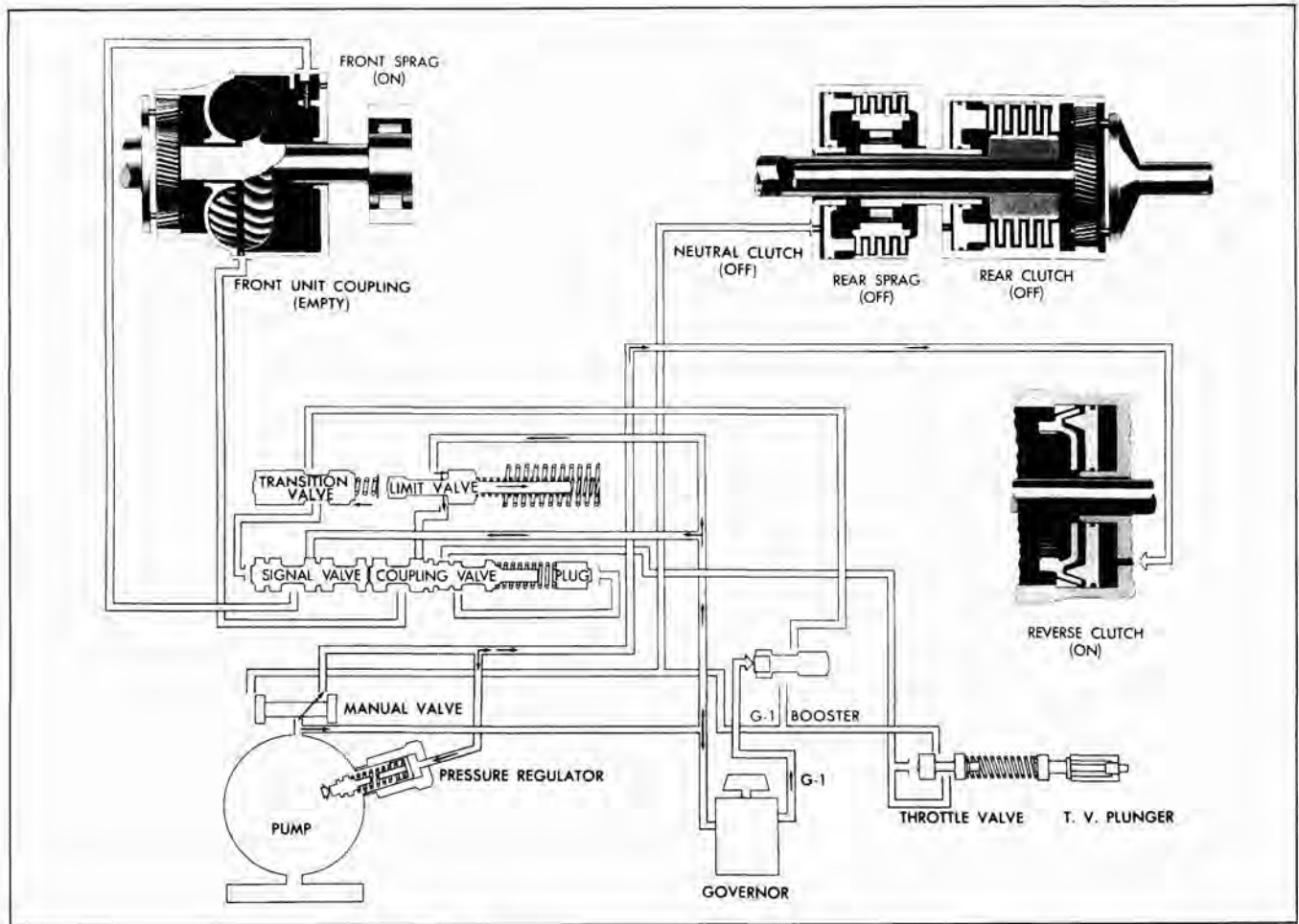


Fig. 33 Hydraulic Action in Reverse

**FRONT UNIT
IN REDUCTION**

COUPLING —EMPTY
SPRAG —ON
OVERRUN CLUTCH—OFF

**REAR UNIT
IN NEUTRAL**

REAR CLUTCH —OFF
SPRAG —OFF
NEUTRAL CLUTCH—OFF

**REVERSE UNIT
IN REDUCTION**

REVERSE CONE CLUTCH—ON

When the selector lever is moved to the reverse position, drive left, drive right and lo range oils are all cut off and main line pressure is directed to the reverse passage (Fig. 33).

“Reverse oil” is directed to apply the reverse cone.

In addition reverse oil is directed to the back of the coupling valve to prevent it from opening and to the reverse booster in the pressure regulator. Main line pressure in the pressure regulator increases main line pressure in reverse to assure positive application of the reverse cone clutch.

The reverse blocker is used to prevent accidental selection of reverse while the car is moving forward at speeds above 10 mph. Governor pressure behind the blocker at higher speeds holds the blocker out to mechanically block the selector linkage from being moved into reverse. At speeds below 10 mph the blocker piston spring overcomes governor pressure on the blocker piston and moves the piston out of the way.

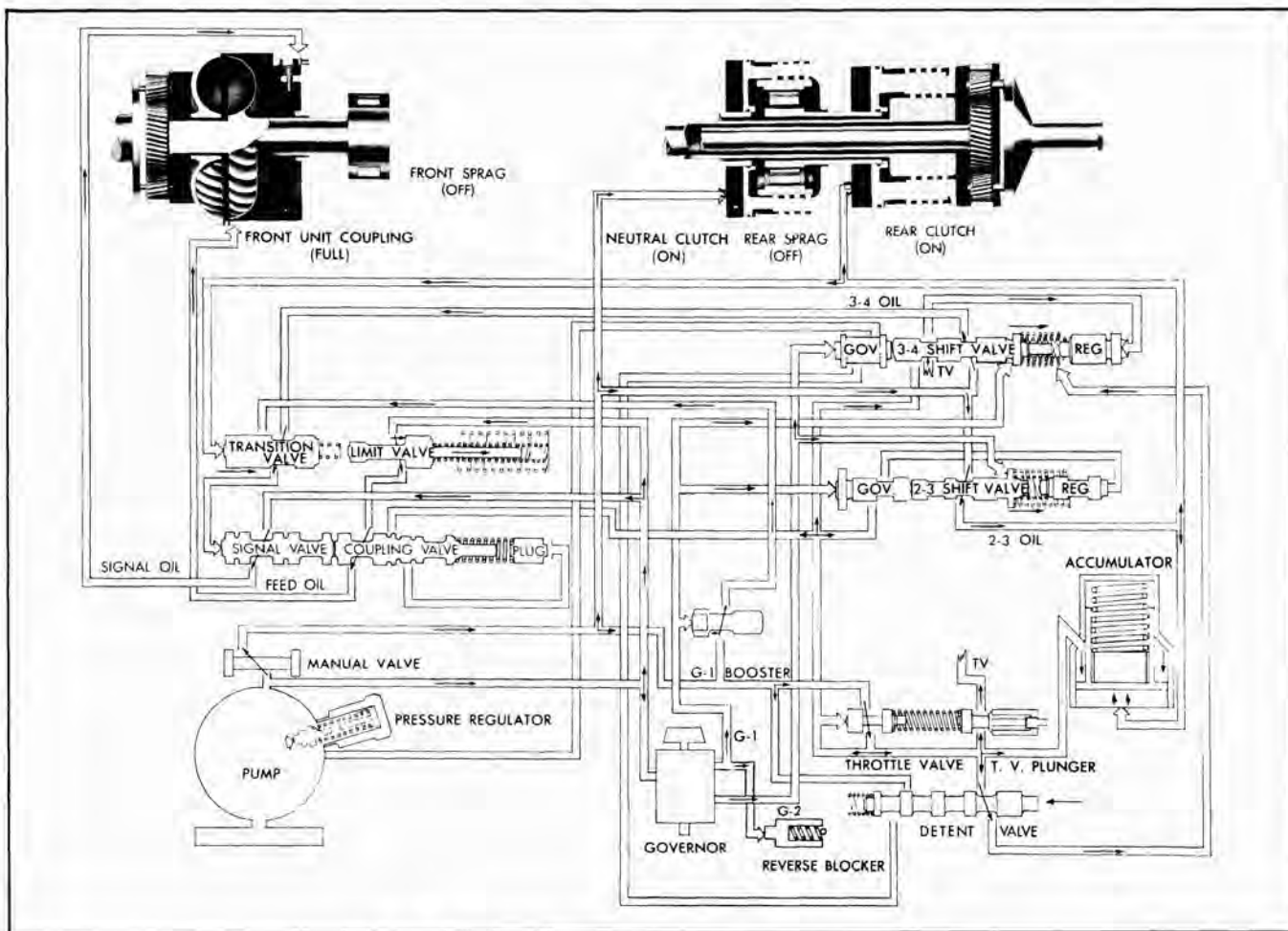


Fig. 34 Hydraulic Action During Forced 4-3 Downshift

FRONT UNIT
IN DIRECT DRIVE
 COUPLING—FULL
 SPRAG —OFF

REAR UNIT
DIRECT DRIVE
 REAR CLUTCH —ON
 SPRAG —OFF
 NEUTRAL CLUTCH—ON

In order to get maximum acceleration while driving in fourth speed, it is sometimes desirable to shift down to third speed. To make this possible the detent valve has been incorporated. The detent valve is controlled by the accelerator pedal position so that when the accelerator is pushed to its maximum travel the detent valve will be opened. At the same time maximum TV pressure is secured which is equal to main line pressure.

With the detent valve opened, TV pressure is

allowed to pass the detent valve into a passage where it is directed to the back of the 3-4 shift valve (Fig. 34). TV pressure which is equal to main line pressure with the throttle wide open, then closes the 3-4 shift valve forcing the transmission to downshift from fourth to third. At speeds above approximately 68 mph governor pressure is high enough that this downshift cannot be made.

Line drop oil from the 3-4 governor valve to the pressure regulator is routed through the detent valve so that it will immediately be cut off on a forced 4-3 downshift. This assures that maximum line pressure will immediately be available for holding the neutral and rear clutches.

The diagram indicates fourth speed prior to the downshift to third.

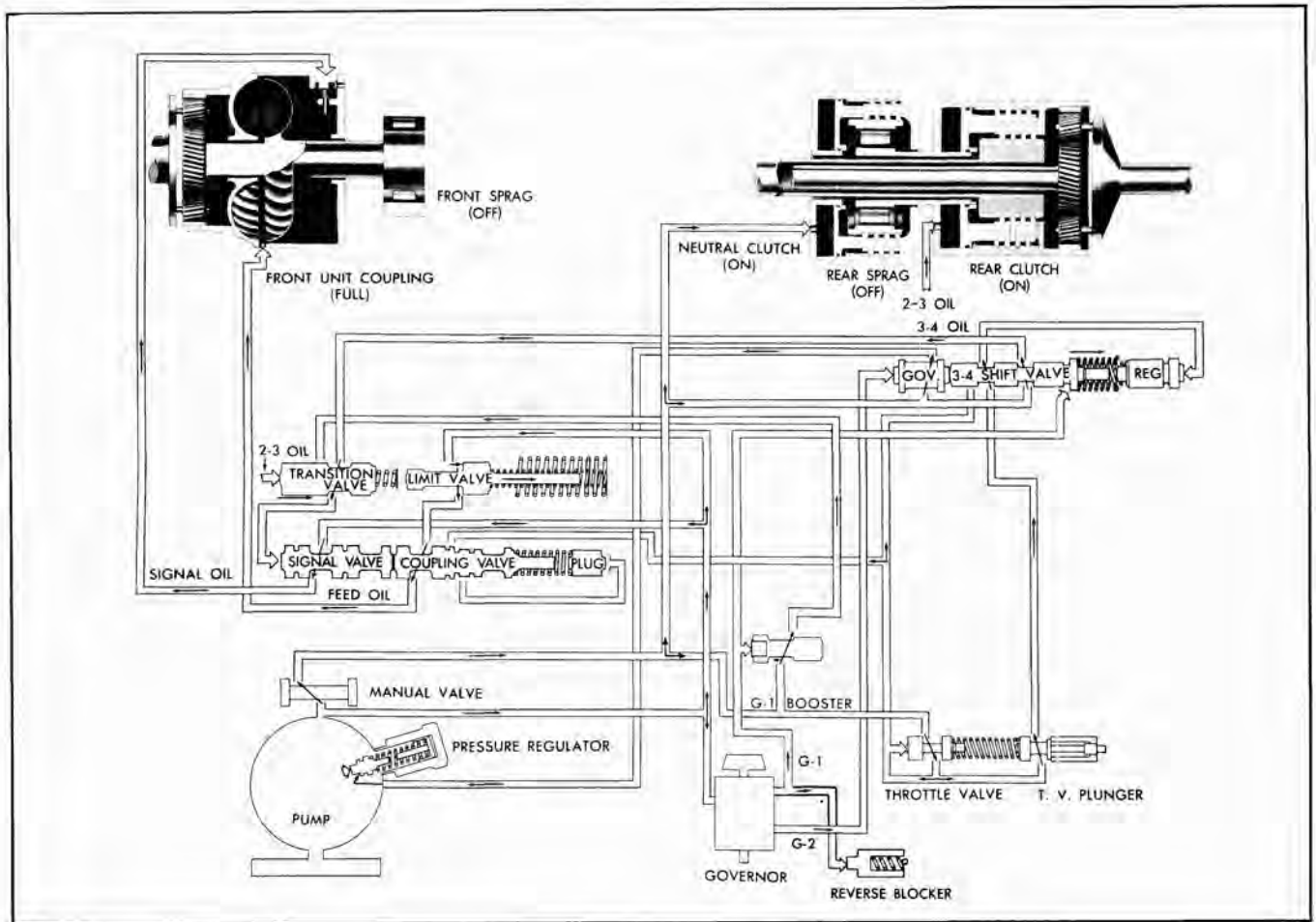


Fig. 35 Hydraulic Action During Part Throttle 4-3 Downshift

**FRONT UNIT
IN DIRECT DRIVE**

COUPLING—FULL
SPRAG —OFF

**REAR UNIT
IN DIRECT DRIVE**

REAR CLUTCH —ON
SPRAG —OFF
NEUTRAL CLUTCH—ON

When operating at speeds below approximately 35 mph in fourth speed, depressing the accelerator part way to the floor causes TV pressure to be directed through a passage from the TV plunger against the 3-4 regulator plug. This TV pressure against the regulator plug overcomes governor pres-

sure closing the 3-4 shift valve (Fig. 35). How far the accelerator must be depressed depends upon car speed. At 25 mph for instance the downshift is made with relatively little additional pedal travel while at 35 mph the accelerator will have to be depressed nearly to the floor. This downshift provides improved acceleration at lower speeds without the necessity of opening the throttle wide open.

The PE model uses TV oil to operate the detent valve to provide a better shift pattern for that engine.

The diagram indicates fourth speed prior to the downshift to third.

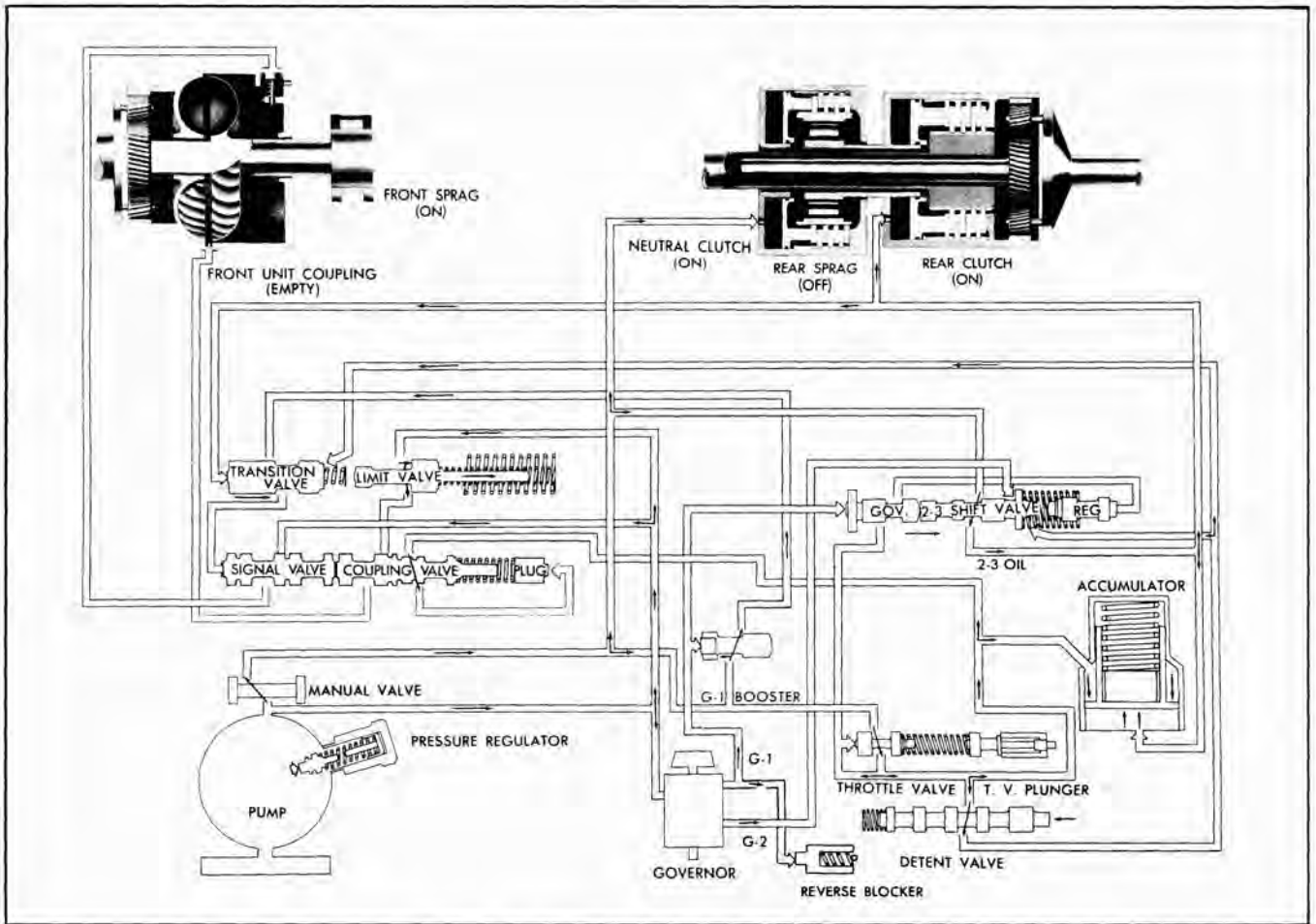


Fig. 36 Hydraulic Action During Forced 3-2 Downshift

**FRONT UNIT
IN REDUCTION**

COUPLING—EMPTY
SPRAG —ON

**REAR UNIT
IN DIRECT DRIVE**

REAR CLUTCH —ON
SPRAG —OFF
NEUTRAL CLUTCH—ON

At car speeds below approximately 25 mph, it is possible to force the transmission to shift from third back into second for more rapid acceleration. This shift is obtained by depressing the accelerator pedal to the floor to open the detent valve.

When the detent valve is opened, TV pressure (which is equal to main line pressure at full throttle)

passes the detent valve into the detent passage (Fig. 36). This pressure, referred to as detent oil, is directed to the back of the 2-3 shift valve to force it back to the closed position. At car speeds above approximately 25 mph, governor pressure is high enough to prevent this downshift.

TV pressure is also directed from the 2-3 shift valve to the transition valve. This pressure assures rapid movement of the transition valve to the left to allow governor boost pressure to quickly open the coupling and signal valves.

The diagram indicates third speed prior to the downshift to second.

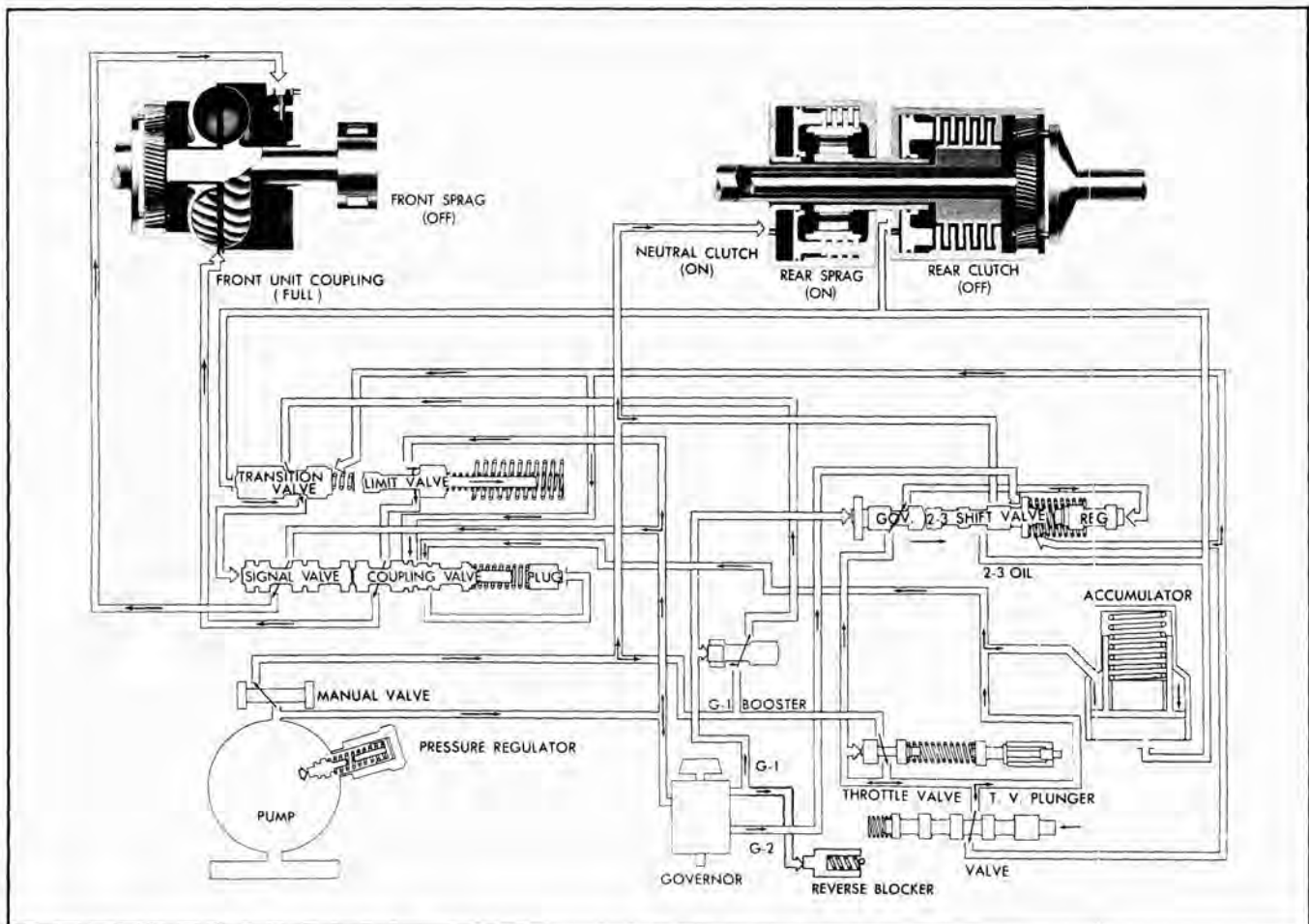


Fig. 37 Hydraulic Action During Forced 2-1 Downshift

**FRONT UNIT
IN DIRECT DRIVE**

COUPLING—FULL
SPRAG —OFF

**REAR UNIT
IN REDUCTION**

REAR CLUTCH —OFF
SPRAG —ON
NEUTRAL CLUTCH—ON

At car speeds below approximately 5-7 mph, it is possible to force the transmission to shift from second back to first to prevent engine lugging and provide increased car speed, which is desirable for steep grades. This shift is obtained by depressing the accelerator pedal to the floor to open the detent valve.

When the detent valve is opened, TV pressure (which is equal to main line pressure at full throttle) passes the detent valve into the detent passage (Fig. 37). This pressure, referred to as detent oil is directed to the back of the coupling valve to force it back to the closed position. The opening of the direct drive circuit to fill the front unit coupling and disengaging the sprag. The transmission is now in first speed. At car speeds above approximately 5-7 mph, governor pressure is high enough to prevent this downshift.

The diagram indicates second speed prior to the downshift to first.

PERIODIC SERVICE RECOMMENDATIONS

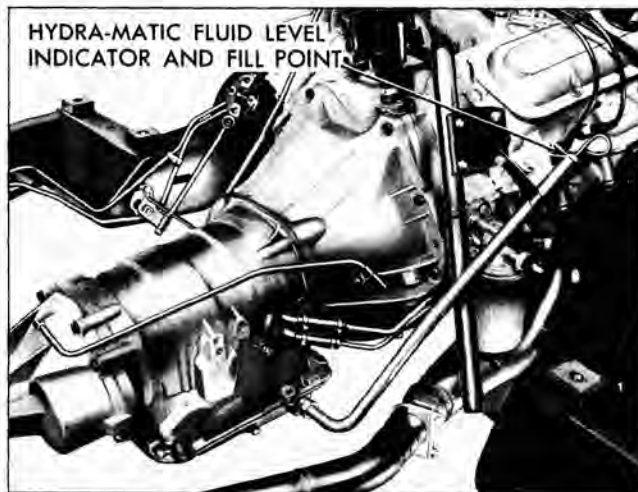


Fig. 38 Fluid Level Indicator

TRANSMISSION FLUID

Transmission fluid level should be checked (with transmission warm) every 4000 miles at time engine oil change is performed. Procedure for checking level is included on page 38 of this manual. Hydra-Matic fluid and strainer screen should be changed every 25,000 miles or sooner if driving conditions create a dark varnish on components or if foreign material is present in transmission. Instructions for draining and refilling appear on page 38.

Since the Hydra-Matic transmission is sensitive to oil level, special precautions should be taken when checking the oil level otherwise valve buzz or shift malfunctions may be experienced.

FLUID LEVEL INDICATOR

The fluid level indicator is located in the filler pipe at the right rear corner of the engine (Fig. 38). To

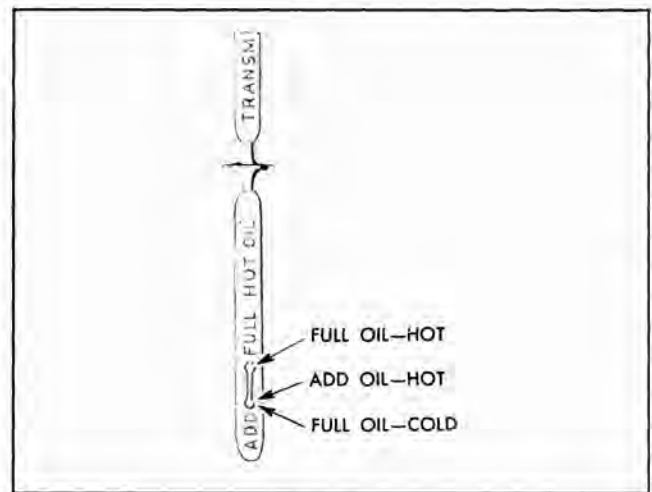


Fig. 39 Indicator Markings

bring fluid level from lower mark to full mark requires 1 pint (Fig. 39). Indicator handle should be turned slightly to lock it to the filler tube.

NEW CAR AND 2000 MILE INSPECTIONS

New car and 2000 miles inspection should be performed as outlined on form S-6210, "Pontiac New Car Pre-Delivery and 2000 Mile Inspection and Adjustment." When road testing during both the new car and 2000 mile inspection and adjustment the following items are important:

1. Neutralizer switch should not allow car to start except in park and neutral.
2. Pointer should index properly.
3. Fluid level should be to the FULL mark.

ADJUSTMENTS WITH TRANSMISSION IN CAR

ADJUST THROTTLE CONTROL LINKAGE

CAUTION: Linkage operation will not be satisfactory if binding or excessive wear exists.

1. Remove air cleaner and loosen both nuts at transmission throttle control rod trunnion (Fig. 41).

2. Adjust engine idle speed to 480-500 rpm in drive range (540-560 with air conditioning).

3. Shut off engine and install linkage adjustment pin J-7687 through holes in throttle control lever and bracket (Fig. 41).

NOTE: Four-barrel units are equipped with a throttle return check. Before installing pin, it will be necessary to either remove throttle return check or install tool J-6342-01 over return check so that it will not interfere with linkage adjustment.

4. With throttle valves fully closed against stop (low step of fast idle cam) loosen lock nut and adjust length of transmission throttle control rod to carburetor (Fig. 41) so that gauge pin is free in hole. Leave pin installed and tighten lock nut securely. Recheck freeness of gauge pin in holes.

5. Push throttle control rod to transmission (T.V. upper rod) downward until the outer throttle lever is felt to touch end of travel (Fig. 40).

CAUTION: Make sure that, when lever is in this position, the upper lock nut is not touching trunnion.

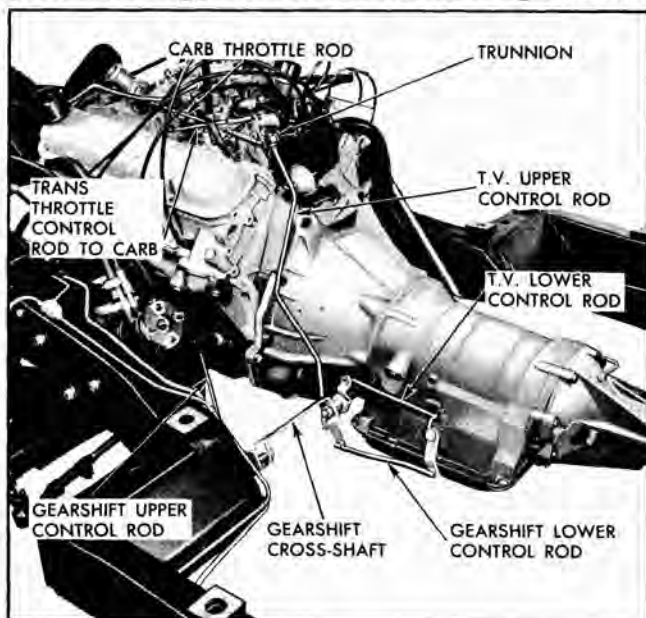


Fig. 40 Throttle Control Linkage

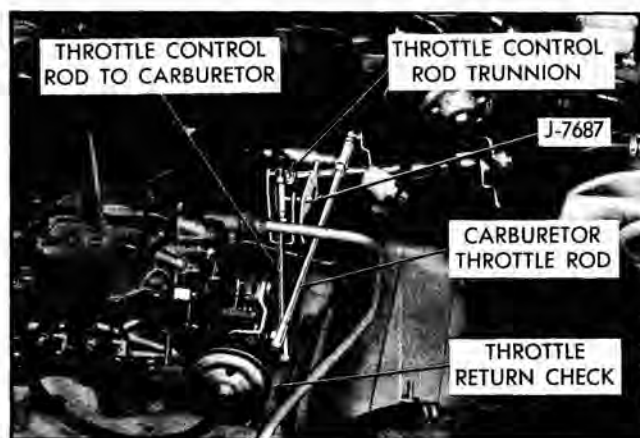


Fig. 41 Linkage Pin Installed

6. While holding throttle control rod to transmission in this position, tighten upper and lower trunnion lock nuts finger tight (Fig. 41). Shorten throttle control rod to transmission by backing off lower trunnion nut $2\frac{1}{2}$ turns and tighten upper nut securely. Remove gauge pin.

7. Loosen lock nut on carburetor throttle rod (Fig. 41).

8. Adjust carburetor throttle rod to obtain 4.55" clearance from underside of attaching boss on pedal to body toe pan as shown in Fig. 42. (App. $3\frac{3}{4}$ " to carpet). Tighten lock nut on carburetor throttle rod securely.

9. Remove J-6342-01 or install throttle return check.

10. Install air cleaner.

11. After throttle linkage adjustment has been made, road test car and tailor adjustment as required by shortening or lengthening the throttle control rod to transmission (T.V. rod) one half turn at a time to obtain the best shift feel.

ADJUST SELECTOR LEVER LINKAGE

COLUMN SHIFT

1. Put upper shift control lever and transmission lever in park P position and, with the gearshift upper control rod trunnion nuts (Fig. 42) backed clear of the trunnion, pull the control rod down toward the transmission as far as possible. While holding rod in this position, run the trunnion upper nut down to just contact the trunnion. Run lower nut up to contact trunnion and lock nuts securely.

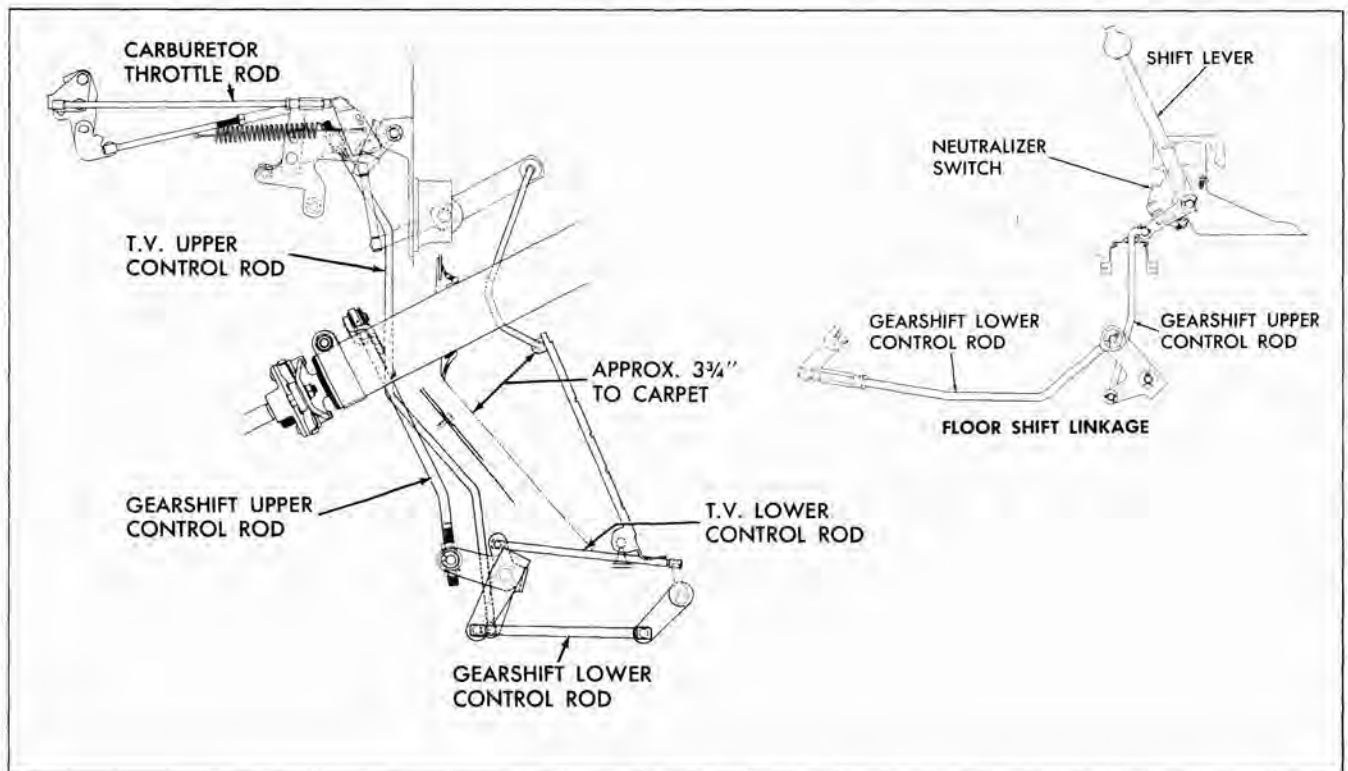


Fig. 42 Accelerator and Gearshift Linkage

2. After completing above adjustments, check transmission parking lock with car on ramp or grade for positive lock.

3. Place upper shift lever in "right drive" position and check Hydra-Matic indicator pointer index. If necessary to adjust, loosen check nut above ball stud, adjust index by rotating rod and lock check nut securely.

FLOOR SHIFT

1. Place shift lever in Park position and, with gearshift lower control rod disconnected at the forward end, hold control rod toward rear of car. While holding the rod in this position, turn the adjusting nut on the rod so that it goes on the outer shift lever stud without moving the lever. Lock the adjusting nut.

2. Test transmission parking lock for proper operation with car on slight grade.

3. There is no adjustment for the indicator glass.

NEUTRALIZER SWITCH

The neutralizer switch on column shift cars has no adjustment. It should allow the car to be started only in Park or Neutral.

The floor shift neutralizer switch can be adjusted by removing the console, loosening the 2 switch at-

taching screws, and adjusting it so the car starts only in Park or Neutral.

To remove the console, remove the console compartment box and then the console center bracket to floor screws. Remove the 4 remaining console attaching screws, compartment light switch, indicator bulb, courtesy light connections, and shift lever knob. Lift console over shift lever and remove toward rear seat.

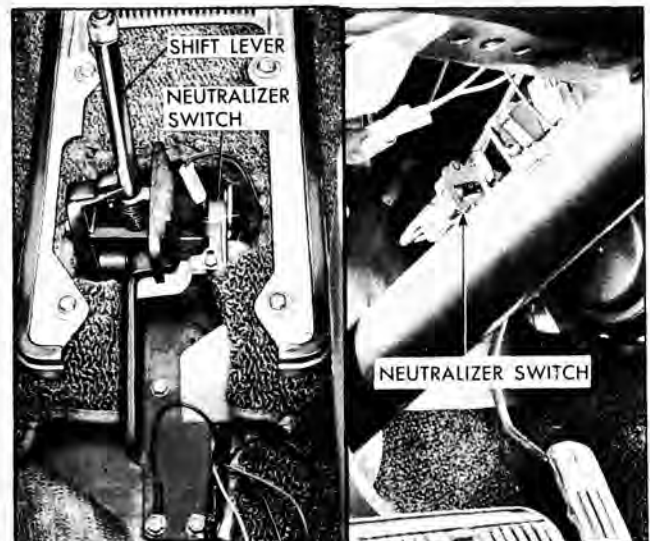


Fig. 43 Neutralizer Switch

MINOR SERVICE AND REPAIRS

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

| SUBJECT | PAGE | SUBJECT | PAGE |
|--|------|---|------|
| Checking Oil Level | 38 | Replace Parking Brake Linkage and Inside Detent and Throttle Control Levers | 39 |
| Fluid Capacity, Draining and Refilling | 38 | Replace Control Valve Assembly and Servo and Accumulator Assembly | 39 |
| Replace Rear Seal | 39 | Replace Pressure Regulator | 39 |
| Replace Governor | 39 | | |

Services outlined in this section can be performed without removing the transmission from the car. Complete procedures are not given for all of these services, since they are covered in detail under "Removal of Units from Case" and "Installation of Units into Case."

CHECKING OIL LEVEL

1. Park car on level floor, place selector lever in park position and run engine until it reaches normal operating temperature (to make certain transmission is at normal operating temperature).

2. With engine idling at normal idle speed, check oil level indicator (Fig. 38) and note reading (Fig. 39). **NOTE:** When adding fluid use Automatic Transmission Fluid (Type A) from containers bearing Armour Institute qualification number "AQ-ATF".

Since the 1961 transmission is very sensitive to oil level, special precautions should be taken when checking the oil level otherwise valve buzz or shift malfunctions may be experienced.

FLUID CAPACITY, DRAINING AND REFILLING

CAPACITY

Approximately 10 quarts of fluid are required to refill transmission after torus cover and oil pan have been drained as outlined below. When unit has been disassembled and rebuilt, approximately 10½ quarts will be required to refill. Use only Automatic Transmission Fluid (Type A) from containers bearing Armour Institute qualification number "AQ-ATF".

DRAINING AND REFILLING TRANSMISSION

Transmission oil should be changed every 25,000 miles at which time it is also recommended that the oil pan be dropped and the oil intake strainer be replaced.

Drain oil immediately after operation before it has had an opportunity to cool.

To drain oil proceed as follows:

1. Remove flywheel housing bottom cover.
2. Remove hex head pipe plug from torus cover using **SIX-POINT** socket (never use twelve-point socket as this will damage head of soft pipe plug).
3. Disconnect filler pipe from right side of oil pan. **NOTE:** Flushing of Hydra-Matic transmission is not recommended.
4. Remove oil pan and oil strainer. Discard strainer.
5. Thoroughly clean pan.
6. Install new strainer using new "O" ring on pump intake pipe if necessary.
7. Affix new gasket to oil pan with petrolatum.
8. Install oil pan. Tighten attaching screws securely.
9. Connect filler pipe to oil pan. Tighten torus drain plug in flywheel to 6-7 lb. ft. torque using **SIX-POINT SOCKET**.
10. Install flywheel housing bottom cover.
11. Remove oil level indicator and wipe it clean.
12. Pour 8 quarts of Hydra-Matic fluid into transmission. **BE SURE CONTAINER, SPOUT OR FUNNEL IS CLEAN.**
13. Set selector lever in P position and apply hand brake. Run engine at speed equivalent to 20 mph for approximately 1½ minutes to fill fluid coupling.
14. Reduce engine speed to slow idle (carburetor off fast idle step).
15. Add fluid to bring level to **FULL** mark on indicator.
16. With engine idling and transmission warm (approximately 150°F.) make final check to be certain transmission is filled to proper level. **CAUTION: Do not overfill—foaming will result.**
17. Replace oil level indicator. Turn handle ¼ turn to lock it to the filler tube.

REPLACE REAR SEAL

1. Disconnect propeller shaft from transmission:
 - a. Remove "U" bolt nuts, lock plates, and "U" bolts from rear axle drive pinion flange.
 - b. Use a suitable rubber band or tape to hold bearings on journals if tie wire is disconnected.
 - c. Slide propeller shaft rearwards off transmission output shaft.
2. Remove oil seal from housing with screwdriver.
3. Coat casing of new seal with gasket compound.
4. Position seal with lip facing forward, and drive it into housing with installer J-5154-A until it bottoms.
5. Wipe some oil on the drive shaft yoke and slide propeller shaft onto transmission output shaft.
6. Remove tape or rubber band from "U" joint bearings and assemble "U" joint. Bend nut locking plate.

REPLACE GOVERNOR

To replace a governor it will be necessary to disconnect the propeller shaft from the transmission and remove the rear bearing retainer.

1. Disconnect propeller shaft from transmission.
2. Disconnect speedometer cable from transmission.
3. Remove 2 rear mount support to crossmember nuts.
4. Place a jack under the transmission and raise the studs above the crossmember.
5. Remove the brake cable guide rod and return spring from crossmember.
6. Remove the 2 bolts from each end of the frame crossmember and remove crossmember.
7. Lower rear of transmission and remove eight rear bearing retainer to reverse piston housing attaching screws and washers.
8. Remove breather pipe.
9. Withdraw rear bearing retainer and gasket and discard gasket. Tap retainer lightly, if necessary, to loosen.
10. Remove and replace governor.
11. Affix new gasket to reverse piston housing with petrolatum.

12. Pilot rear bearing retainer over end of output shaft and secure to reverse piston housing and case with eight attaching screws and washers.

13. Raise transmission and install frame crossmember. Attach with 2 attaching bolts at each end.

14. Lower transmission so studs in rear mount support enter holes in crossmember. Install nuts to studs.

15. Connect speedometer cable.

16. Install breather pipe.

17. Connect propeller shaft by sliding onto output shaft and assembling "U" joint.

REPLACE PARKING BRAKE LINKAGE AND INSIDE DETENT AND THROTTLE CONTROL LEVERS

The parking brake links, lever, bracket and lever spring can be replaced without disturbing the rear extension housing. After removing oil pan and screen, remove all control valve assembly attaching screws and allow valve body to hang (it will be retained where spacer plate extends under servo and accumulator assembly).

Letting the valve body hang allows the inside detent and throttle levers to be rotated as necessary to slide the parking brake bracket and spring off the shaft. It also provides clearance for removing the inside detent and throttle control lever.

When reassembling be sure to engage parking brake bracket properly in parking brake lever and detent lever, position throttle control lever between stop and stem of TV plunger and engage pin of detent lever in manual valve.

If parking pawl is to be replaced, it will also be necessary to remove the rear bearing retainer and reverse clutch housing, using the procedure for replacement of rear bearing, so that the reverse clutch housing can be removed to expose the parking pawl shaft for removal.

REPLACE CONTROL VALVE ASSEMBLY AND SERVO AND ACCUMULATOR ASSEMBLY

The servo and accumulator assembly can be removed without disturbing the control valve assembly. When removing the control valve assembly, however, it is first necessary to remove the servo and accumulator assembly.

REPLACE PRESSURE REGULATOR ASSEMBLY

When replacing the pressure regulator be sure to tighten it to 5 lb. ft. torque.

REMOVAL OF TRANSMISSION

The Hydra-Matic transmission, flywheel housing and torus assembly are removed as a unit.

Before raising the car on the lift, remove one cable (either one) from the battery, since the starter must be removed, and release the emergency brake.

1. Drain transmission by disconnecting filler pipe from right side of oil pan. The torus assembly can be drained at the same time or it can be drained after the transmission is removed from engine. To drain torus, remove flywheel housing bottom cover and remove hex head pipe plug from torus cover using SIX-POINT socket (never use twelve-point socket as this will damage head of soft pipe plug).

2. Disconnect oil cooler lines by either removing clamps and pulling hoses off pipes or by cutting the hoses.

3. Disconnect propeller shaft from transmission output shaft as follows:

a. Remove U-bolt nuts, lock plates and U-bolts from rear axle drive pinion flange.

b. Use a suitable rubber band or tape to hold bearing onto journals if tie wire has been removed to prevent loss of needle bearings when rear joint is disconnected.

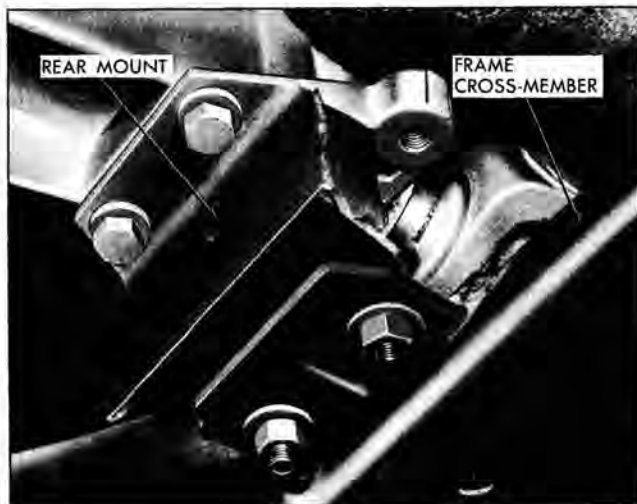


Fig. 44 Rear Mount Assembly

c. Remove complete drive line assembly by sliding rearward to disengage from splines on transmission output shaft.

4. Disconnect speedometer cable from speedometer driven gear.

5. Remove gearshift lower control rod.

6. Remove the two cross shaft bracket to frame attaching bolts and then remove the bracket, cross shaft lever, and bushing from transmission.

7. Remove lower end of T.V. upper control rod (engine to transmission idler lever).

8. Remove T.V. lever control rod.

9. Remove throttle idler lever.

10. Remove both starter cables.

11. Remove the starter and the splash shield by removing the two attaching bolts.

12. Remove flywheel housing bottom cover, if not previously removed.

13. Remove nuts from six torus cover and flywheel to flex plate attaching bolts.

14. Position special automatic transmission jack under transmission.

15. Remove two rear mount to frame crossmember nuts (Fig. 44).

16. Remove the two bolts and retainers from each end of the frame crossmember.

17. Raise the transmission so rear mount support studs are clear of crossmember. Rotate crossmember slightly in frame and remove parking brake return spring and cable guide rod from frame crossmember.

18. Remove crossmember.

19. Lower transmission far enough so the flywheel housing to engine bolts can be removed with a long extension.

20. Work transmission rearward to disengage dowels from front flywheel housing, then lower transmission from car.

21. Remove rear mount from transmission.

REMOVAL OF UNITS FROM CASE

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

| SUBJECT | PAGE | SUBJECT | PAGE |
|---|------|--|------|
| Torus Members and Flywheel Housing | 41 | Case Support, Neutral Clutch and Rear Unit | 45 |
| Install Transmission in Holding Fixture | 42 | Reverse Parts | 46 |
| Check Main Shaft End Play | 43 | L (Low) Band | 47 |
| Oil Pan, Oil Strainer and Intake Pipe | 43 | Inside Detent and Throttle Levers | 47 |
| Servo and Accumulator and Control Valve | 43 | Parking Pawl and Linkage | 48 |
| Pump and Overrun Clutch | 44 | Detent Spring and Roller | 49 |

Either holding fixture J-6115 or the new fixture J-8763, which is designed for the 3-speed transmission, may be used on the 4-speed transmission. Both fixtures fit in the same bench collet.

If the J-6115 is used, it will be attached to the transmission after the flywheel housing has been removed.

The J-8763 may be attached to the transmission and placed in the bench collet before disassembly is started. With transmission in horizontal position, oil pan down, insert lock handle through collet and fixture.

TORUS MEMBERS AND FLYWHEEL HOUSING

NOTE: These parts should be removed with transmission located horizontally in jack, on bench, or in holding fixture J-8763.

1. Remove oil cooler strap attaching bolt and strap (Fig. 45).

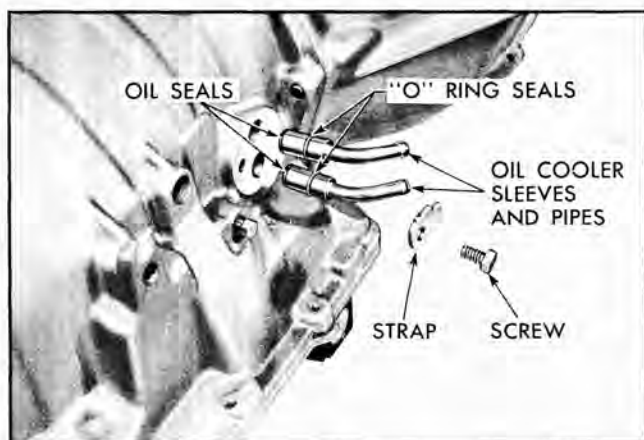


Fig. 45 Oil Cooler Sleeve and Seals

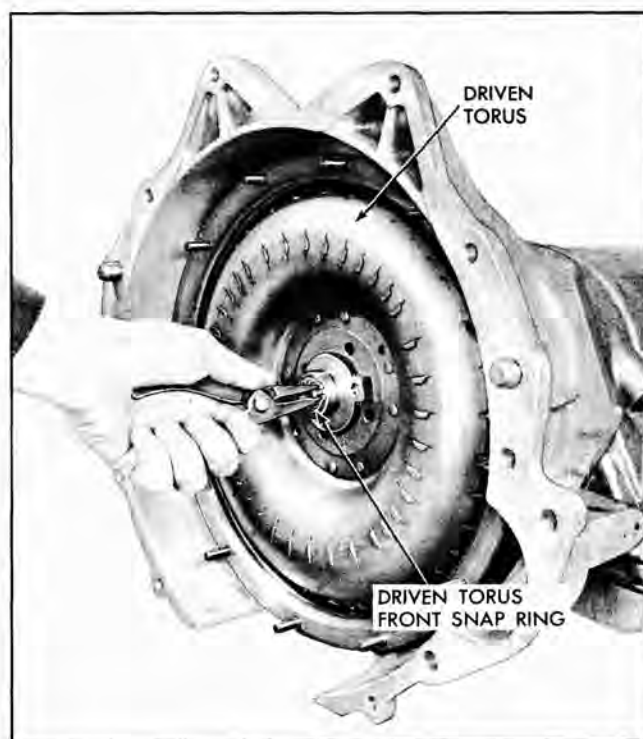


Fig. 46 Removing Driven Torus Front Snap Ring

2. Remove oil cooler sleeve assemblies, "O" rings, and sleeve seals. Snap ring pliers may be needed to remove sleeve seals.

3. Remove torus cover to flywheel attaching nuts and remove flywheel.

4. Remove large square sectioned seal from back of flywheel (torus cover to flywheel seal).

5. Using tool J-4880 (Fig. 46), remove Truarc snap ring from main shaft (snap ring which positions driven torus member).

6. Remove driven torus member from main shaft

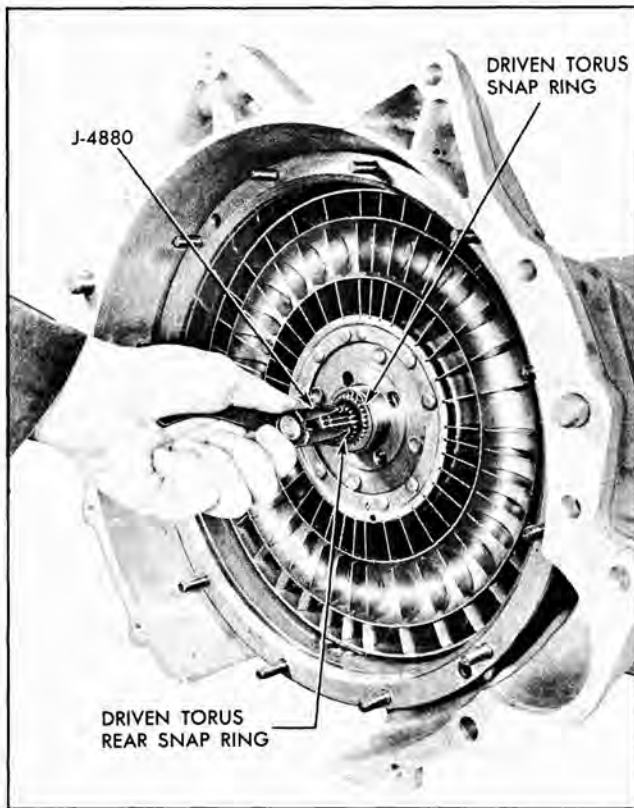


Fig. 47 Removing Driven Torus Rear Snap Ring

by sliding forward. **NOTE:** If torus member sticks, tap end of main shaft with soft hammer and at the same time pull out torus member.

7. Remove driven torus member rear snap ring from main shaft, using tool J-4880 (Fig. 47).

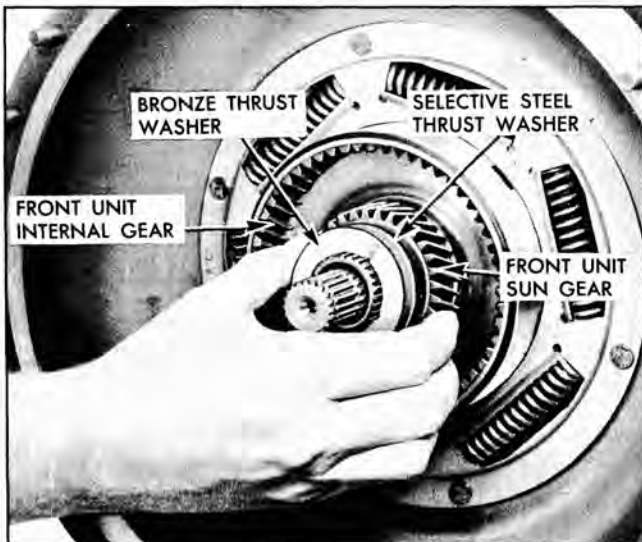


Fig. 48 Removing Sun Gear to Torus Hub Thrust Washers

8. Remove drive torus member snap ring from intermediate shaft (Fig. 47).

9. Remove drive torus member. **CAUTION:** Do not attempt to remove drive torus and torus cover together.

10. Remove bronze thrust washer and steel selective spacer (front sun gear to torus hub) (Fig. 48).

11. Remove front unit sun gear from front coupling torus shaft.

12. Remove snap ring from front coupling driven torus shaft.

13. Withdraw front unit internal gear together with steel thrust washer, needle bearing and second (black) steel thrust washer.

14. Remove torus cover assembly by pulling out with even pressure.

15. Install seal protector J-6119 over intermediate shaft (Fig. 49).

16. Remove breather pipe and clip.

17. Remove six bolts holding flywheel housing to front end of transmission case.

18. Slide flywheel housing gently over seal protector away from case.

19. Remove seal protector J-6119.

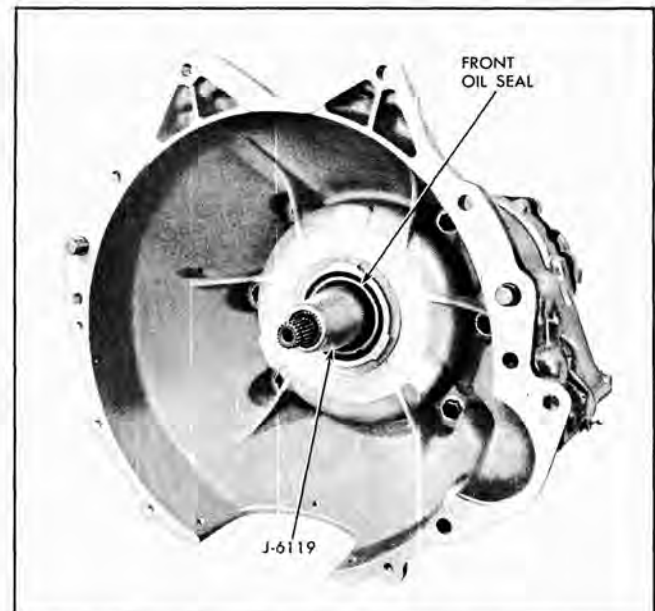


Fig. 49 Front Seal Protector in Place

20. Remove housing to case square sectioned seal from rear side of housing.

21. Remove front unit coupling assembly from case (Fig. 50).

Installation Page 87

INSTALL TRANSMISSION IN HOLDING FIXTURE

1. If holding fixture J-6115 is to be used:

a. Attach it to transmission case with supporting arm over transmission. Use flywheel housing attaching screws threaded through small holes in fixture.

b. Mount fixture in bench collet with transmission in horizontal position, oil pan up, and secure by inserting lock handle through collet and fixture.

2. If fixture J-8763 was attached and is in bench collet, rotate transmission so pan is up.

CHECK MAIN SHAFT END PLAY

1. Install collar of end play checking fixture J-6127 on intermediate shaft and secure in position by installing Truarc snap ring (Fig. 51). Attach fixture J-6127 to collar by threading collar securely into fixture.

2. Install dial indicator support J-6126.

3. Install J-8001 dial indicator (Fig. 52).

4. Move main shaft back and forth to check end play of main shaft. Be sure to get free main shaft end play. Forcing main shaft will give inaccurate reading.

5. Record amount of end play.

This mainshaft end play measurement will be used later to determine the proper rear unit selective thrust washer to use.

6. Remove dial indicator, support, and end play checking fixture.

OIL PAN, OIL STRAINER, AND INTAKE PIPE

1. Remove oil pan attaching screws.

2. Remove oil pan and gasket from transmission and discard gasket.

3. Loosen accumulator attaching bolt retaining the intake pipe clip. Pull oil strainer and intake pipe

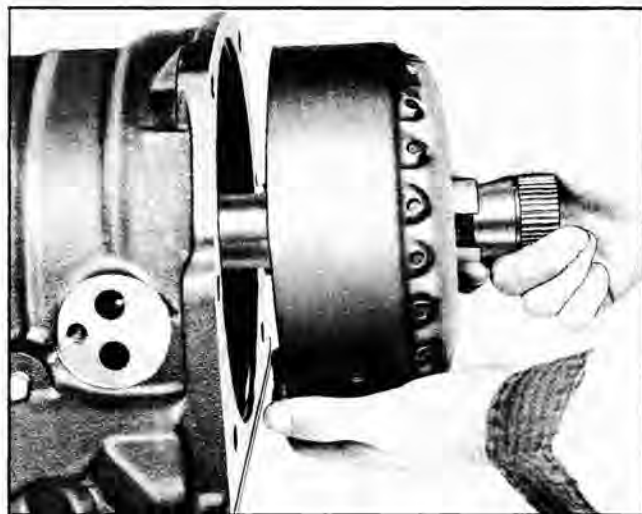


Fig. 50 Removing Front Unit Coupling

away from oil strainer attaching clip. Remove intake pipe and strainer from transmission (Fig. 53).

4. Withdraw intake pipe from strainer.

5. Remove "O" rings from pump and strainer, if replacement is necessary, and discard.

Installation Page 87

SERVO AND ACCUMULATOR AND CONTROL VALVE

1. Remove two bolts holding accumulator and servo assembly to case. NOTE: There is some spring tension under the servo.

2. Remove servo and accumulator assembly.

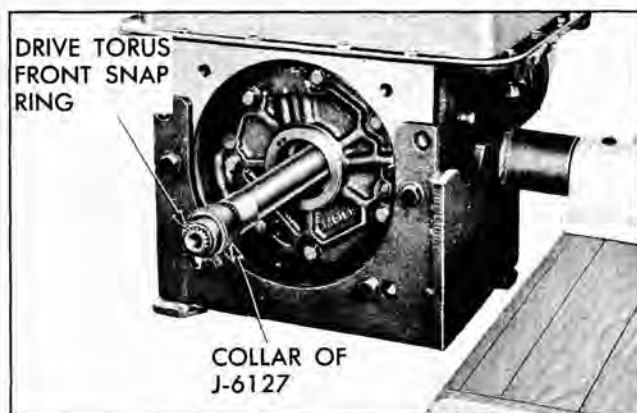


Fig. 51 Collar of Fixture J-6127 in Place Over Intermediate Shaft

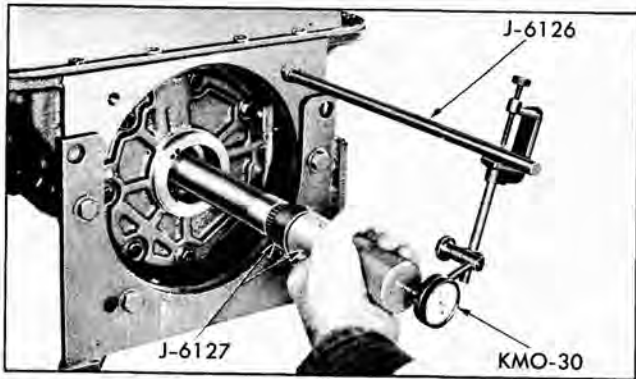


Fig. 52 Measuring Mainshaft End Play

3. Remove servo spring.
4. Remove five control valve assembly to case attaching bolts.
5. Remove control valve assembly from transmission and at same time carefully remove manual valve.

Disassembly Page 70

Installation Page 87

PUMP AND OVERRUN CLUTCH

1. Remove pump locking screw (Fig. 54) from control valve case pad.
2. Remove pressure regulator plug assembly from side of case and withdraw regulator spring and valve using snap ring pliers.

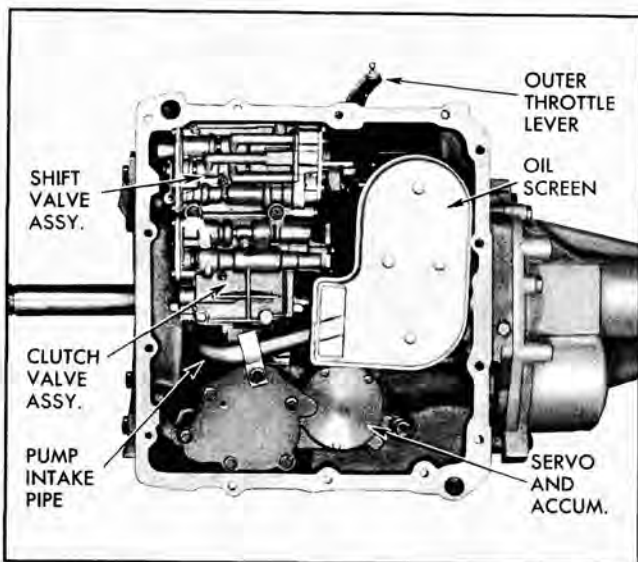


Fig. 53 Bottom View of Transmission with Oil Pan Removed

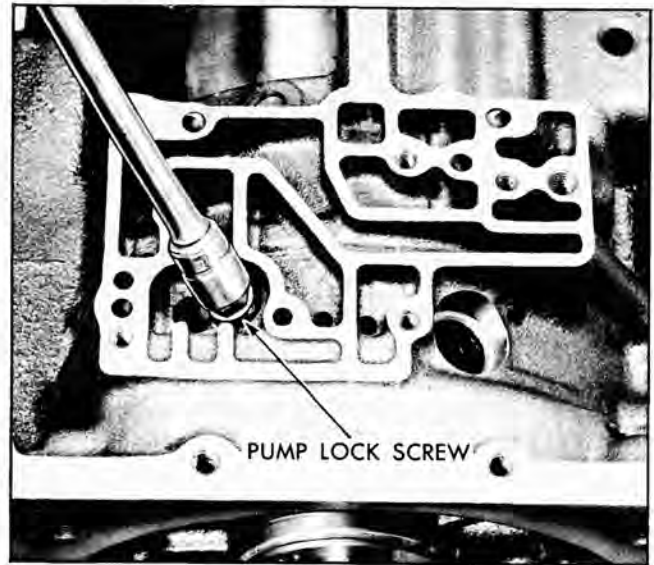


Fig. 54 Removing Front Pump Locking Screw

3. Remove three pump to case support washer head attaching screws (Fig. 55).
 4. Withdraw pump assembly from case (Fig. 55), using pullers J-6125 if necessary. Two of the pump cover to pump body attaching screws must be removed to attach pullers.
 5. Remove small "O" ring from rear clutch apply hole.
 6. Remove overrun clutch release spring (Fig. 56).
- NOTE: The spring may have remained in pump.
7. Remove front sprag inner race if it remained on the intermediate shaft.

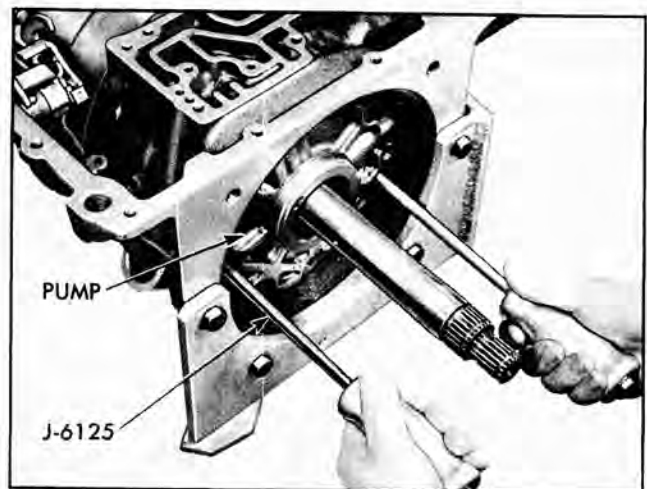


Fig. 55 Removing Pump

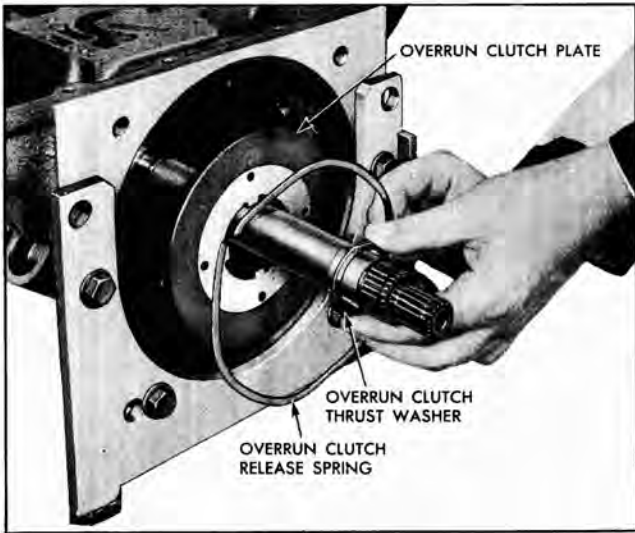


Fig. 56 Overrun Clutch Plate and Release Spring

8. Remove overrun clutch plate and bronze thrust washer (Fig. 56).

9. Back retainer screw out of retainer J-6135 so as not to score shaft, then slide retainer onto intermediate shaft against center case support and lock securely (Fig. 57).

DisassemblyPage 60

InstallationPage 83

**CASE SUPPORT, NEUTRAL CLUTCH,
AND REAR UNIT**

1. Remove speedometer driven gear from rear bearing retainer.

2. If rear oil seal is to be replaced, remove seal

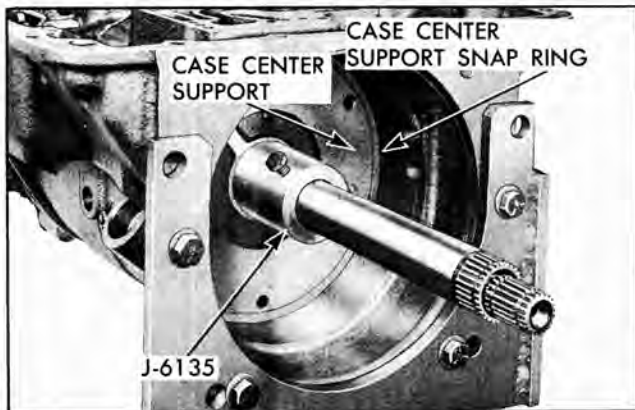


Fig. 57 Rear Unit Clutch Retainer in Position

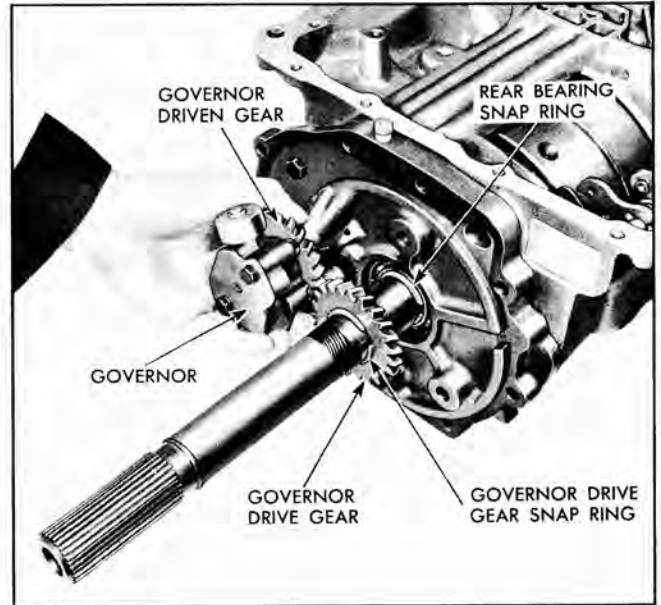


Fig. 58 Removing Governor from Reverse Piston Housing

with screw driver.

3. Remove remaining rear bearing retainer to reverse clutch piston housing screws.

4. Remove rear bearing retainer and gasket and discard gasket. Tap housing toward rear to loosen.

5. Pull governor out of reverse clutch piston housing (Fig. 58).

6. Remove governor drive gear retaining snap ring, governor drive gear, drive gear key and second retaining snap ring. NOTE: Key may fall out when gear is removed.

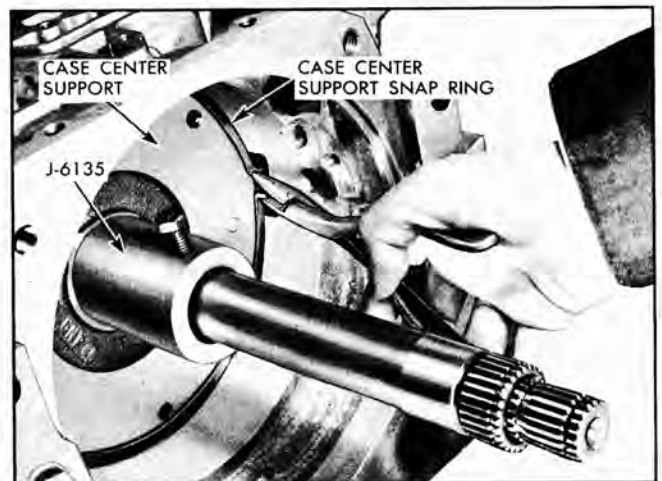


Fig. 59 Removing Case Center Support Snap Ring

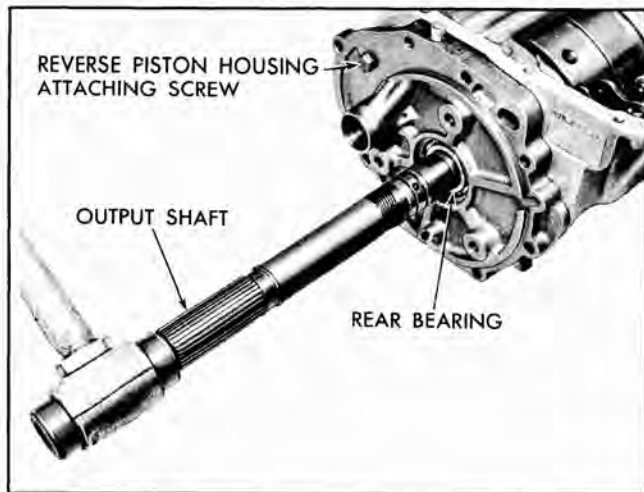


Fig. 60 Freeing Output Shaft

7. Remove rear bearing snap ring from output shaft (Fig. 58).

8. Remove center support to case snap ring (Fig. 59).

9. Tap rear end of output shaft with soft hammer to free shaft from rear bearing inner race (Fig. 60). Make sure parking brake pawl is not engaged.

10. Slide rear unit, neutral clutch, and case center support assembly out front end of case (Fig. 61).

11. Remove reverse clutch release spring (circular with 8 tangs) from output shaft (Fig. 62).

12. Remove reverse planet carrier from output shaft.

13. Rest rear unit, neutral clutch, and case support assembly in holding fixture J-6116, output shaft down (Fig. 63).

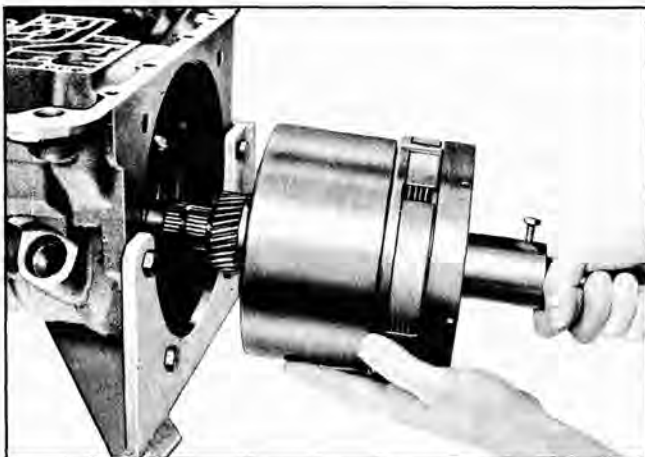


Fig. 61 Removing Rear Unit

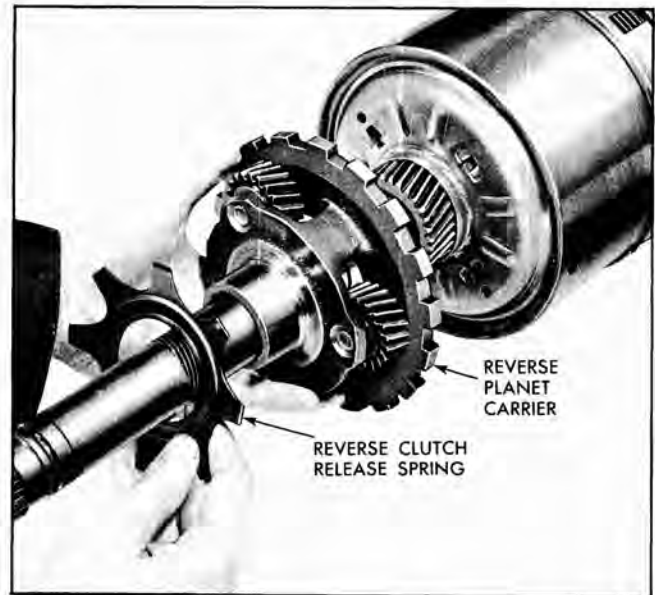


Fig. 62 Removing Reverse Planet Carrier

14. Remove neutral clutch drum locating key from transmission case (Fig. 66).

Disassembly Page 49

Installation Page 81

REVERSE PARTS

1. Rotate transmission to vertical position so reverse piston housing is up.

2. Remove reverse clutch piston housing attaching screw and lift housing from case (Fig. 64).

3. Remove and discard gasket.



Fig. 63 Clutch Units Installed in Holding Fixture

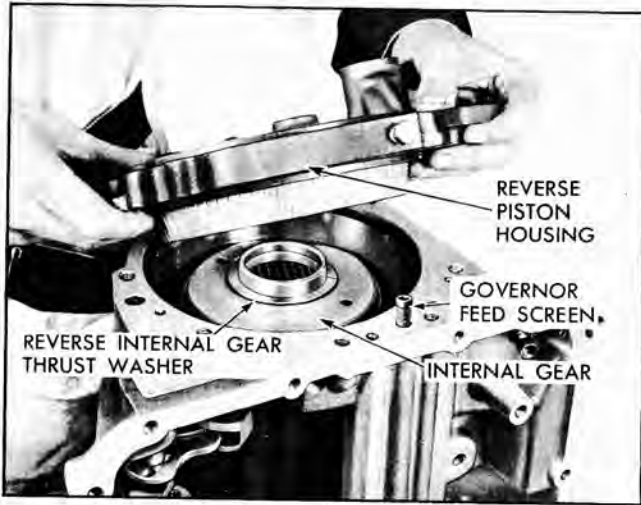


Fig. 64 Lifting Reverse Piston Housing from Case

4. Remove governor feed screen.
5. Remove reverse internal gear thrust washer and internal gear from case (Fig. 64).
6. Remove reverse stationary cone carefully from case, working it out gently with fingers. **CAUTION:** Stationary cone is very brittle, therefore, do not drive it from case with hammer or other tool.

7. Remove reverse stationary cone key. If key sticks, tap it out using $\frac{3}{8}$ " brass rod through key hole in bottom of case.

8. Rotate transmission case to horizontal position.

Installation Page 81

L (LOW) BAND

1. Unhook band end from anchor inside of case (Fig. 65).

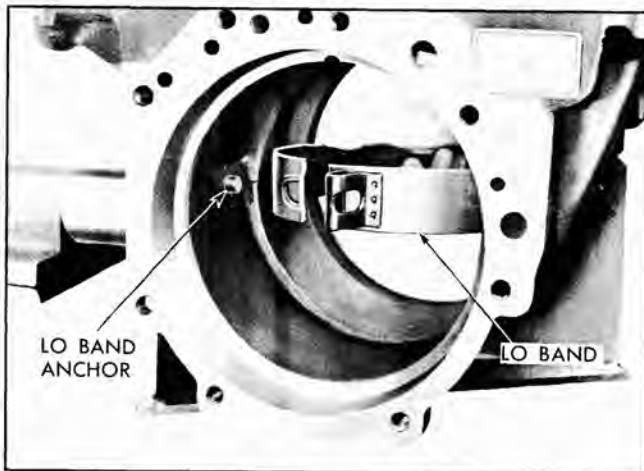


Fig. 65 Removing Lo Band

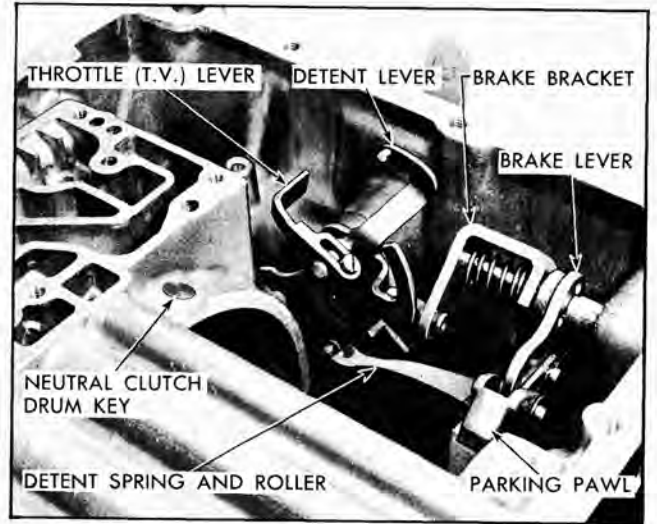


Fig. 66 Levers and Parking Linkage

2. With band unhooked, rotate it to horizontal position in case.
3. Turn band so that ends are facing rear of case (Fig. 65).
4. Pull band out front end of case.

Installation Page 81

INSIDE DETENT AND THROTTLE LEVERS

These parts should not be removed unless they are to be replaced by new parts.

1. Loosen inner T.V. (throttle) lever to T.V. shaft clamp screw (Fig. 66).

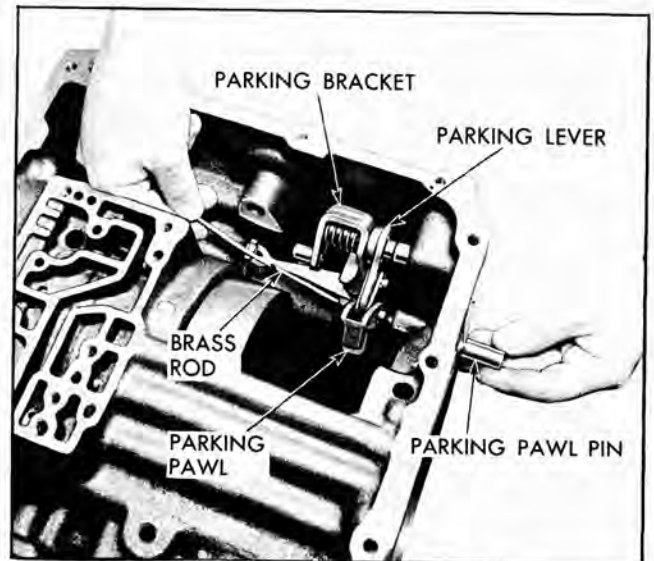


Fig. 67 Removing Parking Pawl

2. Remove inside T.V. lever. Withdraw outer T.V. lever, shaft, and "O" seal ring from case. Discard seal ring.

3. Loosen inside detent lever screw.

4. Withdraw outer shift lever, shaft, washer, and seal ring from case. Discard seal ring. Remove inside detent lever.

PARKING PAWL AND LINKAGE

These parts should not be removed unless they are to be replaced by new parts.

1. Remove parking pawl pin from transmission

case by pushing on inside end of shaft with $\frac{1}{8}$ " brass rod (Fig. 67).

2. Remove parking pawl spacer washer from case.

3. Unhook parking bracket spring from parking lever.

4. Remove parking bracket and spring from parking brake pin.

5. Rotate parking lever and pawl and remove from parking brake pin.

DETENT SPRING AND ROLLER

1. Remove detent spring attaching bolt and detent spring assembly (Fig. 67).

DISASSEMBLY, INSPECTION AND ASSEMBLY OF INDIVIDUAL UNITS

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

| SUBJECT | PAGE | SUBJECT | PAGE |
|--|------|---------------------------------|------|
| Inspection of Case, Lo Band, Parking Brake | | Governor | 69 |
| Linkage, Throttle and Detent Levers | 49 | Servo and Accumulator | 70 |
| Case Support, Neutral Clutch and Rear Unit | 49 | Control Valve Assembly | 73 |
| Pump and Overrun Clutch | 60 | Flywheel Housing Oil Seal | 77 |
| Front Unit Coupling | 65 | Pressure Regulator | 77 |
| Reverse Clutch Piston Housing | 67 | Driven Torus Member Check Valve | 78 |

Clean all parts thoroughly. Make thorough inspection of all parts to determine which should be replaced. It is very important to distinguish between parts that are simply "worn in" and those worn to the extent that they affect the operation of the unit. Spring and thrust washer specifications are given on pages 101 and 102. Refer to these specifications when inspecting parts and replace only those that are worn, broken or damaged.

INSPECTION OF CASE, LO BAND, PARKING BRAKE LINKAGE, THROTTLE AND DETENT LEVERS

1. After the case has been thoroughly cleaned, blow out all passages in case (Fig. 69) with compressed air using blow gun J-8124-01.
2. Check for leaks or interconnections between passages using air pressure or smoke.
3. Carefully inspect case for cracks.
4. Make sure low band anchor is not worn excessively or is loose in case.
5. Inspect low band for burned, worn, cracked or loose lining. Band must not be distorted and band ends must be securely spot welded to band.
6. Inspect parking brake pawl to see that it is not worn or loose on its pivot shaft.
7. Inspect parking brake bracket for excessive looseness on its shaft.
8. Check connecting link between pawl and bracket to see that it is not worn excessively and does not bind. If difficulty has been reported in engaging or disengaging P (park) position, disassemble link and check for bent pins.
9. Inspect fit of throttle valve inner lever and shaft

in hub of detent control inner lever. If shaft binds in hub, is excessively worn, or if oil seal is missing or damaged, replace defective parts.

10. Inspect oil cooler pipes and sleeves and rubber seals for damage which might cause leakage. Seals should be replaced if they have been damaged.

CASE SUPPORT, NEUTRAL CLUTCH AND REAR UNIT

DISASSEMBLY

1. Remove rear unit clutch retainer J-6135. **CAUTION:** Back off screw far enough to prevent damage to machined surface of intermediate shaft.
2. Remove hook-type oil ring from intermediate shaft (Fig. 70) by pushing one end toward center of shaft and other away to unhook.
3. Remove case center support and neutral clutch piston assembly from intermediate shaft (Fig. 71).
4. Remove two oil rings from case support hub and remove neutral clutch piston. Turn case support over and tap on bench to remove piston. Remove seals from piston and hub of case center support.
5. Remove neutral clutch drum assembly which contains five composition clutch plates, four steel clutch plates and five release springs (Fig. 71).
6. Remove large snap ring from rear drum with screwdriver (not the spiral ring on the sprag).
7. Lift rear clutch cylinder and sprag assembly over intermediate shaft (Fig. 72).
8. Remove intermediate shaft and clutch hub, including clutch hub thrust washer and backing washer from rear unit drum (Fig. 73). (The backing washer may have remained with the hub.) **NOTE:** The rear

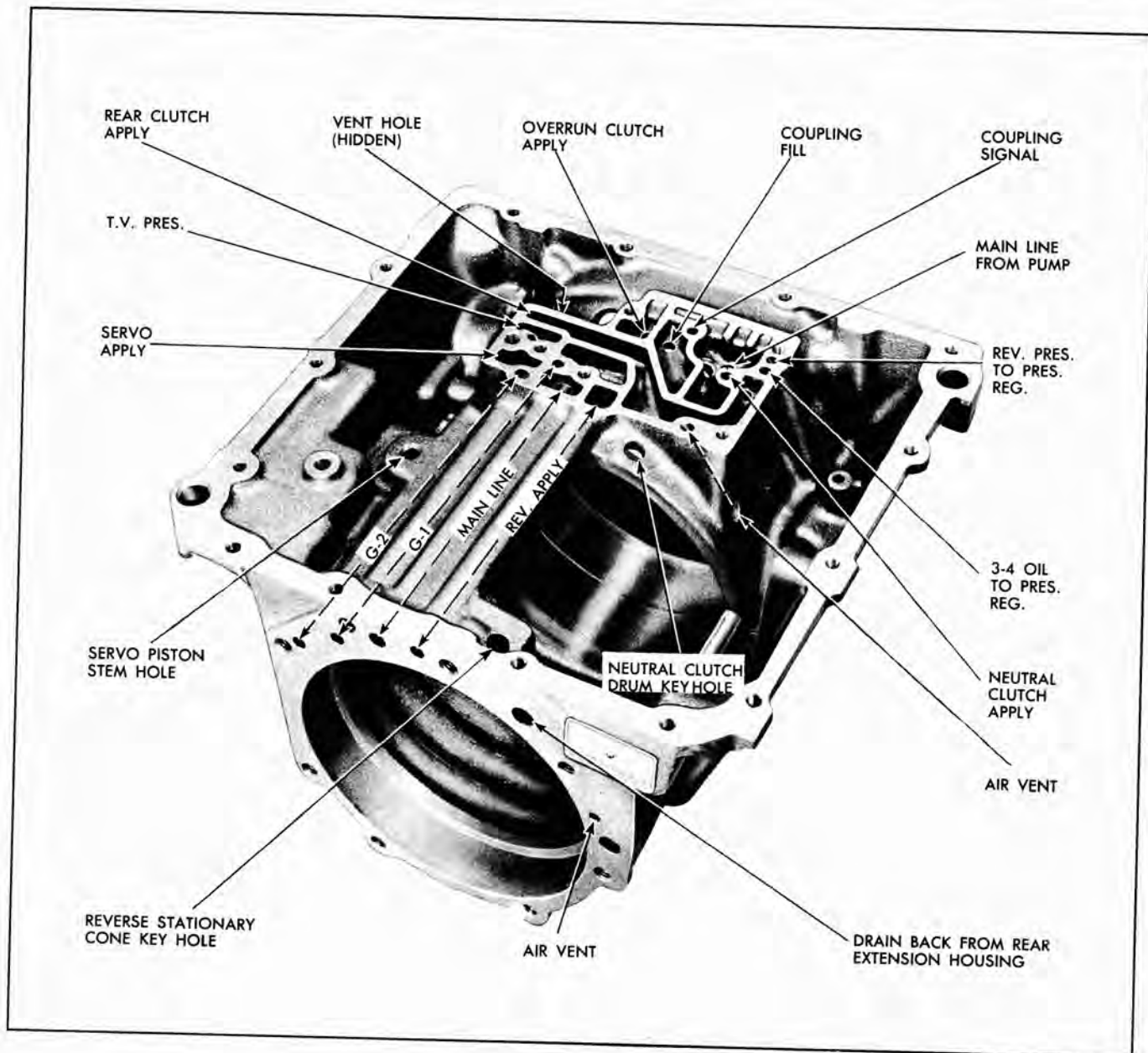


Fig. 68 Passages In Case

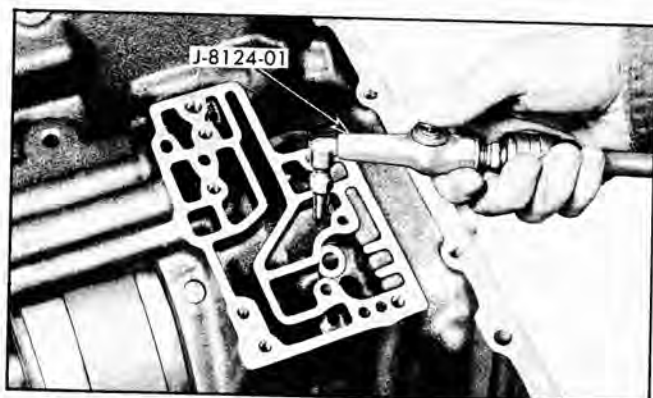


Fig. 69 Cleaning Passages In Case

clutch hub may be removed from the intermediate shaft, if replacement of shaft or hub is necessary, by removing snap ring retaining hub on shaft.

9. Remove clutch hub front thrust washer from clutch hub.

10. Remove main shaft and rear unit sun gear assembly from rear unit. Remove clutch hub thrust washer from sun gear. **NOTE:** The rear unit sun gear may be removed from main shaft if replacement of shaft or sun gear is necessary. Check for drill mark on rear face of sun gear since it must be assembled on main shaft with drill mark to rear.

11. Remove seven steel clutch plates and seven composition clutch plates.

12. Remove needle bearing and retainer from counterbore of output shaft.

13. Remove rear unit drum and output shaft assembly from holding fixture J-6116 and rest on bench with output shaft end up.

14. Remove large snap ring holding reverse drive flange in rear unit drum.

15. Lift output shaft and reverse drive flange assembly out of rear drum (Fig. 74).

16. If replacement of rear unit internal gear or clutch backing plate is necessary, remove internal gear and plate together from rear unit drum by tapping backing plate with soft hammer. **NOTE:** Mark internal gear so that upon reassembly balance will be maintained, if it is to be reinstalled, to ensure its reassembly in original position.

17. Remove snap ring from output shaft.

18. Remove reverse drive flange and sun gear assembly from output shaft.

19. Remove selective washer from reverse drive flange or output shaft.

20. Remove spiral snap ring from rear unit sprag outer race, using small needle nose pliers or small screwdriver to start if necessary (Fig. 75).

21. Remove outer race, sprag, and retainer by rotating counterclockwise and pulling upward (Fig. 76).



Fig. 70 Removing Oil Ring

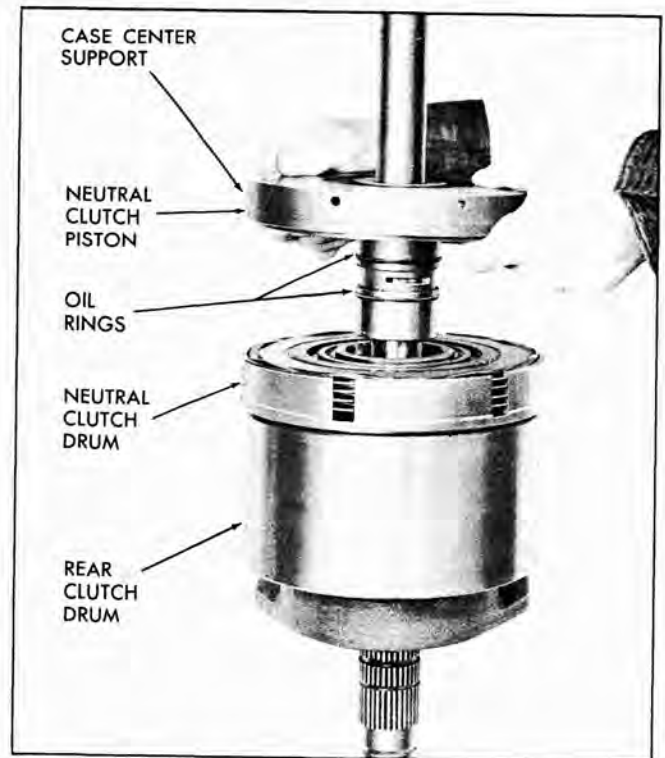


Fig. 71 Removing Case Support and Neutral Clutch Piston

22. Remove rear unit sprag retainer and sprag from outer race. **NOTE:** Do not disassemble sprag.

23. Disassemble rear unit clutch piston assembly as follows:

a. Place stud J-6129 on bench.

b. Lower cylinder and piston assembly over J-6129, spring end up. Set spring compressor J-4670 on top



Fig. 72 Removing Rear Clutch Cylinder and Sprag Assembly

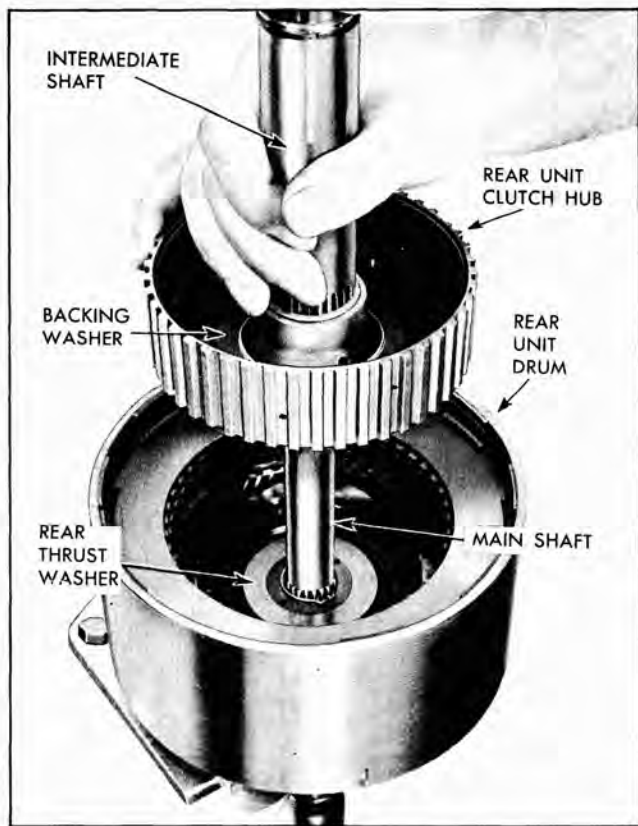


Fig. 73 Removing Clutch Hub

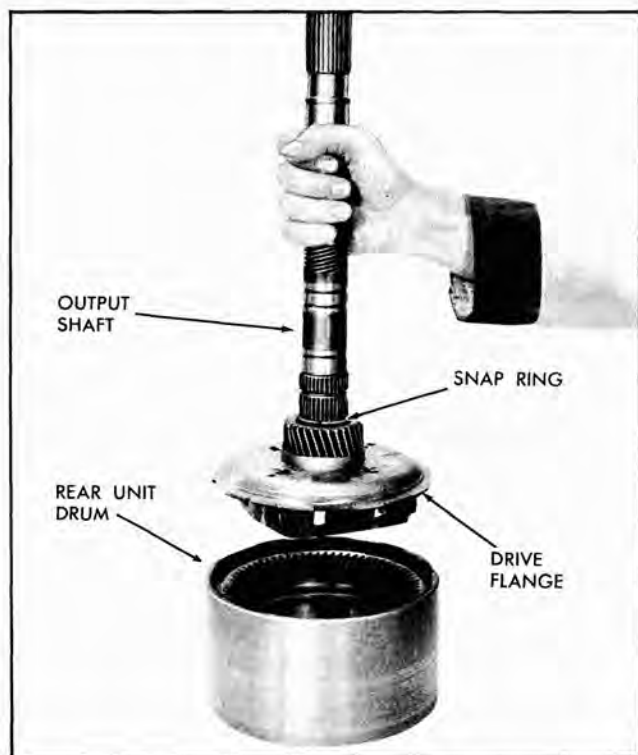


Fig. 74 Lifting Output Shaft and Drive Flange from Rear Unit Drum

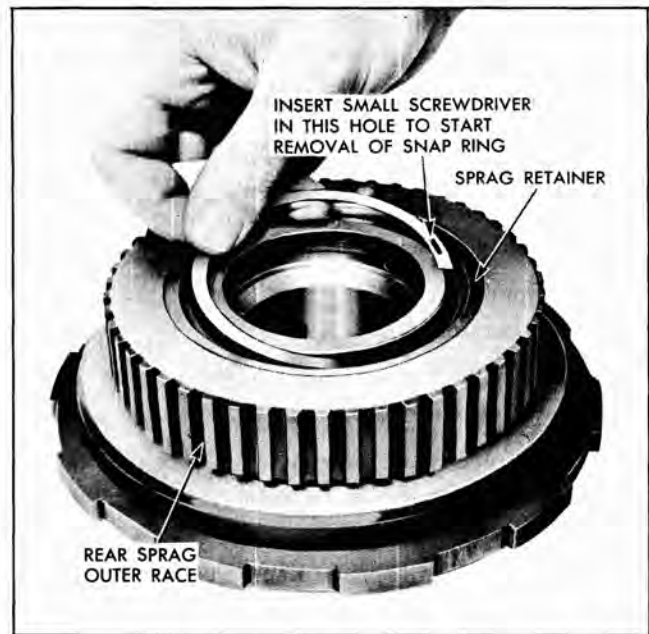


Fig. 75 Removing Retainer Snap Ring from Rear Unit Sprag Outer Race

of spring retainer and start nut on stud J-6129 (Fig. 77). NOTE: If compressor J-4670 has no hole in middle, drill a $\frac{7}{16}$ " hole so that stud J-6129 can be inserted through it.

c. Turn nut down on J-6129 to compress clutch springs until snap ring is free.

d. Remove snap ring (Fig. 77).

e. Remove compressor and release spring retainer from rear clutch springs.

f. Remove eight clutch release springs.

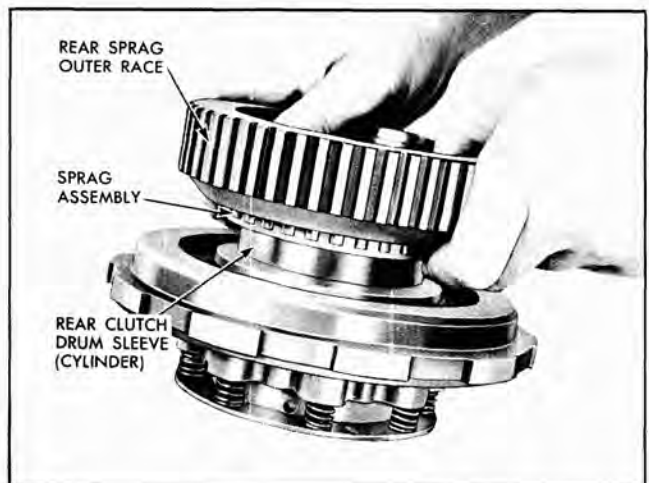


Fig. 76 Removing Rear Unit Sprag Assembly

g. Remove rear clutch piston from cylinder. Rap piston end of cylinder on wood block if necessary.

h. Remove seals from piston and hub.

INSPECTION

1. Inspect case center support for burrs, damaged oil seal grooves, worn or damaged bushing or damaged threads (Fig. 78). Using tag wire or air pressure check to ensure passages in support are open and not interconnected.

2. Inspect neutral clutch piston for scoring, burrs, or damaged oil seal groove.

3. Inspect five neutral clutch drive plates for damaged composition surfaces or worn teeth. Plates should be flat. If flakes of facing material can be removed by scratching surface with thumb nail, plates should be replaced. Discoloration does not indicate failure. Inspect release springs; eight waves should be evenly spaced and approximately $\frac{1}{8}$ " deep.

4. Inspect four steel neutral clutch driven plates for scored surfaces or damaged lugs. Six equally spaced waves should be approximately .010" deep.

5. Inspect neutral clutch drum for scored or damaged surfaces.

6. Inspect spiral snap ring for distortion or damage.

7. Inspect rear unit sprag retainer for scoring or damaged surfaces.

8. Inspect rear unit sprag for damaged shoulder, broken spring, or scored sprags.

9. Inspect rear unit sprag outer race for damaged

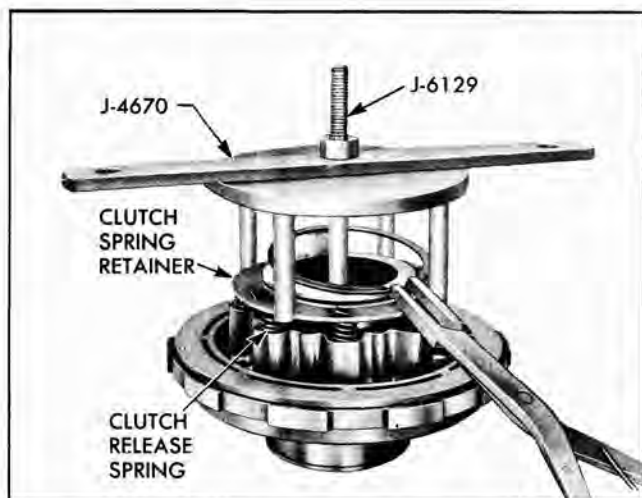


Fig. 77 Removing Rear Unit Clutch Spring Snap Ring

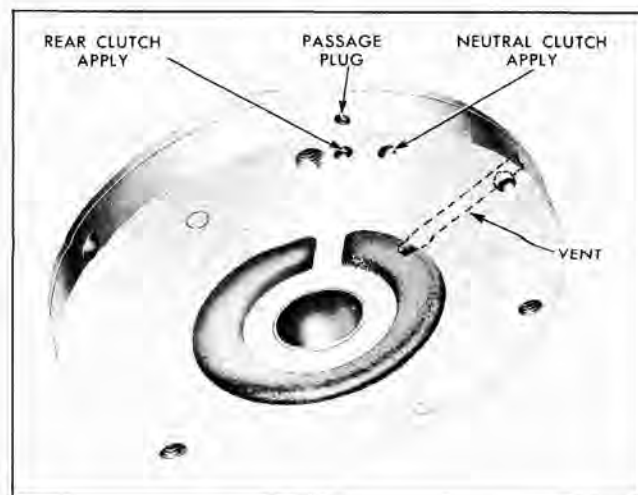


Fig. 78 Case Center Support Passages

splines or scored sprag race.

10. Inspect rear clutch cylinder and bushing assembly for scoring, burrs or damaged lugs. Snap ring and oil seal grooves must be clean and smooth. Inspect drilled passage in cylinder with tag wire and compressed air to see that they are unobstructed (Fig. 79).

11. Inspect rear unit clutch pistons for scores, burrs or damaged seal groove.

12. Inspect eight rear clutch release springs for distortion or collapsed coils. See Page 101 for free length. NOTE: Slight wear "bright spots" on side of release springs, indicating slight contact with piston assembly, is permissible.

13. Inspect rear clutch release spring retainer for cracks or damage. Six raised spots on retainer keep snap ring in place.

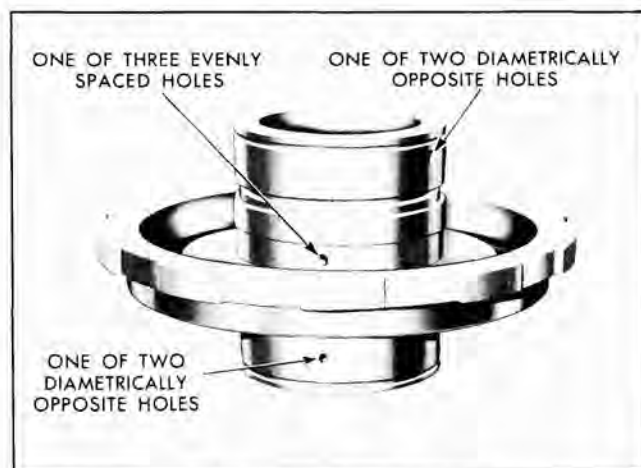


Fig. 79 Passages in Rear Clutch Drum Sleeve (Cylinder)

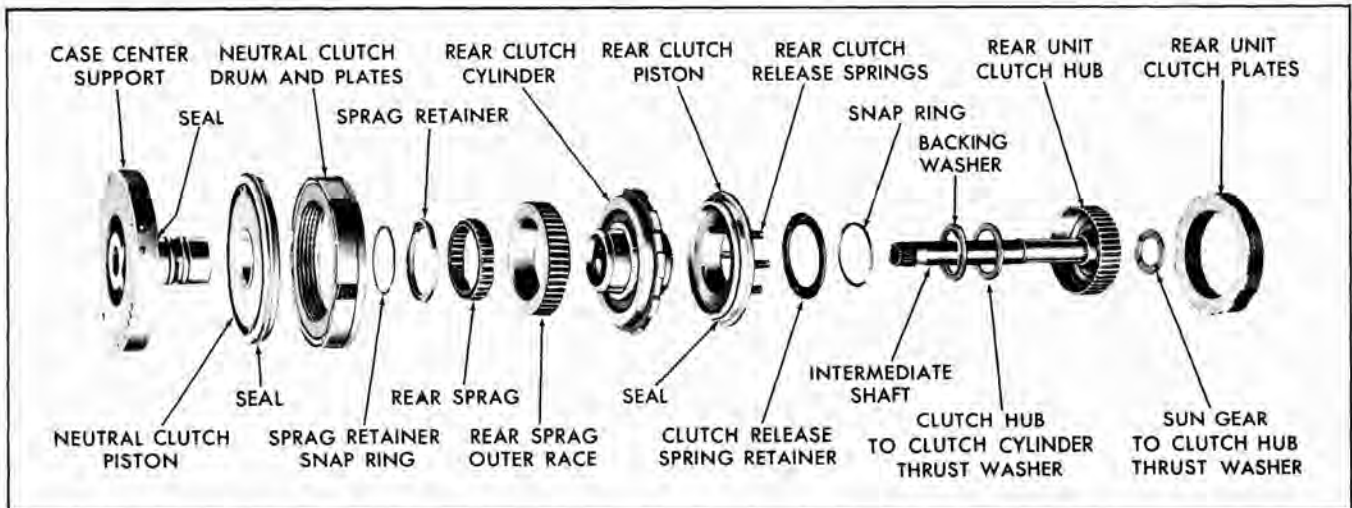


Fig. 80 Case Center Support, Neutral Clutch and Rear Unit Clutch Parts—Exploded

14. Inspect rear unit clutch cylinder to clutch hub thrust washer and backing washer.

15. Inspect intermediate shaft and rear unit clutch hub. Clutch hub and shaft can be separated if either part needs replacement.

16. Inspect rear unit sun gear to rear unit clutch hub bronze thrust washer.

17. Inspect seven rear unit composition faced clutch drive plates for damaged surfaces. Plates should be flat. If flakes of facing material can be removed by scratching surface with thumb nail, plates should be replaced. Discoloration is not an indication of failure.

18. Inspect seven rear unit steel driven plates for scored surfaces or damaged lugs. Driven plates must have six equally spaced waves (approximately .010" deep).

19. Inspect mainshaft and rear unit sun gear for

damaged splines, teeth or bearing surfaces (Fig. 81). Gear and shaft can be separated if replacement is necessary. If shaft only is to be replaced, put old gear on new shaft with drill mark toward rear.

20. Measure end play of rear unit sun gear on mainshaft and determine correct selective washer to use in rear unit as follows:

a. Clamp sun gear and mainshaft assembly in holding fixture J-6116 using "C" clamp and dial indicator J-8001 (Fig. 82). Gear must be firmly clamped on both sides so it cannot give.

b. Set dial indicator stem to contact end of mainshaft.

c. Move mainshaft straight up and down to measure end play and record end play.

d. Subtract this end play from the mainshaft end play recorded before the transmission was disas-

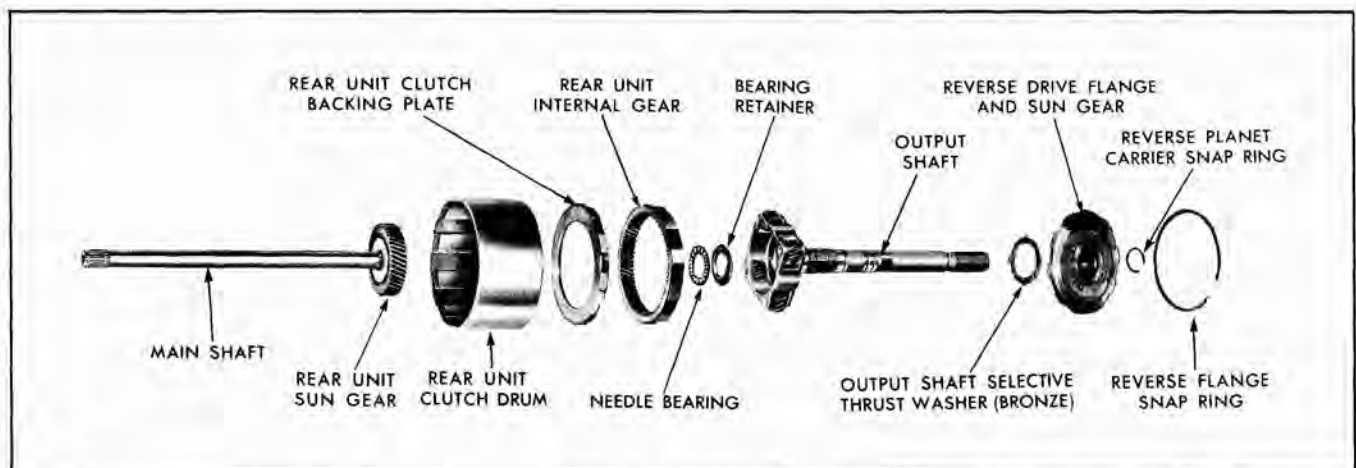


Fig. 81 Rear Unit Drum, Mainshaft and Output Shaft Parts—Exploded

sembled. The difference will be the actual end play of the rear unit and should be .004"-.013".

Example:

| | |
|-----------------------------|-------|
| Mainshaft end play | .021" |
| Rear unit sun gear end play | .012" |
| Rear unit end play | .009" |

If rear unit end play is outside the limits of .004"-.013", select the reverse drive flange to rear unit planet carrier thrust washer which will give the proper end play.

e. Remove sun gear and main shaft from holding fixture J-6119.

21. Inspect rear unit drum for scoring or cracks.
22. Inspect rear unit clutch backing plate for scoring.

23. Inspect rear unit internal gear for tooth damage. **NOTE:** Internal gear and clutch backing plate can be separated from drum if replacement is necessary. If drum or backing plate are replaced, the gear should be reinstalled with the same side toward the

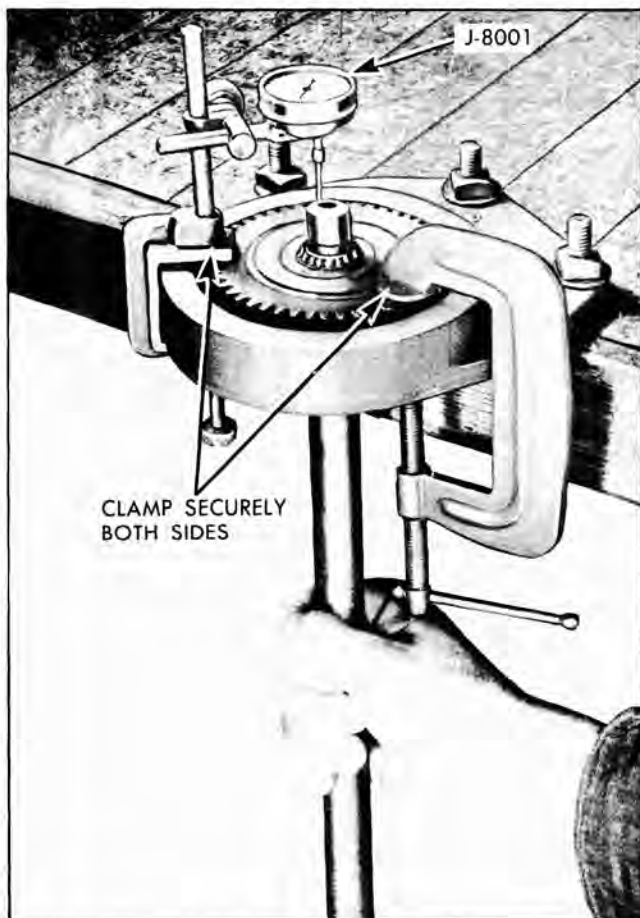


Fig. 82 Measuring End Play of Rear Unit Sun Gear on Mainshaft

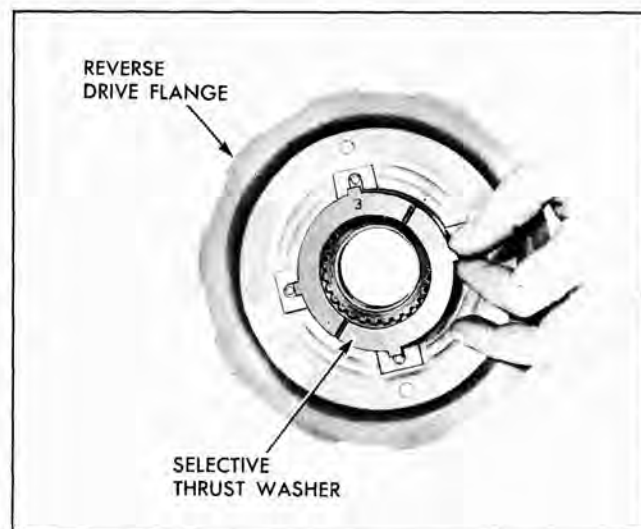


Fig. 83 Locating Selective Washer in Reverse Drive Flange

front. (The edges of the drive lugs of internal gear chamfered to facilitate assembly.)

24. Inspect output shaft to rear unit sun gear bronze thrust washer.

25. Inspect output shaft for damaged pinions, splines, bearing surfaces or speedometer gear teeth. These pinions are "phased" to produce a quieter transmission so each pinion will have three teeth ground differently than the rest.

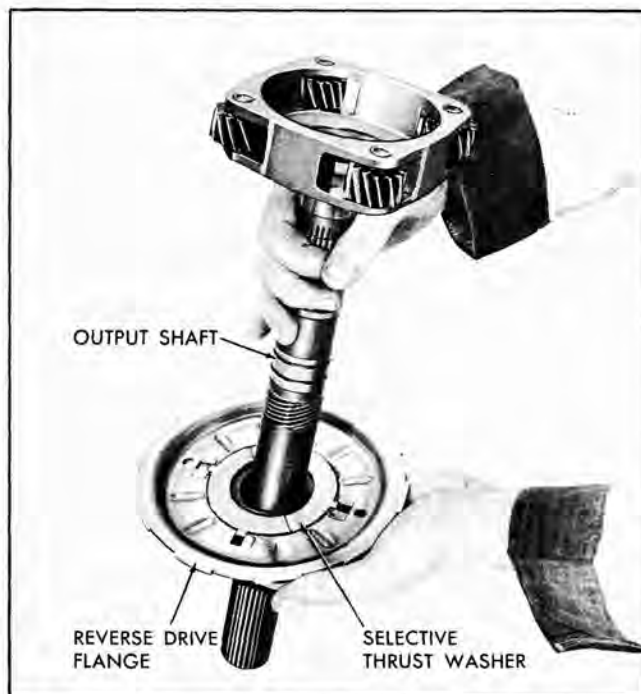


Fig. 84 Assembling Reverse Drive Flange to Output Shaft

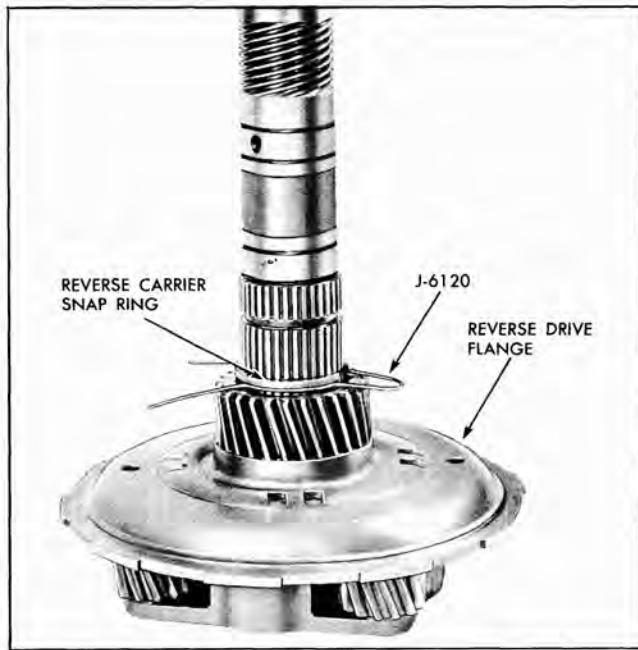


Fig. 85 Reverse Drive Flange Retainer Tool in Position

26. Inspect reverse drive flange and sun gear assembly. **NOTE:** Reverse drive flange and sun gear are serviced as an assembly and should not be separated.

27. Inspect rear unit selective thrust washer for wear or damage.

ASSEMBLY

1. Hold reverse drive flange and sun gear in left hand, drive flange up, and install proper selective thrust washer (as determined by rear unit end play check, page 54) in recess of drive flange. Use petro-

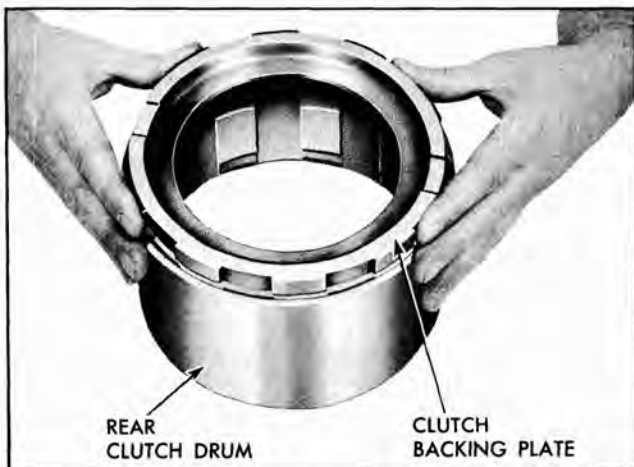


Fig. 86 Installing Rear Unit Clutch Backing Plate

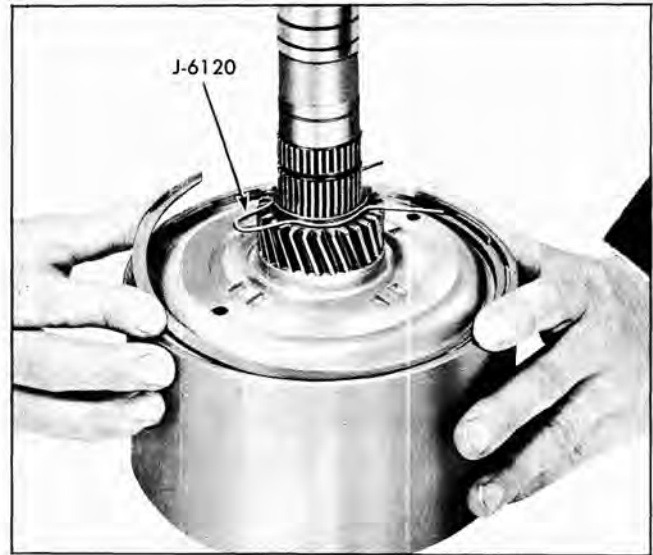


Fig. 87 Installing Output Shaft and Reverse Drive Flange Snap Ring

latum to hold washer in place and index lugs in flange (Fig. 83).

2. Still holding reverse drive flange and sun gear in left hand, insert output shaft with right hand through drive flange and sun gear until carrier bottoms on selective thrust washer (Fig. 84).

3. Holding drive flange and sun gear tightly against carrier to keep selective washer from moving, set output shaft and carrier on table on carrier end.

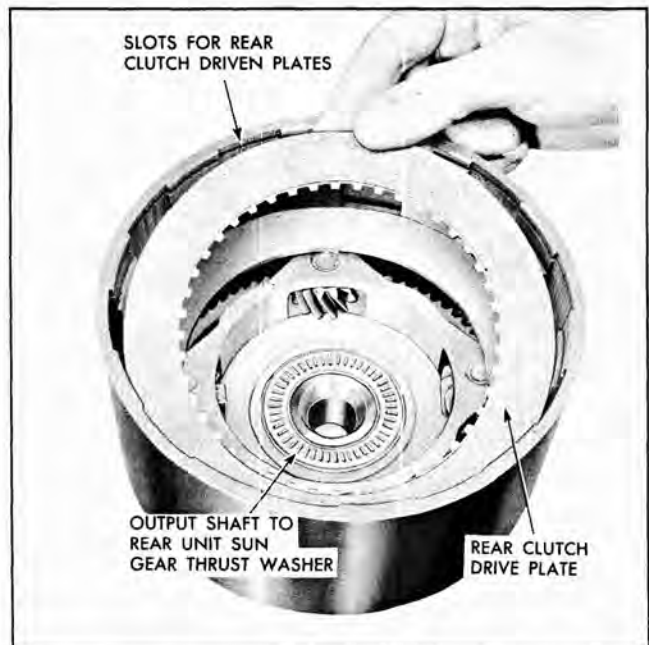


Fig. 88 Installing Rear Unit Clutch Plates

4. Install reverse planet carrier front snap ring on output shaft (Fig. 85).

5. Insert reverse drive flange retainer J-6120 between snap ring and flange snug against rear unit carrier to prevent selective washer from dropping out of position (Fig. 85). **NOTE:** When the selective washer used between the reverse drive flange and rear unit planet carrier is at or near the upper limit of thickness, retainer tool J-6120 cannot be inserted between snap ring and flange. In this case, however, it is not necessary to use the retainer since there is not enough clearance to allow the thrust washer to drop out of place.

6. Set rear unit drum on bench with long undercuts on lugs up (or with internal gear up if it was not removed) (Fig. 86).

7. Install clutch backing plate, flat surface down (Fig. 86). Align lugs of plate with slots of rear drum and tap plate, using soft hammer, into place against spline shoulder in drum.

8. Tap rear unit internal gear into place against clutch backing plate with soft hammer. **NOTE:** If internal gear previously removed is being installed, note mark made on gear at time of disassembly and align accordingly.

9. Install output shaft and reverse drive flange assembly in rear unit drum and secure with large snap ring (Fig. 87).

10. Rest rear unit assembly on holding fixture J-6116 with output shaft down. As unit is lowered, lift up on drum and remove retainer J-6120. **CAU-**

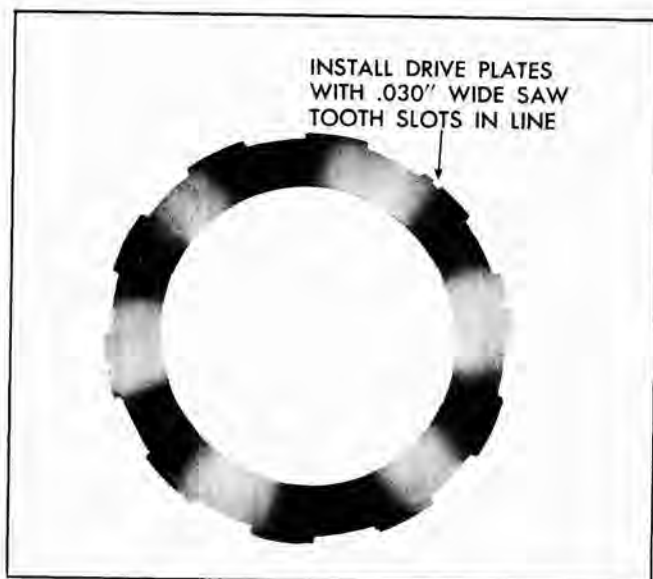


Fig. 89 Notches in Rear Unit Clutch Driven Plate

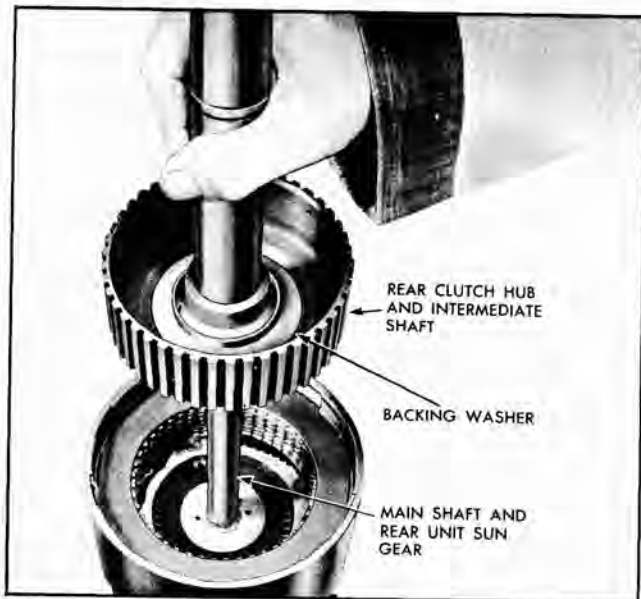


Fig. 90 Installing Intermediate Shaft and Clutch Hub into Plates

TION: Do not lift on output shaft after J-6120 is removed.

11. Position needle bearing and retainer in counterbore of output shaft and retain with petrolatum (Fig. 88).

12. Apply Hydra-Matic oil to faces of seven drive and seven driven plates, and alternately install them in rear unit drum. Start with drive (compositor.) plate and finish with driven (steel) plate. Assemble driven plates with lugs registering in rear unit drum slots (Fig. 88) and so .03" wide saw slots in driven plate lugs are all in line (Fig. 89). **NOTE:** Indexing the saw slots nests the plates together so that the

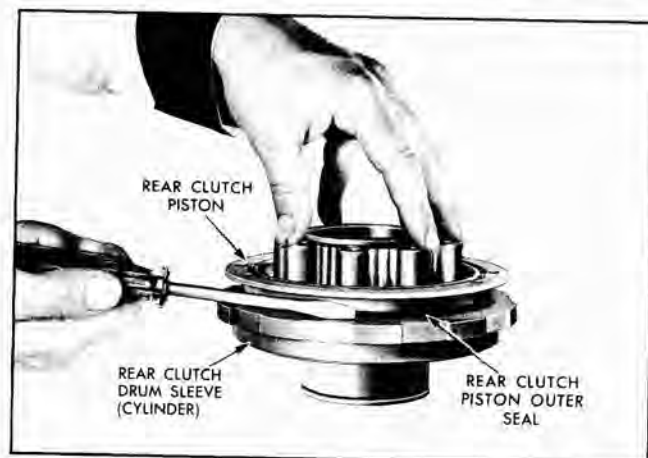


Fig. 91 Installing Rear Clutch Piston into Rear Clutch Drum Sleeve (Cylinder)

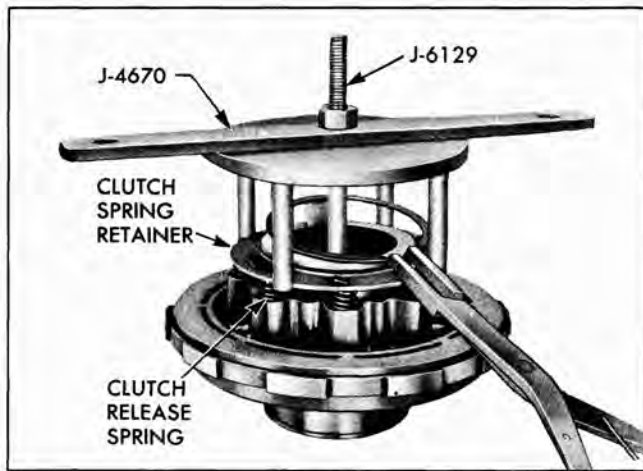


Fig. 92 Installing Rear Clutch Release Spring Retainer Snap Ring

waves are all in the same direction (no gaps between plates).

13. Install mainshaft and sun gear assembly into output shaft in rear unit, meshing sun gear with planet pinions of output shaft.

14. Assemble rear unit clutch hub to rear end of intermediate shaft if it was removed. Open side of hub goes toward front end of shaft on end with longest spline and long machined surface.

15. Apply petrolatum to two bronze thrust washers and backing washer and affix small diameter washer to rear side and large washer to front side of clutch

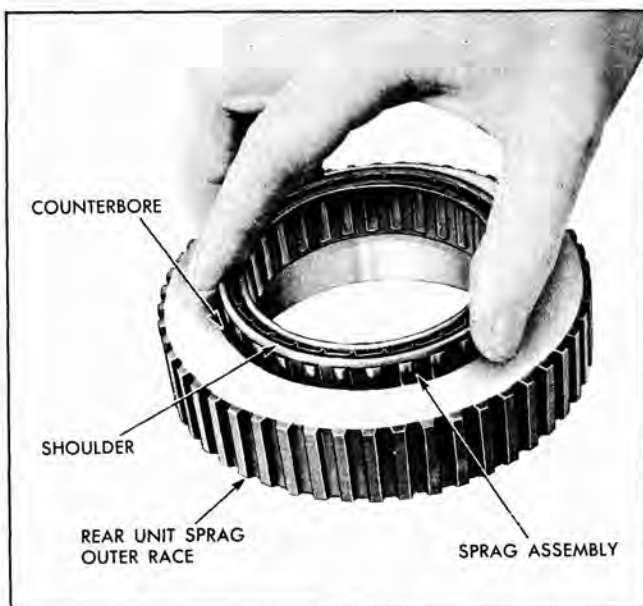


Fig. 93 Installing Rear Unit Sprag in Outer Race

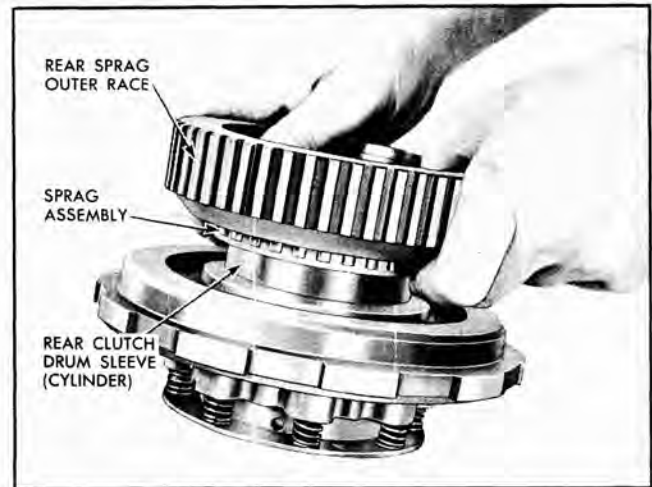


Fig. 94 Installing Sprag and Outer Race on Inner Race

hub (Fig. 90). Place backing washer, flange up, on the large thrust washer.

16. Lower intermediate shaft and clutch hub with thrust washers into rear drum (Fig. 90). NOTE: Pick up clutch drive plates by rotating intermediate shaft. Do not drive or force clutch hub into mesh with drive plates.

17. Install rear clutch piston in rear clutch cylinder as follows:

a. Install new inner seal on hub of clutch cylinder with lip down.



Fig. 95 Installing Rear Unit Sprag Retainer Snap Ring

b. Install new outer seal on piston with lip facing away from spring bore side (Fig. 91).

c. Start piston into cylinder using flat edge of screwdriver to compress seal (Fig. 91); then press piston into place.

d. Insert eight clutch release springs in bores of piston.

e. Place spring retainer on springs with tangs facing up. Compress springs using tools J-4670 and J-6129 (Fig. 92).

f. Install release spring retainer snap ring (Fig. 92). Remove compressor tools.

18. Install rear sprag in outer race with shoulder side of sprag on counterbored side of outer race (Fig. 93).

NOTE: The sprag must be installed in this manner or it will operate backward.

19. Lower sprag and outer race on rear unit inner race (rear clutch cylinder). **NOTE:** Push sprag part way down through outer race then rotate sprag counterclockwise to assist assembly (Fig. 94).

20. Install sprag retainer in rear unit outer race with large O.D. up. Push retainer down to expose snap ring groove.

21. Install spiral snap ring on rear sprag inner race (Fig. 95).

22. Lower rear unit cylinder and sprag assembly over end of intermediate shaft and into rear clutch drum, sprag side up.

23. Secure cylinder and sprag assembly to rear unit

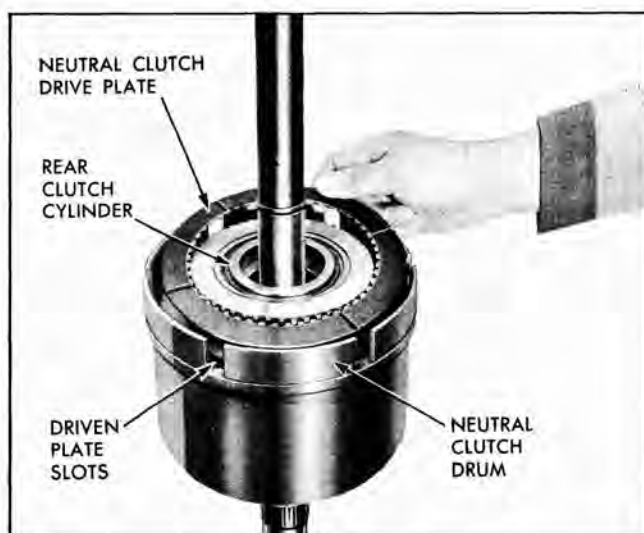


Fig. 96 Installing Neutral Clutch Plates

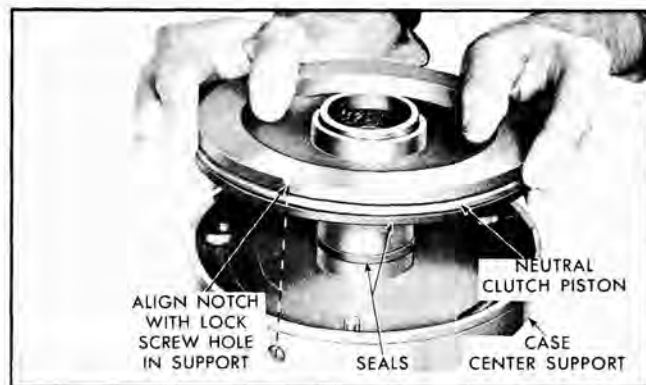


Fig. 97 Installing Neutral Clutch Piston

drum with large snap ring.

24. Install neutral clutch drum on rear unit with driven clutch plate lug slots up (Fig. 96).

25. Apply Hydra-Matic oil to five clutch drive plates (composition) and four driven plates (steel) (Fig. 96).

26. Install plates alternately using a release spring between steel plates. Start with composition plate and release spring then steel plate, etc. and end with composition plate and spring.

27. Install seal on hub of case center support with lip facing toward bottom of piston cavity.

28. Install seal on neutral clutch piston with lip facing side with dowel holes.

29. Pilot neutral clutch piston into case center support with notch in edge of piston aligned with lock screw hole in side of case center support (Fig. 97).

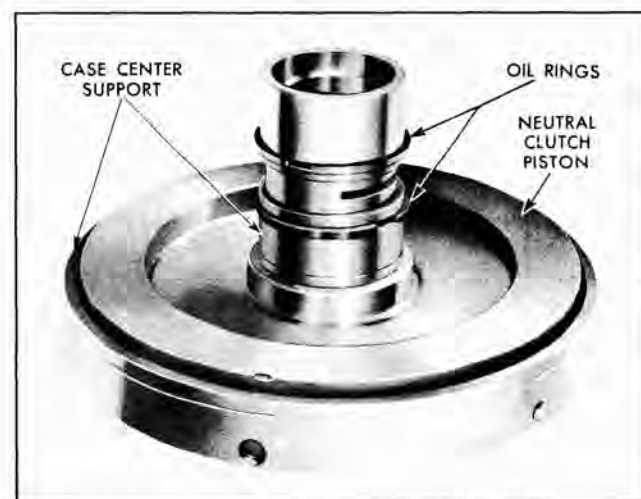


Fig. 98 Case Support Oil Rings in Place



Fig. 99 Installing Hook Type Oil Ring on Intermediate Shaft

This alignment assures that dowels will enter dowel holes. Start seal into case center support by compressing with fingers.

30. Install two oil rings in ring grooves of case support hub (Fig. 98).

31. Center rings on hub and carefully lower case support assembly into rear clutch cylinder of rear unit so as not to damage bushing or break oil rings. If properly centered, oil rings on hub of case support will be compressed by taper in hub of rear clutch cylinder.

32. Install hook type oil seal ring on intermediate shaft (Fig. 99).

33. Slide clutch retainer J-6135 over end of intermediate shaft screw end up, apply pressure to com-

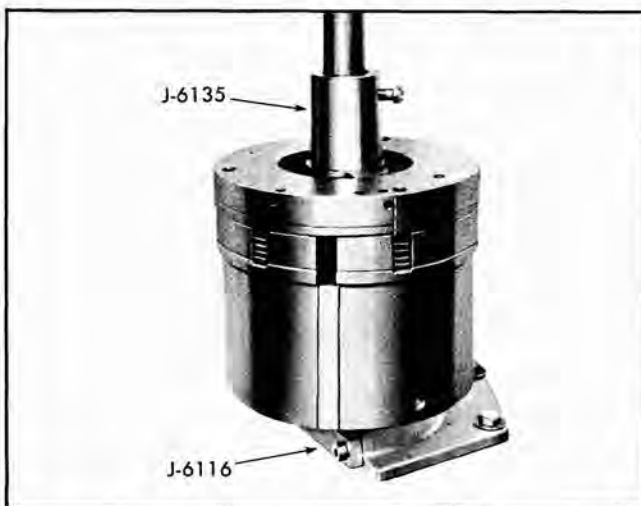


Fig. 100 Installing Rear Unit Clutch Retainer

press clutch release springs, and tighten lock bolt (Fig. 100).

34. Rotate the case center support so that the right hand edge of cup plug in the center support is aligned with left edge of the first neutral clutch plate slot to the right of the neutral clutch drum key slot as illustrated (Fig. 100). **CAUTION:** This alignment must be accurate so as to ensure alignment of oil passage between pump and case when pump is installed.

35. Mark the rear drum to indicate the alignment of the neutral clutch drum key slot (Fig. 100).

Installation Page 81

PUMP AND OVERRUN CLUTCH

DISASSEMBLY

1. Remove four pump cover to body attaching screws.

2. Lift pump cover from body. **CAUTION:** If cover sticks or hangs up on dowels, tap with soft hammer to remove. Do not pry between cover and body.

3. Using needle nose pliers, remove pin which holds torus feed valve retainer (place finger against retainer to prevent it from flying out). Remove retainer, spring and torus feed valve (Fig. 101). **NOTE:** If valve tends to stick, it may be removed after slide is removed.

4. Remove cooler check valve pin with needle nose pliers (while holding spring), and remove spring and ball (Fig. 102).

5. Remove pump rotor and top vane ring (vane

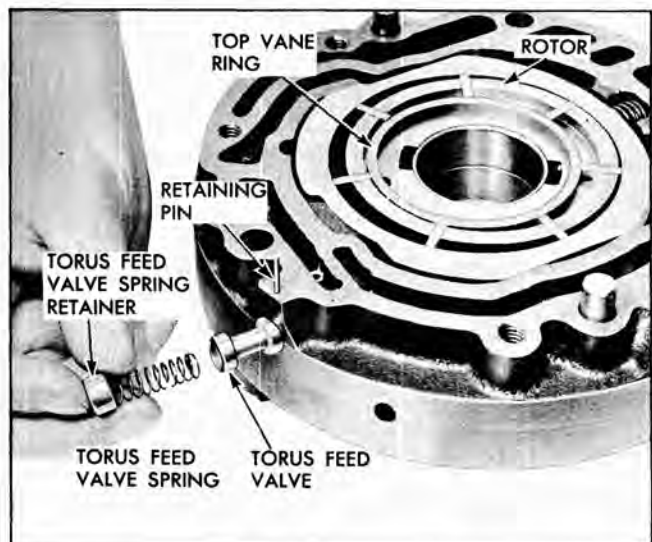


Fig. 101 Removing Torus Feed Valve

ring may have adhered to pump cover when cover was removed and vanes may stay with rotor).

6. Remove seven vanes.
7. Remove bottom vane ring.
8. Push slide toward priming springs, then lift it out of body at opposite end (Fig. 103).
9. Remove inner and outer pump priming springs.
10. Turn pump over and remove sprag inner race, if it was not previously removed, and spiral retaining ring (front sprag to pump) using small screwdriver or needle nose pliers (Fig. 104).
11. Remove sprag assembly from pump. Do not disassemble sprag. If it is damaged a new one should be used. **NOTE:** Do not remove outer race.
12. Turn piston (rear) side of pump down and gently tap outer periphery of piston side with soft hammer to remove overrun clutch piston from its bore. Remove seals from piston and hub in pump.

INSPECTION

1. Inspect all passages in pump body and cover for dirt or restrictions using tag wire and compressed air (Fig. 106-110).
2. Check fit of slide in pump body to make certain it slides freely. Examine slide for excessive wear or scoring.
3. Observe each pump vane. Pump vanes will normally have a polished surface on the side bearing against the slide and at the points where they contact the vane rings. If any wear is apparent at these points, pump should be replaced.

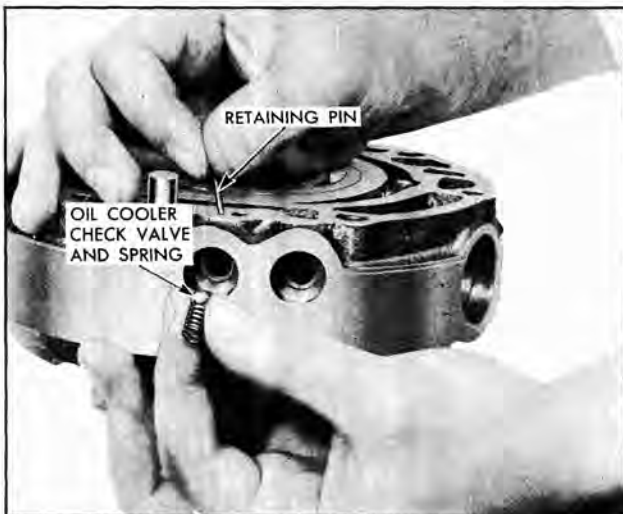


Fig. 102 Removing Oil Cooler Check Valve

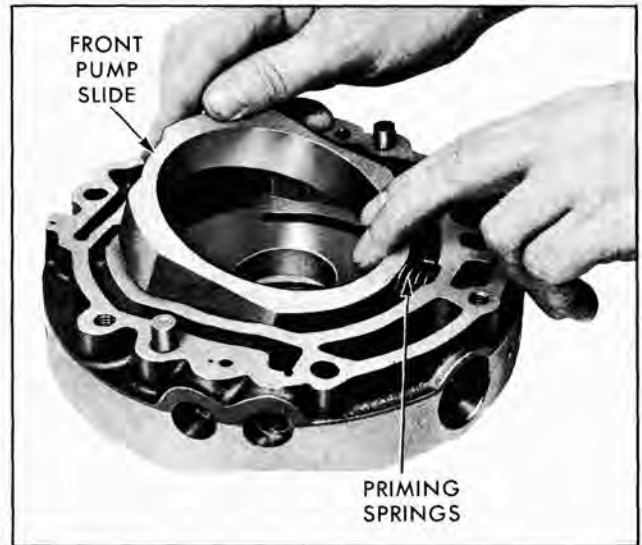


Fig. 103 Removing Pump Slide

4. Check priming springs, check valve spring and torus feed valve spring for collapsed coils or distortion. See page 101 for free length.
5. Measure wear of bushing in pump body as follows:
 - a. Set front unit coupling on bench with cover side up.
 - b. Fasten pump cover to body with one or two screws.
 - c. Place pump cover and body assembly over front unit coupling driven torus shaft with cover down.
 - d. Measure clearance between driven torus shaft



Fig. 104 Removing Front Sprag Retaining Ring

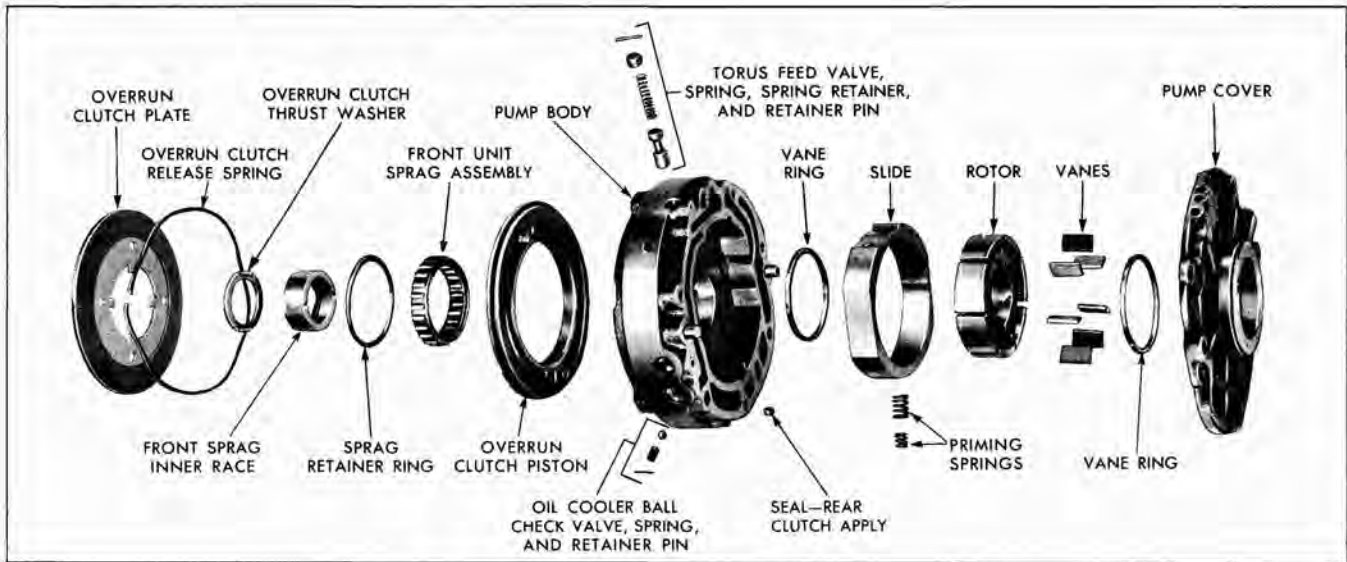


Fig. 105 Pump and Overrun Clutch—Exploded

and pump housing at the point shown in Fig. 111 using $\frac{1}{2}$ " width feeler gauges. (The thrust of the shaft against the bushing is taken at this point.) The clearance must not exceed .003". If a .004" gauge can be inserted between the shaft and the bushing, the pump and the driven torus member of the front unit must be replaced. **NOTE:** Bushing should be flush with rear side (piston side) of pump and project slightly from front side.

6. Examine pump body and pump cover slide surface contacts for smoothness. Also see that ball check

valve seat and overrun clutch piston seal groove in pump body are in good condition.

7. Check fit of torus feed valve in its bore to see that it slides freely. (Valve is serviced separately.)

8. Examine rotor for cracks or wear. See that bushing in rotor is in good condition. Bushing should be flush with flat side and short on side with shoulder to allow clearance for bushing which projects from pump body.

9. Examine front sprag outer race to see that it is not damaged.

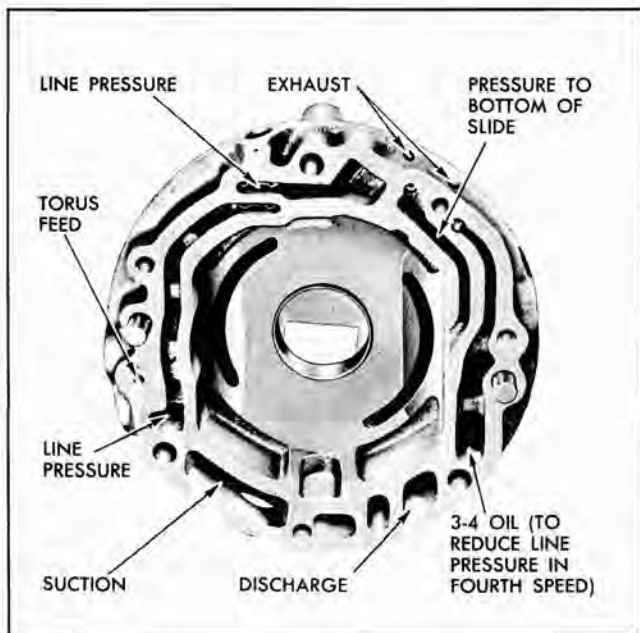


Fig. 106 Passages in Pump Body (Front Side)

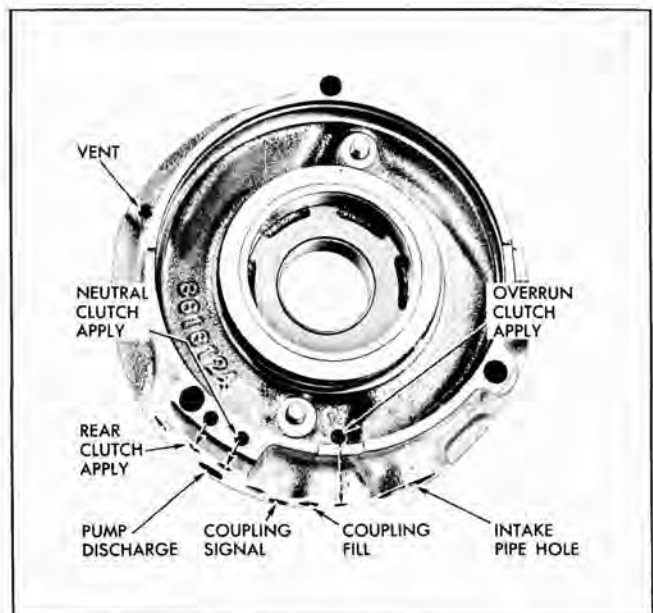


Fig. 107 Passages in Pump Body (Rear Side)

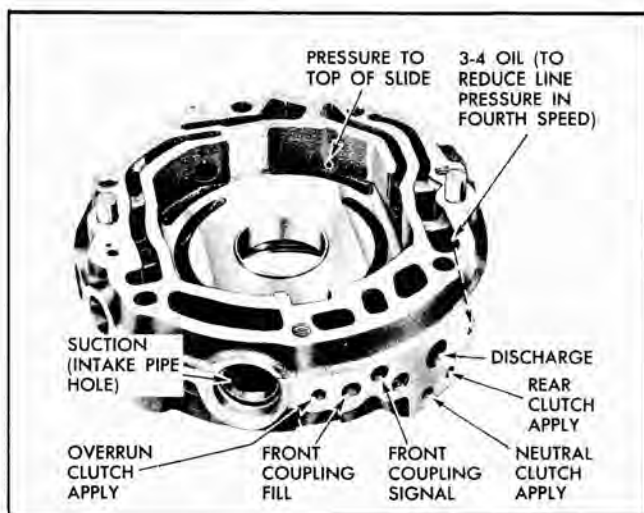


Fig. 108 Passages in Pump Body

10. Inspect overrun clutch piston for scoring or damaged seal groove.

11. Inspect front unit sprag for damaged shoulder, cage, spring or scored sprags.

12. Inspect sprag inner race for scored sprag surface or worn drive lugs.

13. Inspect overrun clutch plate for worn lugs or facing. Plate should be flat. If flakes of facing material can be removed by scratching surface with thumb nail, plate should be replaced. Discoloration is not an indication of failure.

14. Inspect overrun clutch release spring to see that it has five equally spaced waves approximately $\frac{1}{4}$ " deep.

ASSEMBLY

1. Insert inner and outer priming springs in the recess in pump body (Fig. 112).

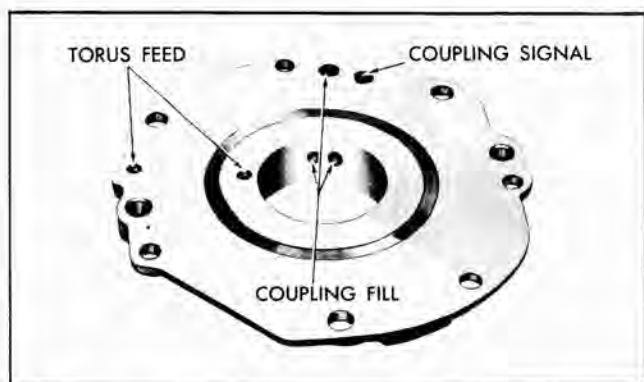


Fig. 109 Passages in Pump Cover

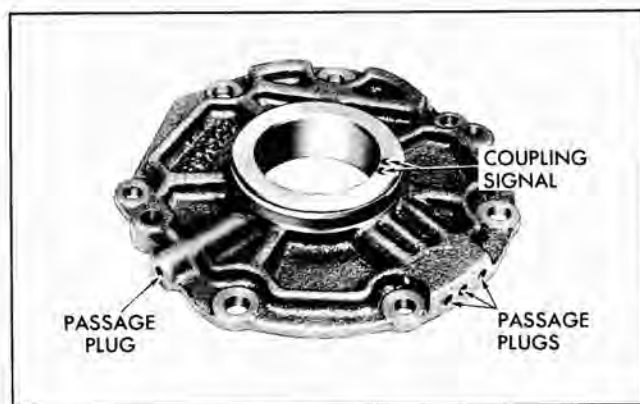


Fig. 110 Passages in Pump Cover

2. Position pump slide in pump body toward priming springs. Compress priming springs with slide until it drops into pocket of pump (Fig. 112). Work slide in position. NOTE: Slide can not be improperly installed.

3. Insert torus feed valve in large bore on side of pump opposite priming springs with long land entering first (Fig. 113).

4. Install valve spring, retainer (cupped side in) and valve retaining pin. Check free movement of the valve by moving slide.

5. Insert oil cooler check ball in oil cooler passage nearest to dowel (Fig. 114). Then install check ball spring and spring retaining pin.

6. Lay a vane ring in pump body, locating it concentrically with slide bore.

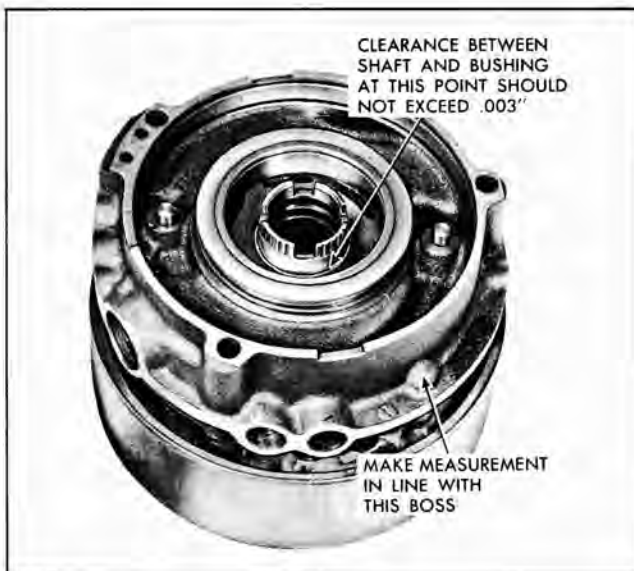


Fig. 111 Measuring Wear of Bushing in Pump Body

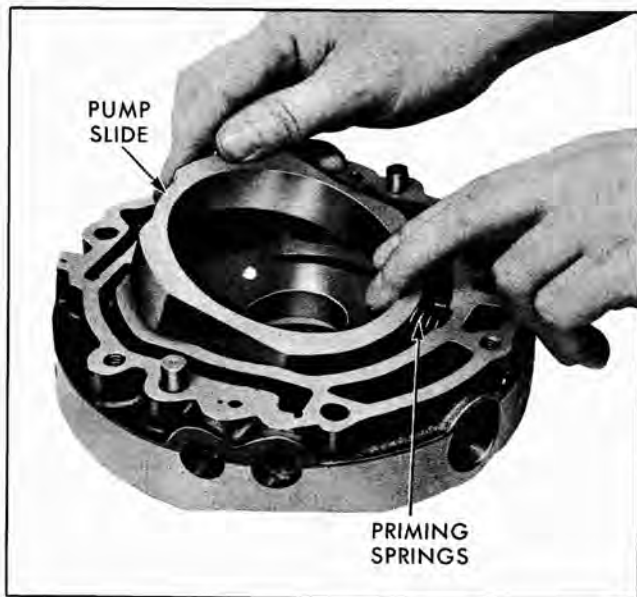


Fig. 112 Installing Front Pump Slide

7. Install rotor in pump cavity with drive slots up (Fig. 115).

8. Install seven vanes in rotor with polished areas toward vane rings (Fig. 115).

9. Install second vane ring on top of rotor. Check for free rotation of rotor.

10. Total clearance between vanes and slide, with vane rings installed should be .000"-.003". Check with feeler gauge between each vane and I.D. of slide to ensure clearance does not exceed .003" (with vanes contacting slide on one side, clearance should

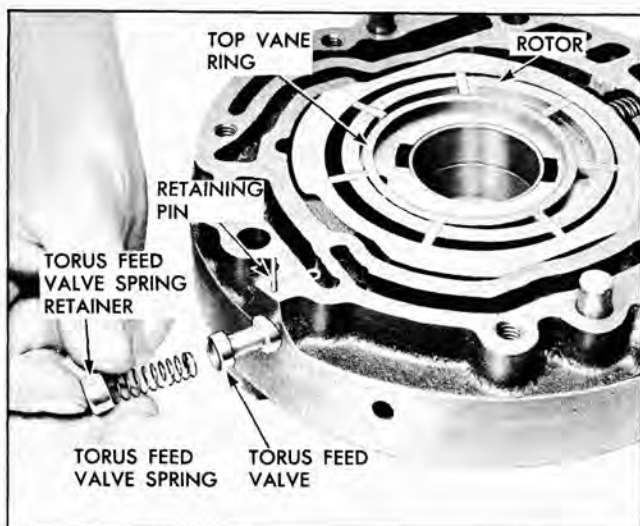


Fig. 113 Installing Torus Feed Valve



Fig. 114 Installing Oil Cooler Check Ball

not exceed .003" on opposite side). If clearance is excessive pump must be replaced.

11. Attach front cover to pump body with four screws. Tighten to 15-18 lb. ft. torque. **NOTE:** Use short screw in hole nearest top of pump (opposite intake pipe hole).

12. Install overrun clutch seal in hub of pump body with lip facing toward bottom of piston bore.

13. Install outer seal on overrun clutch piston with lip facing side with dowel holes.

14. Install overrun clutch piston in pump body. Compress seal with fingers.

15. Install sprag into rear of pump shoulder side up (Fig. 116). Rotate sprag counterclockwise while installing it.

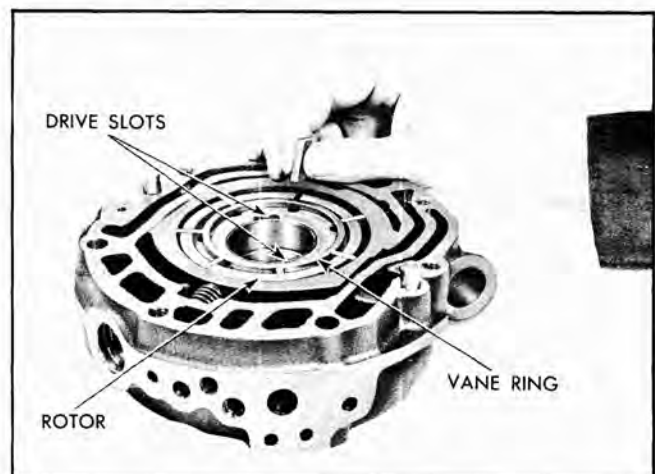


Fig. 115 Installing Vanes in Rotor

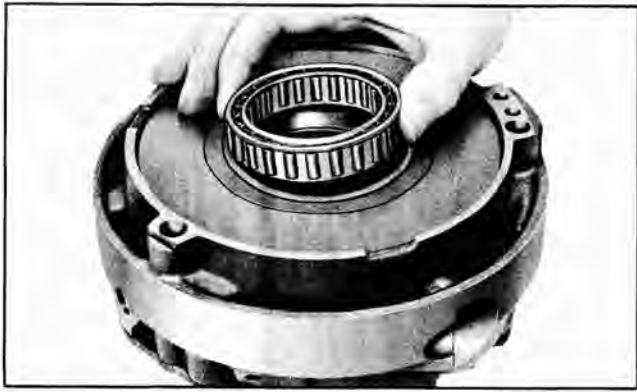


Fig. 116 Installing Front Sprag in Hub of Pump Body

16. Secure sprag with spiral snap ring.

17. Install sprag inner race into sprag with lug side up. Inner race must rotate counterclockwise from top.

18. Place overrun clutch plate on top of piston indexing drive lugs with sprag inner race. **NOTE:** Clutch plate should be retained with petrolatum so it will not fall out when pump is installed in case.

19. Coat overrun clutch thrust washer with petrolatum and place washer on sprag inner race with drive lugs down and indexed with sprag outer race.

20. Place clutch release spring on top of piston and retain with petrolatum (Fig. 117).

21. Install pump intake "O" ring seal in pump body.

Installation Page 83

FRONT UNIT COUPLING

DISASSEMBLY

The front unit coupling assembly is balanced after assembly at the factory, therefore, it is very important that the coupling cover always be installed in coupling in its original position.

In production the No. 1 exhaust valve in the cover and the gap in snap ring are aligned with a locating mark in the driving torus shell. If this mark is not visible, scribe mark the cover shell in line with the gap in snap ring. When reassembling, align all parts exactly the same, including the gap in snap ring.

1. Rest front unit coupling assembly in holding fixture J-6116 (Fig. 118).

2. Remove large snap ring retaining coupling cover to drive torus shell.

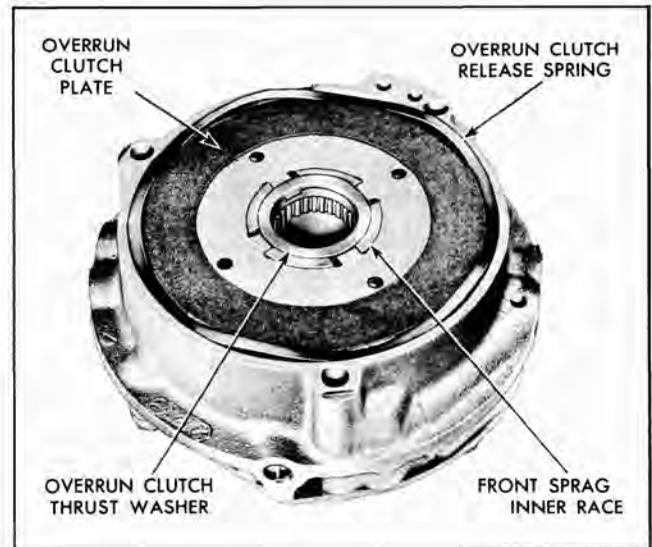


Fig. 117 Overrun Clutch Parts Installed in Pump

3. Install two coupling exhaust valve retainers J-6122 to hold exhaust valves in position when removing cover (Fig. 119).

4. Remove coupling cover from coupling using remover J-6121 (Fig. 118) as follows:

a. Place cross piece of remover J-6121 on end of

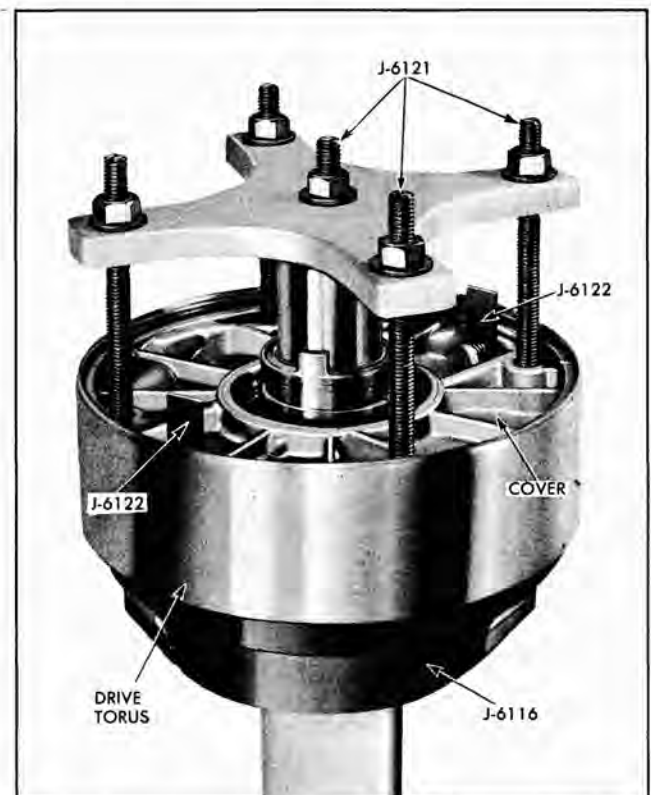


Fig. 118 Removing Coupling Cover

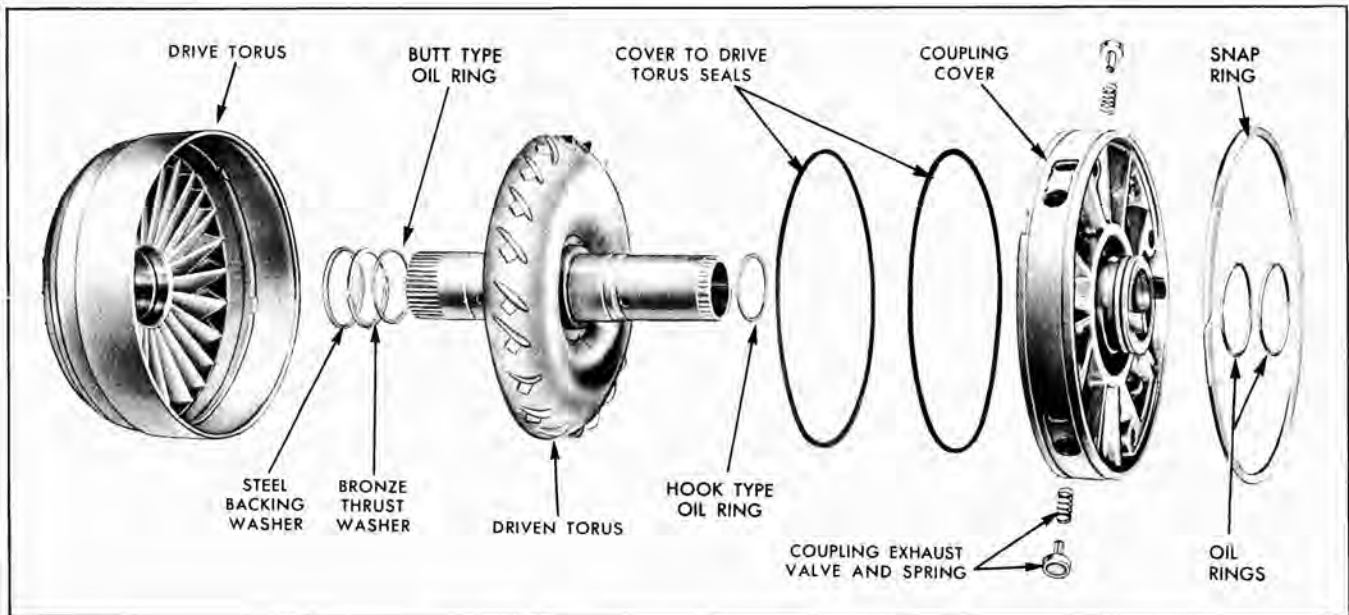


Fig. 119 Front Unit Coupling Parts—Exploded

torus shaft with end of shaft indexed in counterbore on underside of tool.

b. Screw stud at end of each leg into holes in coupling cover until they bottom (nuts on studs should be backed off so they will not contact cross piece).

c. Insert long stud of J-6121 through coupling and cross piece. Index bottom end with hole in clutch unit holding fixture so it cannot turn. Install washer

and nut on upper end and tighten securely.

d. Tighten nuts on four studs evenly and only a small amount at a time to pull cover out of unit.

5. Remove tool J-6121.

6. Remove coupling cover from unit.

7. Hold fingers over valves so they will not be ejected and remove coupling exhaust valve retainers J-6122 and exhaust valves and springs from cover. Remove seal rings from outer diameter of cover and discard.

8. Remove driven torus member by pulling up on shaft, and remove bronze and steel thrust washers.

9. Remove drive torus member from holding fixture J-6116.

INSPECTION

1. Inspect vanes in both torus members to see that they are not loose or damaged.

2. Inspect steel and bronze thrust washers used between the drive and driven torus members to see that they are not worn excessively.

3. Inspect bushing in front end of driven torus shaft and outer polished surfaces on shaft. Also check to see that hook type oil rings and ring lands are in good condition.

4. Insert coupling exhaust valves in bores of coupling cover to see that they operate freely (valves are serviced separately). Observe coupling exhaust valve

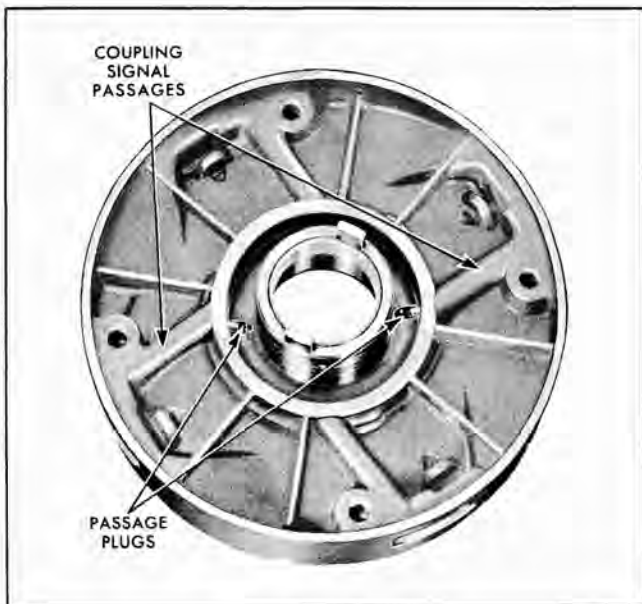


Fig. 120 Plugs in Exhaust Valve Signal Oil Passages in Coupling Cover

springs for collapsed or distorted coils (Fig. 119).

5. Inspect front unit torus coupling cover for burrs or scratches on outer diameter caused by removal of cover. Burrs or scratches can usually be cleaned up with crocus cloth. Check for excessive wear of bushing in cover and condition of hook type ring and ring land. Inspect oil seal grooves of cover hub to ensure they are not damaged. Make sure signal oil passages in coupling cover are open and that plugs are in place (Fig. 120).

ASSEMBLY

1. Place drive torus in holding fixture J-6116 with hub down.

2. Install steel, then bronze thrust washer in drive torus member (Fig. 121).

3. With oil rings in place on driven torus shaft, install driven torus into drive torus (Fig. 122).

4. Install two new torus cover square ring seals making sure seals are square in grooves. Apply petrolatum freely to lubricate seals for installation of cover into drive torus.

5. Install springs and coupling exhaust valves in cover and install valve retainers J-6122.

6. Insert cover into drive torus shell indexing No. 1 exhaust valve (or mark made during disassembly) with mark on drive torus shell. Tap lightly on inner diameter of cover to position cover fully into shell (Fig. 123). The cover will be secure when snap ring groove in torus shell shows evenly above cover.

7. Remove two retainers J-6122 from cover.

8. Install snap ring to retain torus cover in drive

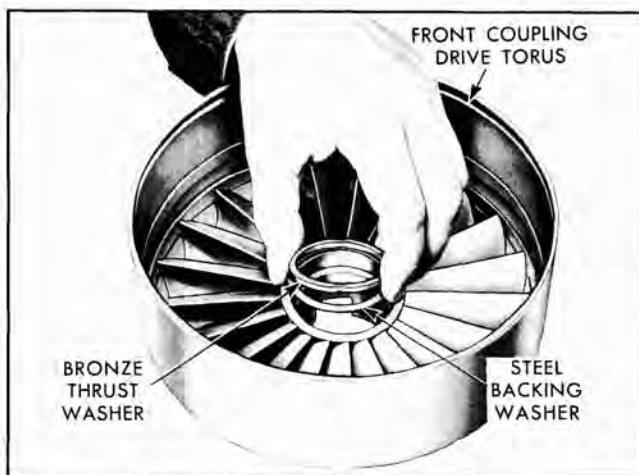


Fig. 121 Installing Thrust Washers in Drive Torus

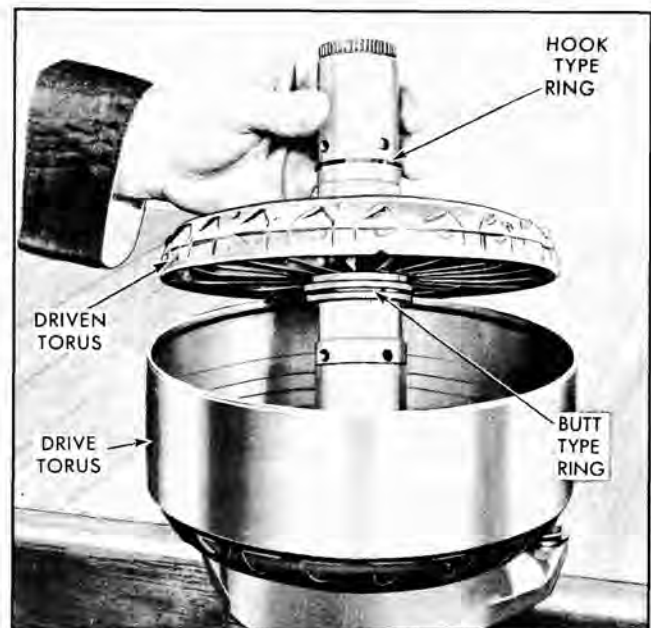


Fig. 122 Installing Driven Torus into Drive Torus

torus shell with gap in snap ring aligned with No. 1 exhaust valve. NOTE: Cover, shell and gap in snap ring must be replaced in original alignment to maintain balance of unit.

Installation Page 85

REVERSE CLUTCH PISTON HOUSING

DISASSEMBLY

1. Remove large snap ring retaining wave type reverse piston release spring and retainer (Fig. 124).

2. Remove retainer and release spring.

3. Lift reverse piston from reverse clutch piston

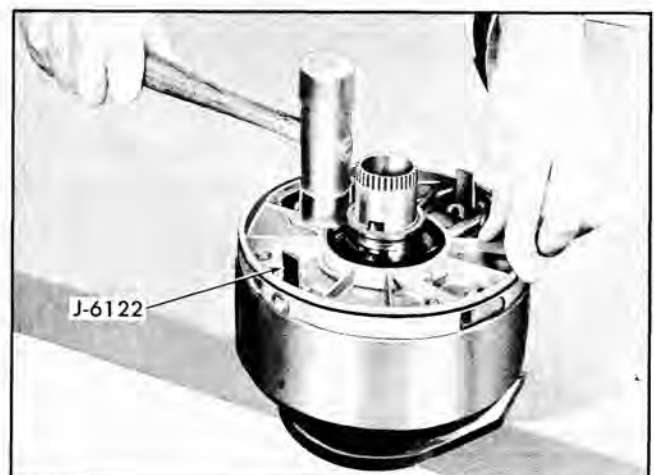


Fig. 123 Installing Torus Cover into Drive Torus Shell

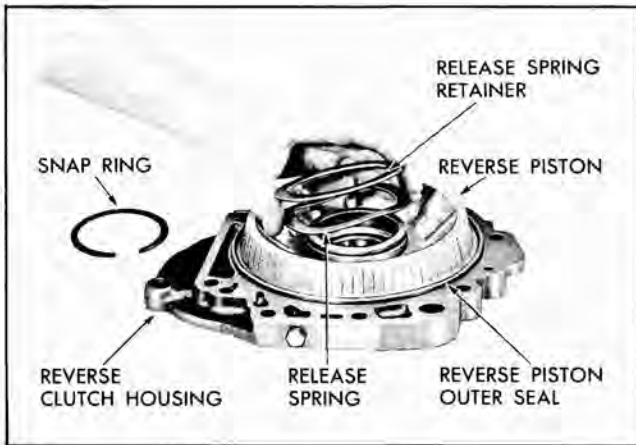


Fig. 124 Removing Snap Ring, Reverse Piston Release Spring and Retainer

housing (Fig. 125).

4. Remove bearing to housing snap ring.
5. Tap bearing out rear of housing.

INSPECTION

1. Check passages in reverse piston housing (Fig. 126) to see that they are not restricted or interconnected.
2. Check three piston dowel pins in the reverse piston housing for tightness. Also, check for burrs, scratches or nicks in housing.
3. Inspect rear bearing.
4. Observe reverse clutch piston for scoring, nicks, or burrs (Fig. 127). Check oil seal grooves to see that they are in good condition.
5. Observe reverse internal gear for possible damage to clutch surface on outer periphery or damaged internal gear teeth. Thrust washer surface on back of gear must not be damaged. Check bushing in center



Fig. 125 Removing Reverse Piston from Reverse Clutch Housing

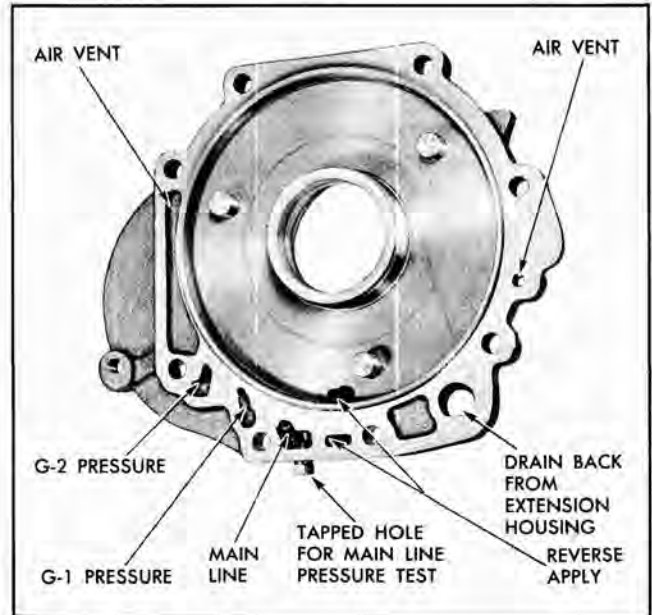


Fig. 126 Passages in Reverse Clutch Piston Housing

hole of gear flange for scoring or damage (Fig. 128).

6. Inspect reverse internal gear to reverse piston housing hub thrust washer for excessive wear.
7. Inspect reverse clutch stationary cone for excessive wear or cracks.
8. Check reverse clutch release spring for bent fingers.
9. Inspect reverse planet carrier for worn or damaged teeth or worn roller bearings. Also check splines and parking lugs on outer diameter of carrier.
10. Inspect reverse piston release spring. It should have five equally spaced waves approximately $\frac{1}{4}$ " deep.

ASSEMBLY

1. Place tool J-7577 over inner hub of reverse piston housing (Fig. 129).
2. Lower reverse piston over tool, rotating it to engage dowel pins.
3. Compress outer piston seal to facilitate its entering into bore of cylinder. Use care so as not to damage piston seals during installation.
4. Remove tool J-7577.
5. Place release spring and retainer on piston and install large retaining snap ring (Fig. 127). **NOTE:** Rear bearing will be installed after reverse piston housing is attached to transmission case.

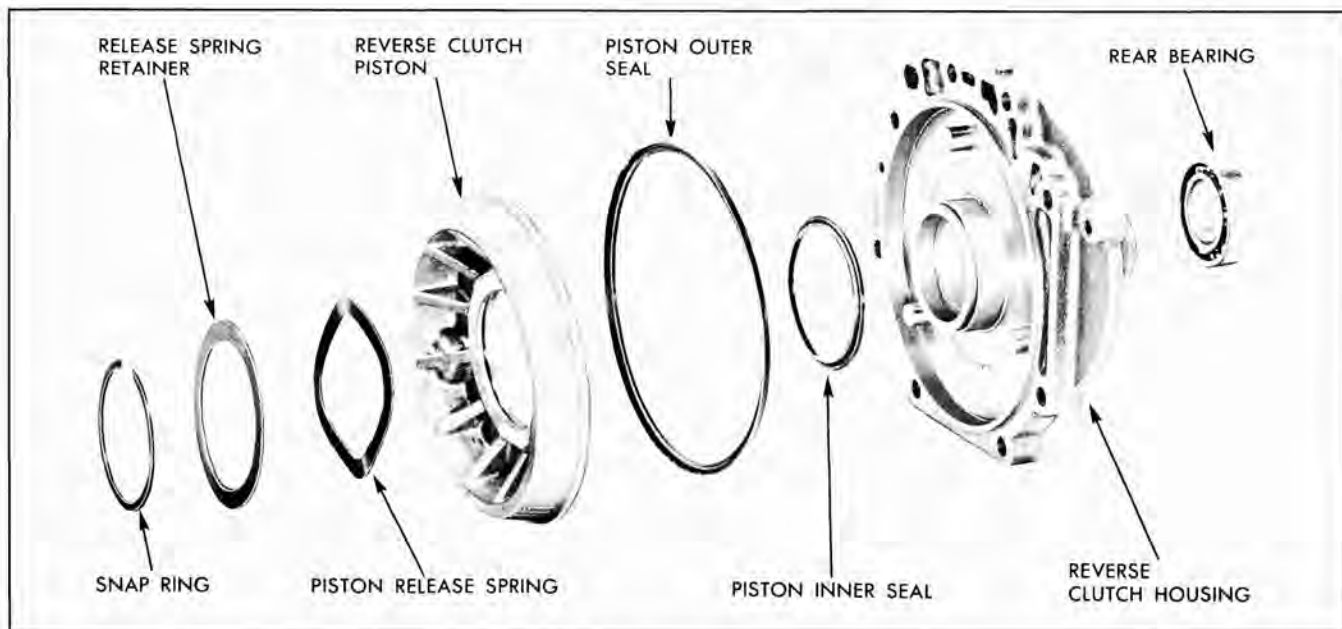


Fig. 127 Reverse Clutch Piston, Housing and Parts—Exploded

GOVERNOR

DISASSEMBLY

1. Remove two cover to governor driven gear attaching screws (Fig. 131).
2. Remove cover plate, G-2 bushing retaining pin, G-2 bushing and plunger assembly, and bushing stop washer.
3. Remove G-2 plunger from bushing.
4. Remove four governor oil rings.
5. Remove governor driven gear only if it needs replacement.

INSPECTION

1. Inspect governor rings and ring lands. Rings

must be free in grooves. If lands are damaged or worn thin, replace governor assembly.

2. Inspect G-1 plunger for free movement. Plunger should be held in extended position by spring pressure.
3. Inspect G-2 plunger for free movement in bushing.
4. Inspect governor drive and driven gears.

ASSEMBLY

1. Insert G-2 bushing stop washer in body (Fig. 131).
2. Install G-2 (secondary) plunger into bushing.
3. Install G-2 bushing and plunger assembly into

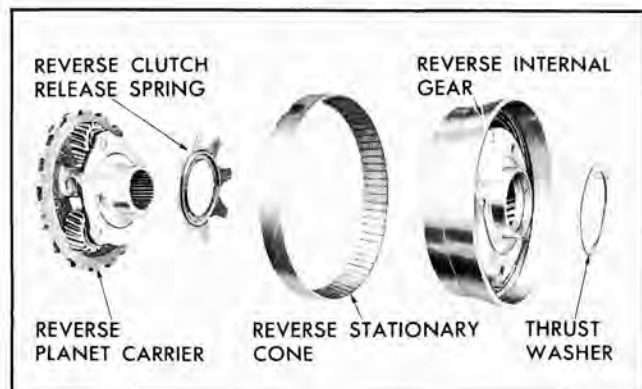


Fig. 128 Reverse Clutch Parts—Exploded



Fig. 129 Installing Reverse Piston in Housing

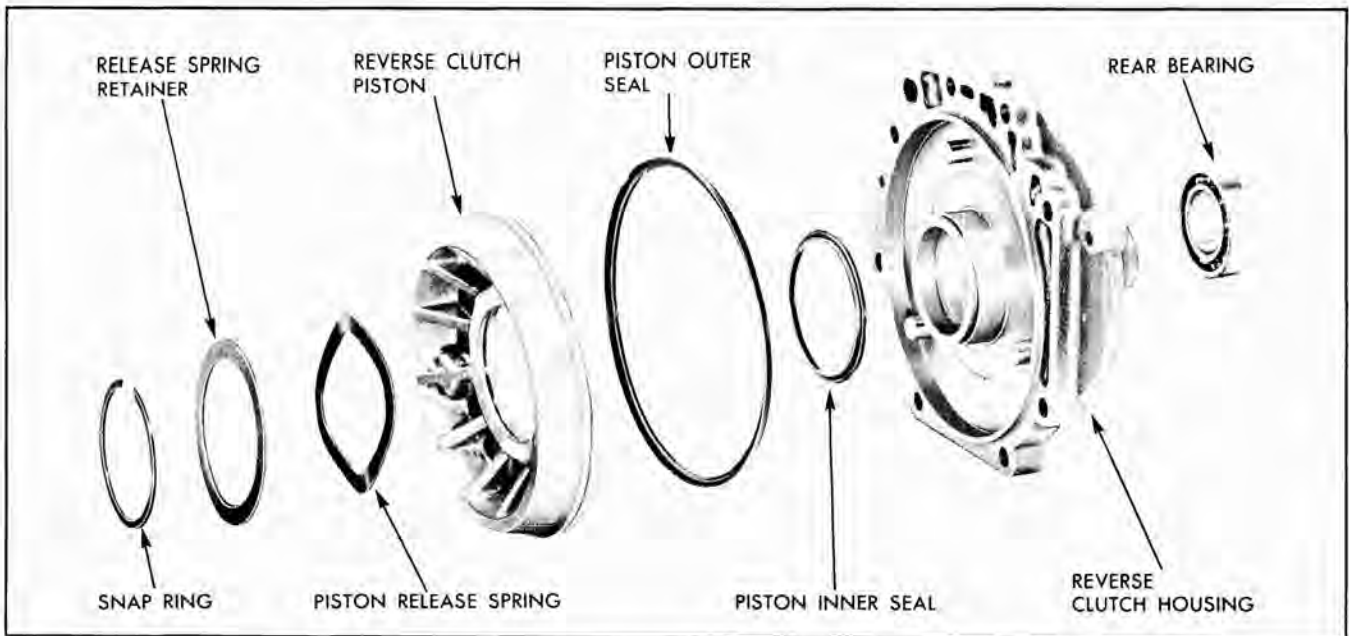


Fig. 130 Reverse Clutch Piston and Housing Parts—Exploded

governor body.

4. Rotate bushing to align recess in bushing to accept retaining pin and install pin.

5. If the governor driven gear was removed, install it over governor tower and roll the pin.

6. Attach governor cover plate to body with two screws entering driven gear. Overhang of plate must be toward G-2 weight. Use care not to drop bushing retaining pin.

7. Install four governor oil rings.

Installation Page 83

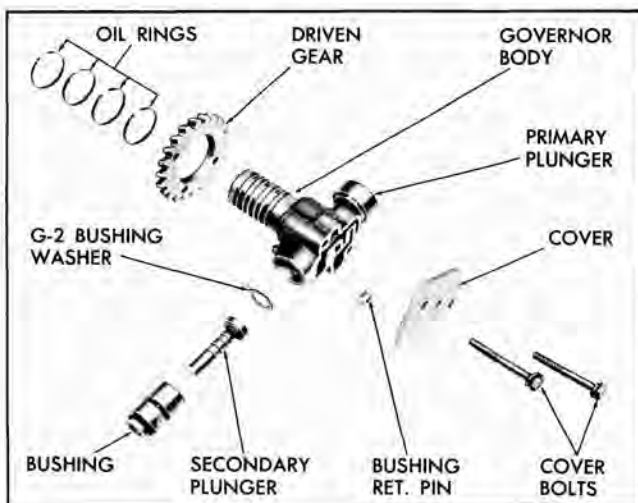


Fig. 131 Governor Parts—Exploded

SERVO AND ACCUMULATOR

DISASSEMBLY

1. Remove servo piston from servo body (Fig. 132).
2. Remove cover attaching screws; then remove cover and discard gasket.
3. Remove TV accumulator stop pin and accumulator valve plug retainer.
4. Remove plug, accumulator valve, spring, and TV accumulator plug.
5. Remove accumulator piston and spring from accumulator and servo body.
6. Compress accumulator spring and remove retaining washer.
7. Remove accumulator piston pin from accumulator piston. **NOTE:** Do not remove small retaining ring from piston pin.
8. Remove oil seal ring from accumulator piston.

INSPECTION

1. Inspect accumulator and servo pistons for damaged oil rings, scores, or burrs in the ring land grooves (Fig. 132).
2. Inspect accumulator spring and servo spring for collapsed or distorted coils and proper length (page 101). **NOTE:** Slight wear "bright spots" on side of accumulator spring indicates slight contact which is permissible.

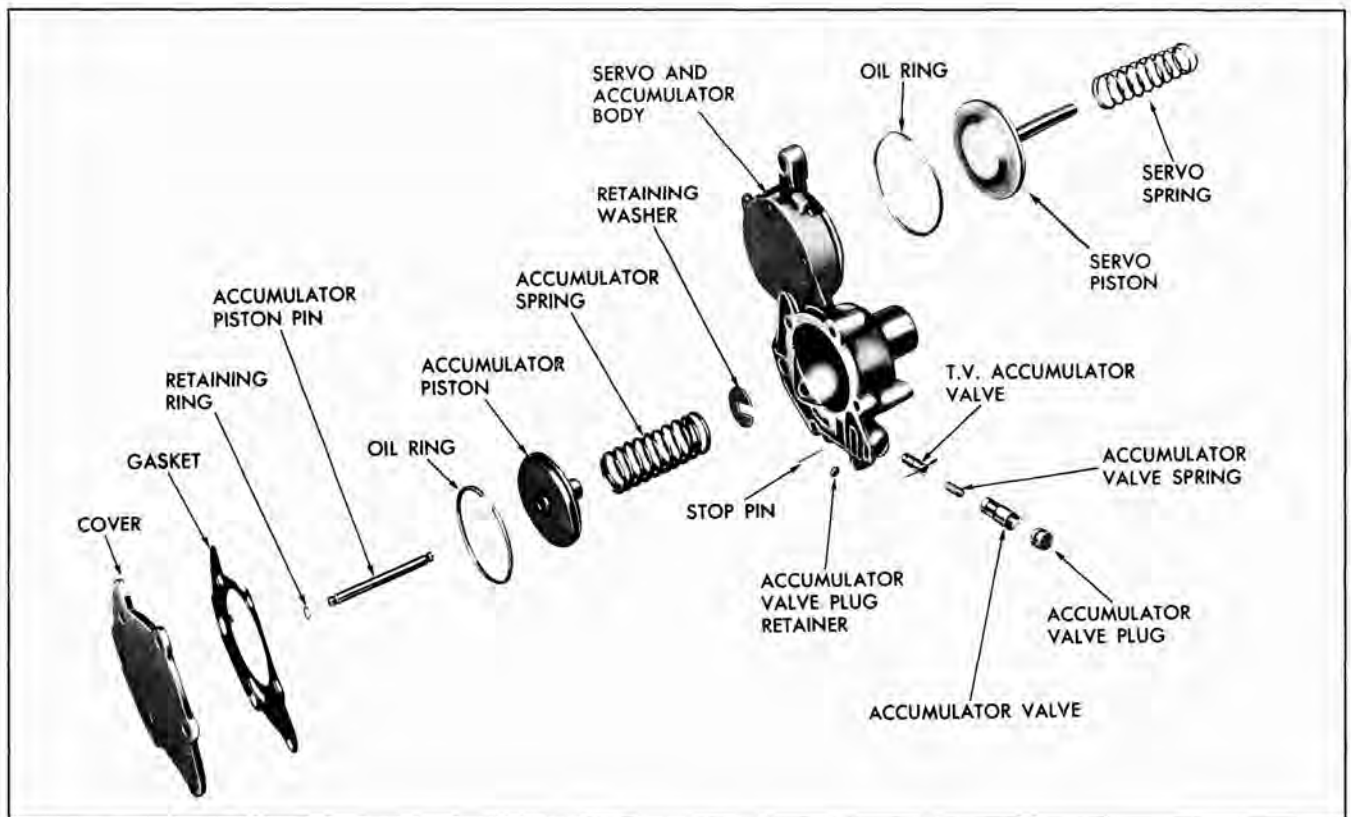


Fig. 132 Servo and Accumulator—Exploded

3. Inspect accumulator body for restricted passages (Fig. 133), scores or burrs.

4. Inspect accumulator valve spring for collapsed or distorted coils and proper length (page 101). Check trimmer valve operation in its bore. (Accumulator valve is serviced separately.)

5. Check to see that accumulator valve retainer pin bottoms in its bore so it cannot fall out.

ASSEMBLY

1. Install oil ring on accumulator piston (Fig. 132).
2. Assemble accumulator piston stem in piston with small retaining ring towards flat side of piston.
3. Place accumulator spring over stem end of piston, compress spring and install spring retaining washer.
4. Install TV accumulator plug, slotted end last and align the slot in plug with vent passage. **NOTE:** A small screwdriver may be used with care to align the valve in the bore.
5. Install accumulator valve spring in accumulator valve and install valve and spring, spring end first, into bore.

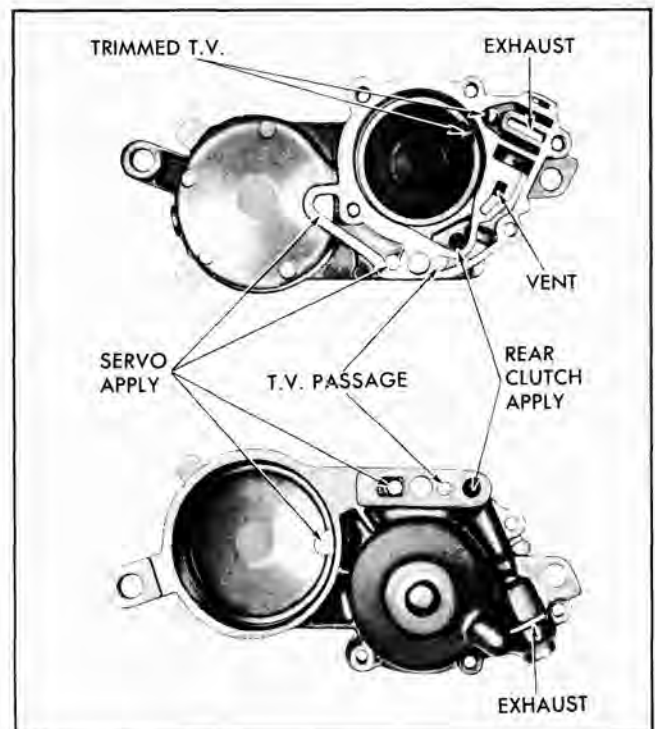


Fig. 133 Oil Passages in Servo and Accumulator Body

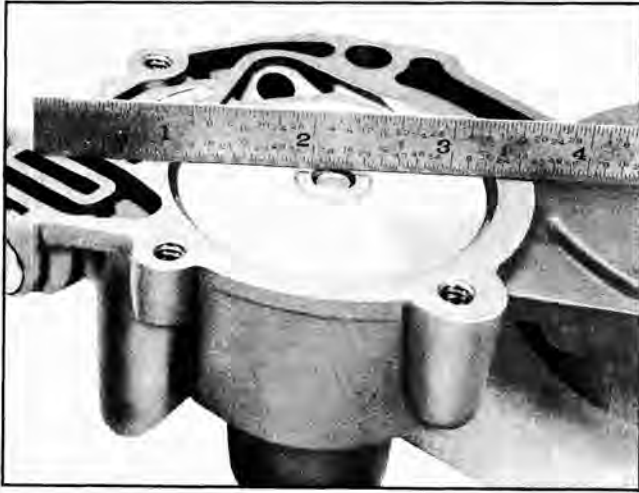


Fig. 134 Accumulator Piston Assembly Installed in Accumulator Body

6. Insert accumulator valve plug in bore.
7. Install the TV accumulator plug stop pin into vent passage and slot in plug.
8. Install plug retainer in body and in the groove in the plug.
9. Install accumulator piston assembly in accumulator (Fig. 134).
10. Attach accumulator gasket and cover with five

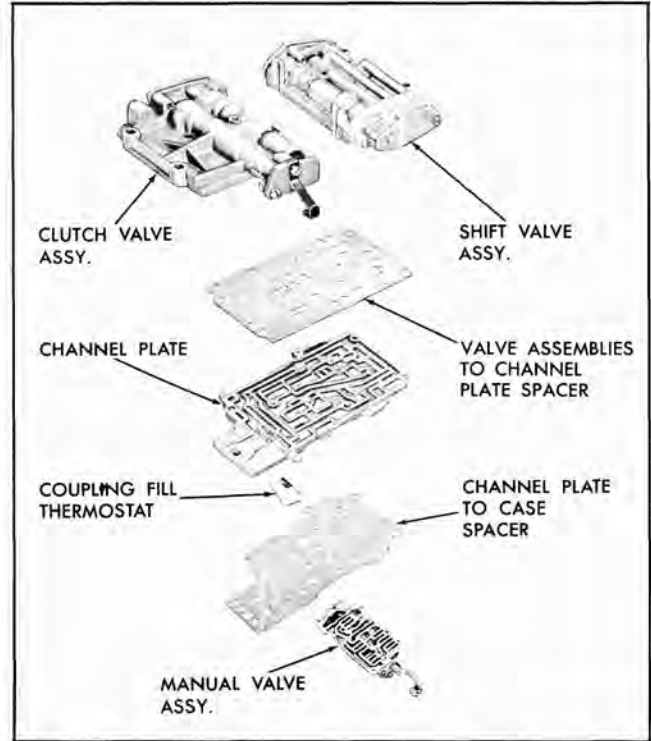


Fig. 135 Components of Control Valve Assembly

screws being careful not to damage the accumulator piston oil ring.

Installation Page 87

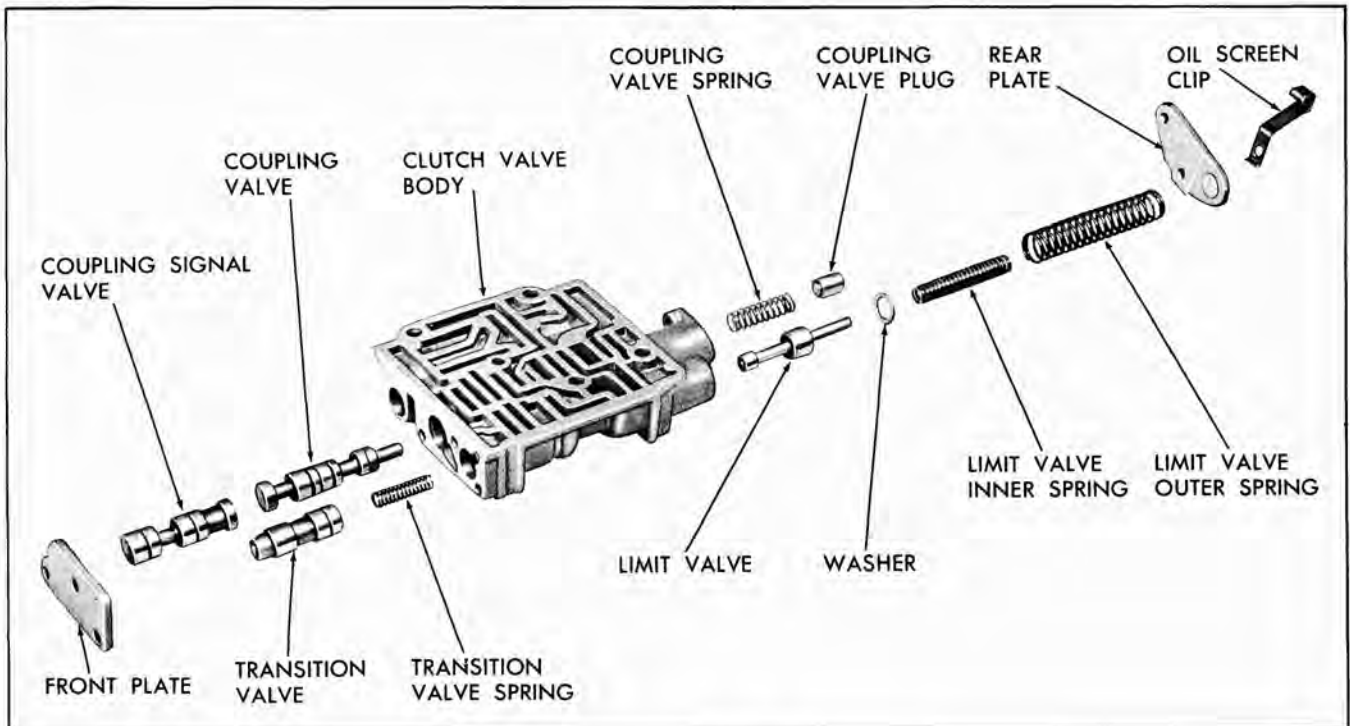


Fig. 136 Clutch Valve Parts—Exploded

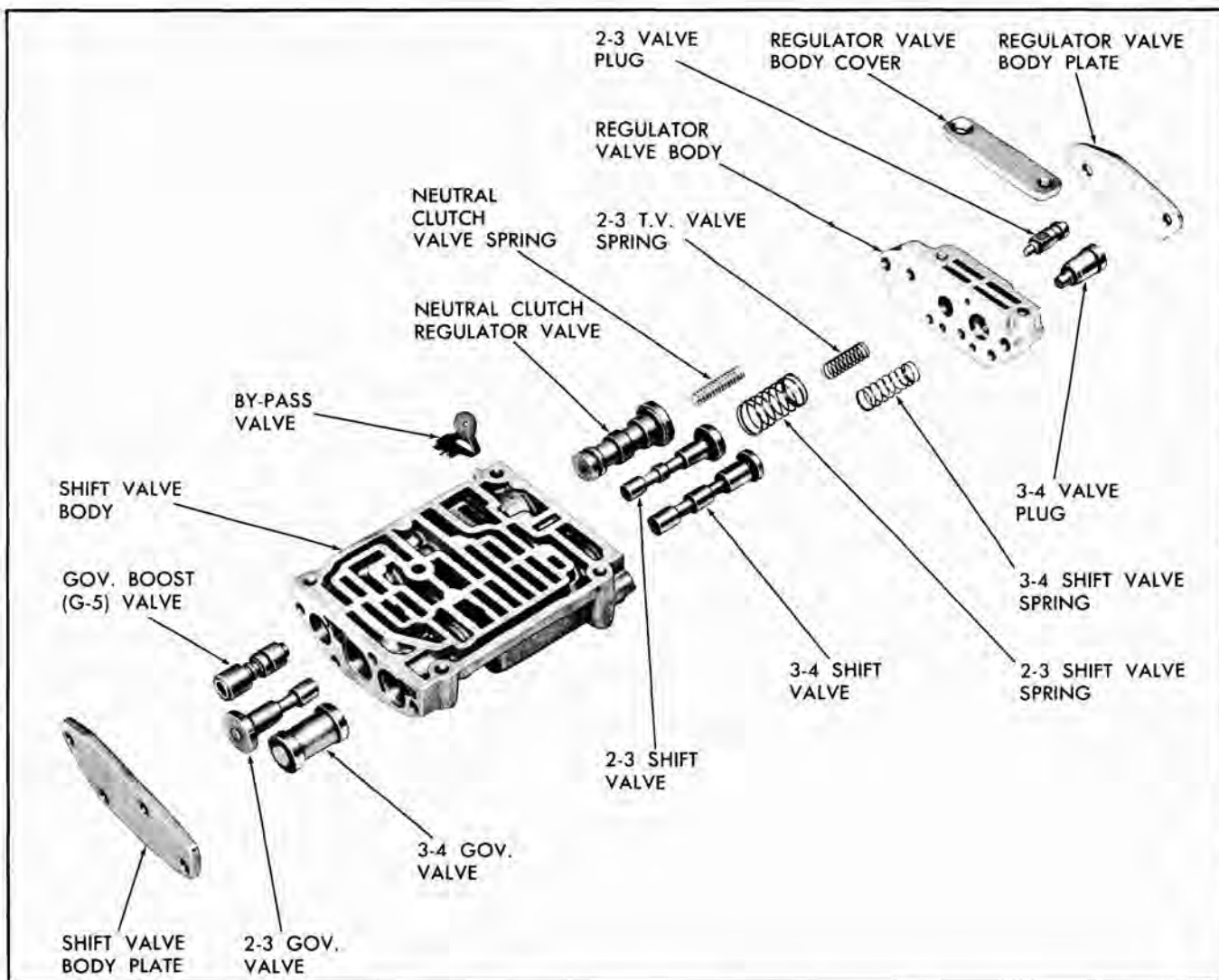


Fig. 137 Shift Valve Parts—Exploded

CONTROL VALVE ASSEMBLY

DISASSEMBLY OF COMPONENTS

The complete control valve assembly for the controlled coupling Hydra-Matic transmission consists of three individual assemblies and two spacer plates connected to a channel plate (Fig. 135). In the disassembly and assembly procedure each individual body should be disassembled, cleaned and inspected, and assembled before going to the next body. This should be done to avoid confusion of component parts. The names of these individual assemblies are:

- A. Clutch Valve.
- B. Shift Valve.
- C. Manual Valve.

1. Remove three screws retaining the shift valve assembly to channel plate and remove shift valve

assembly (Fig. 135).

2. Remove two screws retaining the clutch valve assembly to channel plate and remove the clutch valve assembly.

3. Remove channel plate to valve body spacer plate.

4. Remove three screws securing the manual valve assembly to channel plate and remove assembly.

5. Remove channel plate to case spacer plate.

6. Remove coupling fill thermostatic element from channel plate.

CLUTCH VALVE

DISASSEMBLY

1. Remove three screws retaining the clutch valve

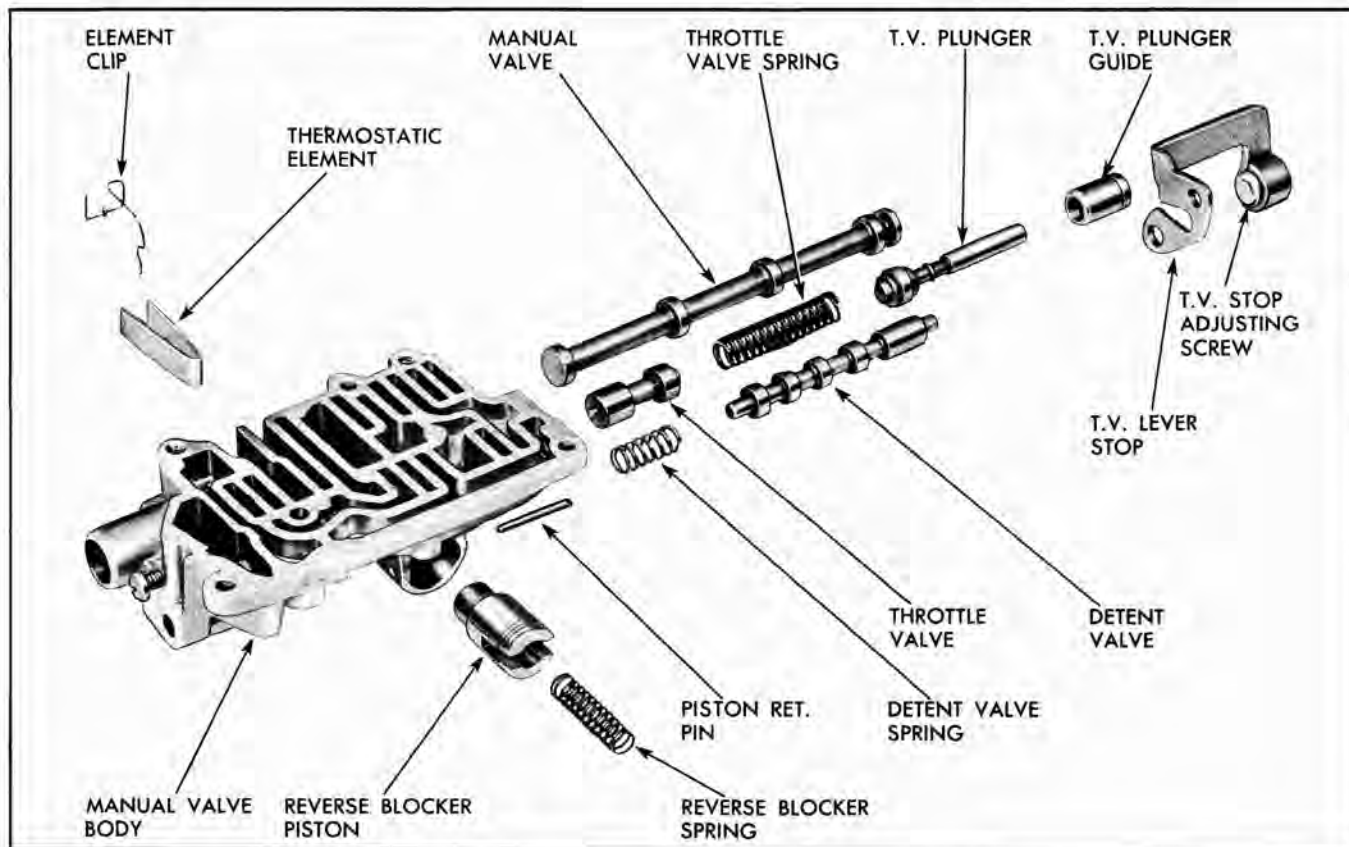


Fig. 138 Manual Valve Parts—Exploded

body front plate and remove plate (Fig. 136).

2. Remove transition valve and spring.

3. Remove coupling signal valve, coupling valve, coupling valve spring, and plug from the clutch valve body.

4. Carefully remove the two screws retaining the clutch body rear plate and remove the plate and oil screen retaining clip.

5. Remove inner and outer limit valve springs.

6. Remove limit valve spring washer and limit valve.

INSPECTION

1. Inspect each valve carefully to ensure they are free from burrs and not damaged in any way. Remove burrs carefully with fine stone. Valves have sharp corners to prevent dirt from wedging between valve and body; therefore, when removing burrs, do not round off square edges.

2. Inspect each valve and plug for free movement in its respective bore and operating position. Valves can be assumed to be free in their operating positions

if they will fall of their own weight in their respective bores when valve body is shaken slightly. Do not drop valves.

3. Inspect springs for distortion or collapsed coils. Refer to page 101 for spring specifications.

ASSEMBLY

1. Install limit valve, stem end out (Fig. 136).

2. Install limit valve washer, inner spring and outer spring.

3. Attach rear plate and retainer clip to clutch body with one screw through the clip. Leave the screw loose.

4. Rotate plate over the limit valve springs while holding springs compressed and install the remaining screw. Then tighten both screws.

5. Insert coupling valve plug, spring, coupling valve and coupling signal valve in valve body.

6. Insert spring in transition valve, then install the transition valve and spring, spring first, into the clutch body.

7. Attach clutch body front cover with three attaching screws.

Assembly of Components

Page 76

SHIFT VALVE

DISASSEMBLY

1. Remove neutral clutch by-pass valve from shift valve body (Fig. 137).

2. Remove two screws retaining the regulator body cover and remove cover.

3. Remove three screws retaining the regulator body. Remove regulator body, end plate, and two TV valve plugs together.

4. Remove the 2-3 and 3-4 TV valve plugs from regulator body.

5. Remove the neutral clutch spring, 2-3 shift valve spring, 2-3 TV spring, and 3-4 shift valve spring from the shift body.

6. Remove the neutral clutch regulator valve, 2-3 shift valve, and 3-4 shift valve.

7. Remove four screws retaining the shift valve body plate and remove plate.

8. Remove governor boost valve, 2-3 governor valve, and 3-4 governor valve.

INSPECTION

1. Inspect each valve carefully to ensure they are free from burrs and not damaged in any way. Remove burrs carefully with fine stone. Valves have sharp corners to prevent dirt from wedging between valve and body; therefore, when removing burrs, do not round off square edges.

2. Inspect each valve and plug for free movement in its respective bore and operating position. Valves can be assumed to be free in their operating positions if they will fall of their own weight in their respective bores when valve body is shaken slightly. Do not drop valves.

3. Inspect springs for distortion or collapsed coils. Refer to page 101 for spring specifications.

ASSEMBLY

1. Install 3-4 governor valve with round end facing out (Fig. 137).

2. Install 2-3 governor valve and governor boost valve.

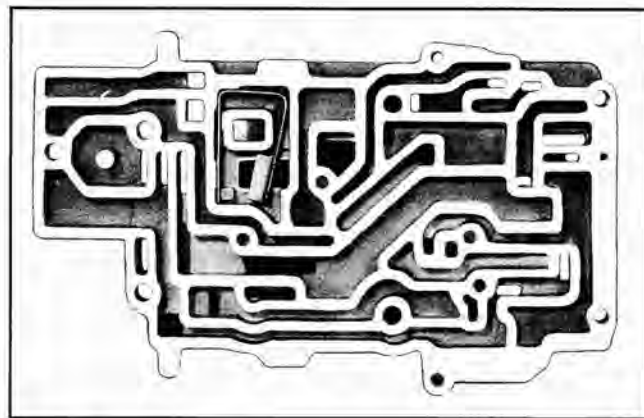


Fig. 139 Coupling Fill Thermostat Installed

3. Attach shift valve body plate with four screws.

4. Install the neutral clutch regulator valve, 2-3 shift valve, and 3-4 shift valve.

5. Insert the neutral clutch valve spring, 2-3 TV spring, 2-3 shift valve spring, and 3-4 shift valve spring in the shift valve body.

6. Install the 2-3 and 3-4 TV valves in the regulator body, so that small ends will be toward shift valves.

7. Mount regulator valve body and plate to valve body using the one plate attaching screw.

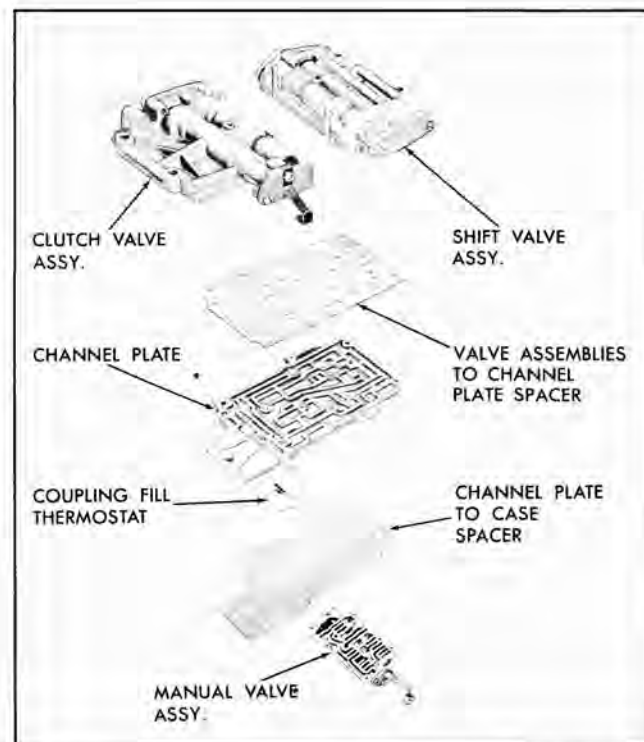


Fig. 140 Components of Control Valve Assembly

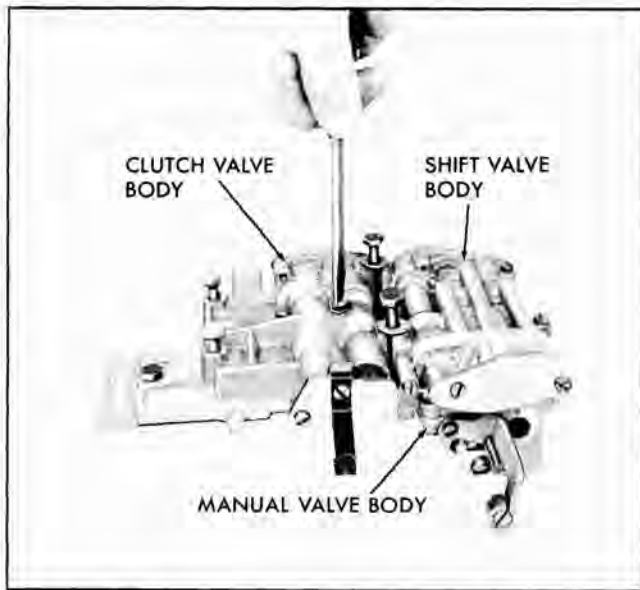


Fig. 141 Tightening Shift Valve and Clutch Valve Body Attaching Screws

8. Then, carefully align and secure the regulator body to shift valve body with two screws.

9. Attach the regulator body cover.

10. Install neutral clutch by-pass valve in shift valve body.

MANUAL VALVE

DISASSEMBLY

1. Remove two screws retaining the TV lever stop and remove stop (Fig. 138).

NOTE: Do not tamper with the factory adjusted TV stop adjusting screw.

2. Remove detent valve.

3. Remove TV plunger and guide and separate plunger from guide.

4. Remove TV spring.

5. Remove detent spring.

6. Remove throttle valve.

7. Remove thermostatic element retaining clip and element.

NOTE: Do not tamper with the small thermostatic element adjusting screw which is preset at factory.

8. Clip one end of the reverse blocker piston retaining pin.

9. While holding thumb over the reverse blocker piston bore, remove retaining pin.

10. Remove reverse blocker piston spring and piston.

INSPECTION

1. Inspect each valve carefully to ensure they are free from burrs and not damaged in any way. Remove burrs carefully with fine stone. Valves have sharp corners to prevent dirt from wedging between valve and body; therefore, when removing burrs, do not round off square edges.

2. Inspect each valve and plug for free movement in its respective bore and operating position. Valves can be assumed to be free in their operating positions if they will fall of their own weight in their respective bores when valve body is shaken slightly. Do not drop valves.

3. Inspect springs for distortion or collapsed coils. Refer to page 101 for spring specifications.

ASSEMBLY

1. Install reverse blocker piston, slotted end out (Fig. 138).

2. Insert reverse blocker piston spring and hold it compressed while installing a new retaining pin. Crimp the pin to secure it.

3. Install TV thermostatic element and clip.

4. Install throttle valve, large land first, into the manual body.

5. Insert TV spring in the TV bore.

6. Install detent valve spring in detent bore.

7. Install detent valve, long land last, in the detent bore.

8. Insert TV plunger in the guide and install both parts into the TV bore.

9. Attach the TV lever stop.

ASSEMBLY OF COMPONENTS

1. Place the coupling fill thermostatic element in channel plate (Fig. 139).

2. Lay channel plate to case spacer over channel plate and coupling fill element.

3. Place manual valve body assembly over channel plate to case spacer and attach with three screws. Leave screws one turn loose for final alignment (Fig. 140).

4. Turn the assembly over and position the channel plate to valve body spacer.

5. Lay the shift valve body in place opposite the manual body and secure with three screws. Leave screws loose.

6. Attach clutch valve body in place with two screws, leaving screws loose.

7. Use the five valve body to case attaching bolts as guides through valve bodies and tighten the shift valve and clutch valve body attaching screws (five screws) (Fig. 141).

8. Remove five bolts used as guides.

9. Turn assembly over and tighten three manual valve body screws.

Installation Page 87

FLYWHEEL HOUSING OIL SEAL

REMOVAL

Drive the seal out of housing by inserting a blunt punch through housing oil drain back hole.

REPLACEMENT

1. Rest flywheel housing on recess end of support J-7027.



Fig. 142 Installing Flywheel Housing Oil Seal



Fig. 143 Staking Oil Seal in Place

2. Apply light coat of sealer (0.665) on periphery of seal casing and place seal in bore of housing (lip down).

3. Inspect seal installer J-7026 to make sure no burrs are present which would damage seal.

4. Place installer in seal and drive seal into place (Fig. 141).

5. Stake seal at three housing reinforcement bosses with punch provided with tool (Fig. 142).

PRESSURE REGULATOR

DISASSEMBLY

1. Remove pressure regulator valve stop plug (Fig. 143).

2. Remove reverse booster plug.

3. Remove seal from pressure regulator plug and discard.

INSPECTION

1. Inspect pressure regulator valve (Fig. 144) for nicks or scores and free movement in pump body.

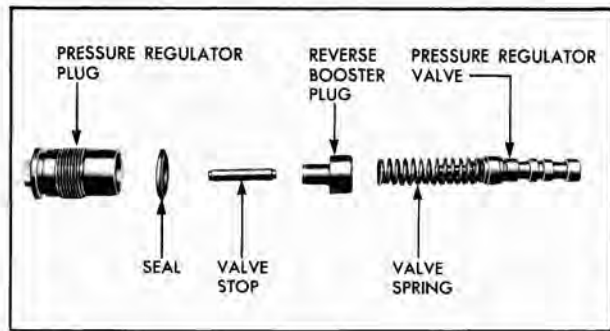


Fig. 144 Pressure Regulator Parts—Exploded

Inspect drilled passages in valve to make sure they are not obstructed.

2. Inspect pressure regulator spring for distortion, collapsed coils and free length (page 101).

3. Inspect drilled passage in pressure regulator plug to see that it is not obstructed.

4. Inspect reverse booster plug and regulator valve stop to see that they are not nicked or burred and that they move freely in their bores.

ASSEMBLY

1. Install new "O" ring seal on pressure regulator plug (Fig. 144).

2. Apply a small amount of petrolatum in bore of pressure regulator plug and in bore of reverse booster plug to keep parts in place after assembly.

3. Install reverse booster plug in pressure regulator sleeve.

4. Install pressure regulator valve stop in reverse

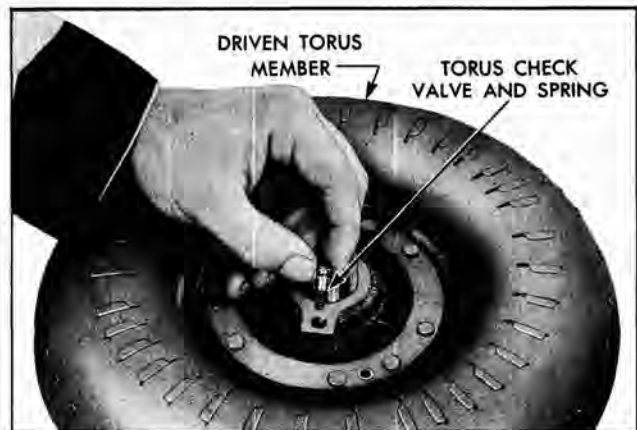


Fig. 145 Installing Torus Check Valve in Driven Torus

booster plug.

Installation Page 85

DRIVEN TORUS MEMBER CHECK VALVE

DISASSEMBLY

1. Hold finger or cloth over torus check valve bore and remove cotter pin.

2. Turn torus member over and tap lightly to work valve and spring out.

ASSEMBLY

1. Install spring in torus check valve (Fig. 145).

2. Install spring and check valve into torus member, making sure valve fully seats in bore.

3. Retain valve with cotter pin. **NOTE:** Check by pushing valve with brass rod to ensure it works freely.

INSTALLATION OF UNITS INTO CASE

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

| SUBJECT | PAGE | SUBJECT | PAGE |
|--|------|--|------|
| Detent Spring and Roller | 79 | Front Unit Coupling | 85 |
| Inside Detent and Throttle Levers | 80 | Measure Front End Clearance | 85 |
| Lo Band | 81 | Control Valve Assembly and Servo and Accumulator | 87 |
| Rear Unit, Neutral Clutch and Case Support | 81 | Intake Pipe, Oil Strainer and Oil Pan | 87 |
| Reverse Parts | 81 | Inspect Flywheel Housing and Torus Members | 87 |
| Pump and Overrun Clutch | 83 | Oil Cooler Sleeves and TV Pipe Plug | 90 |
| Pressure Regulator | 85 | | |

INSTALL DETENT SPRING AND ROLLER

1. Place the detent spring and roller assembly on mounting pad in case and start attaching bolt into tapped hole.

2. While holding the inside detent lever in position

in the case to act as a guide while centering the roller in detent, tighten attaching bolt to 15-18 lb. ft. torque (Fig. 147).

3. Bend lock tab of retaining clip against bolt head.

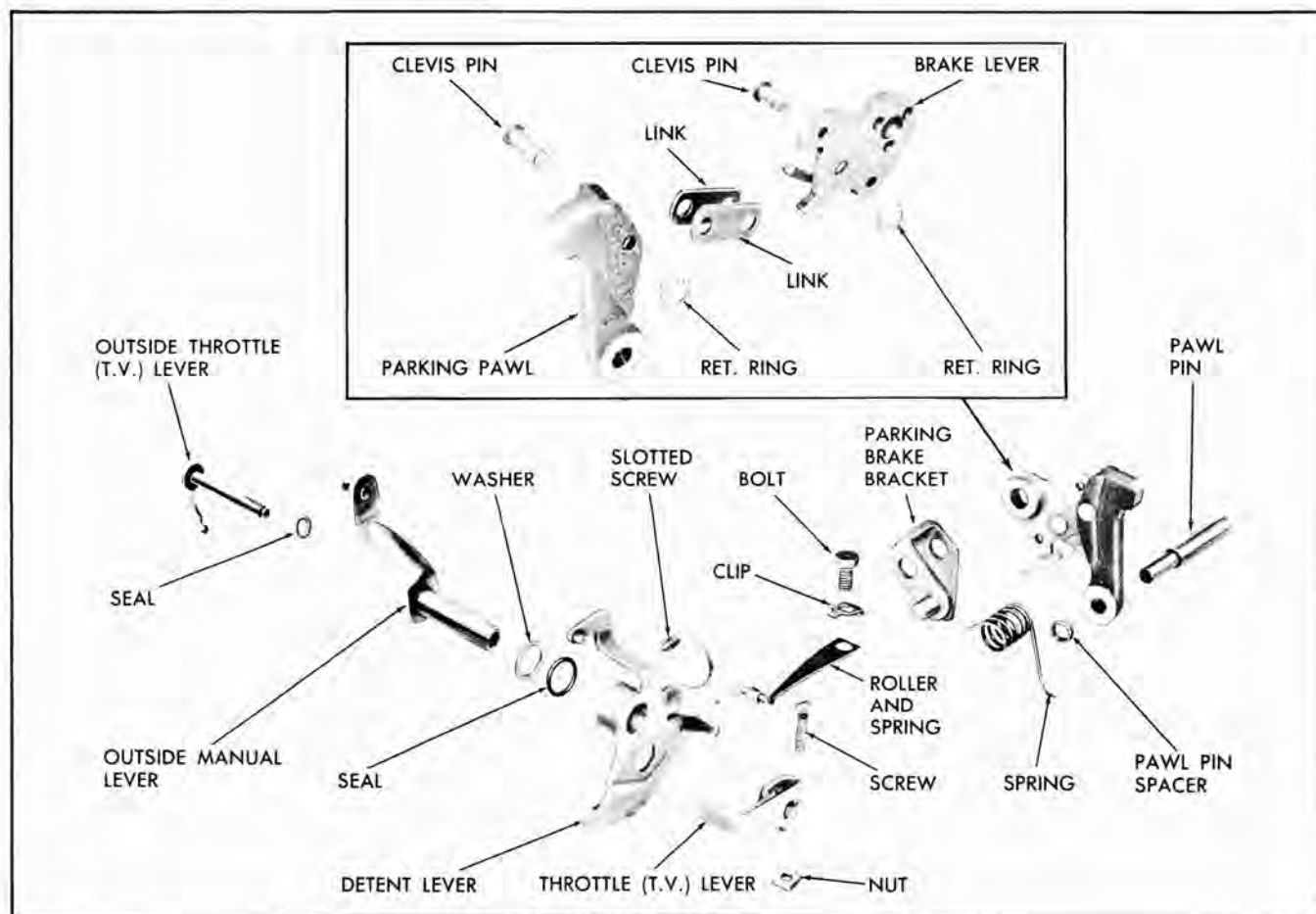


Fig. 146 Throttle, Manual, and Parking Parts—Exploded

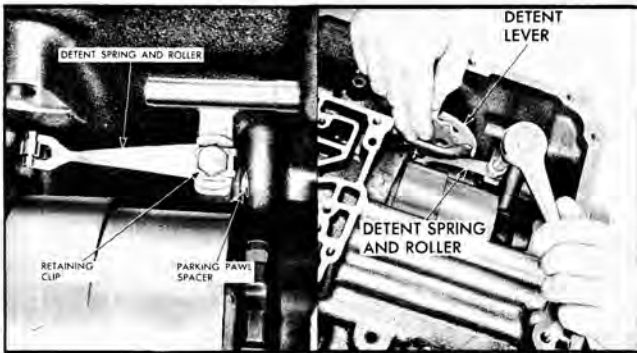


Fig. 147 Installing Detent Spring and Roller

INSTALL PARKING BRAKE LINKAGE

1. Place parking pawl pin spacer (Fig. 146) in recess in case (Fig. 147).
2. Position parking brake pawl and brake lever assembly in case with brake lever on pivot in case. Locate parking pawl at pawl pin hole and insert pin through case, pawl and spacer until shaft bottoms.
3. Position parking brake lever spring in bracket with long end toward rear. Slide bracket and spring assembly onto pivot shaft with short end of spring under parking brake bracket. Hook long end of spring under parking brake lever.

INSTALL INSIDE DETENT AND THROTTLE LEVERS

1. Install a new "O" ring on manual lever shaft.

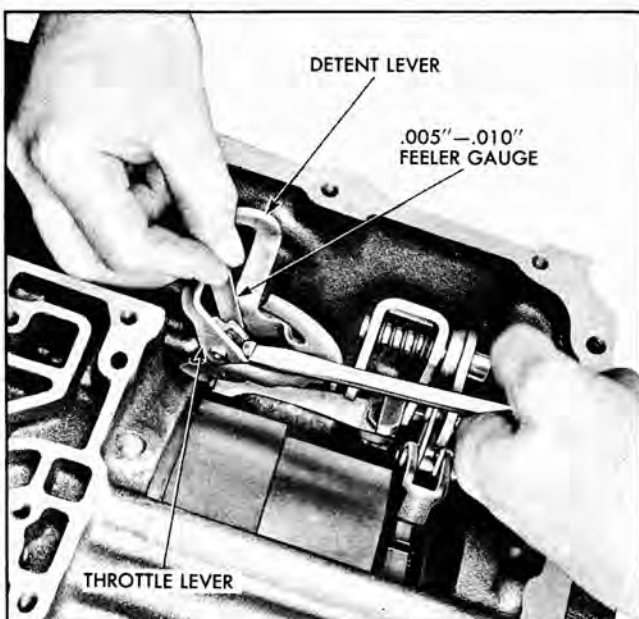


Fig. 148 Installing Inside T.V. Lever

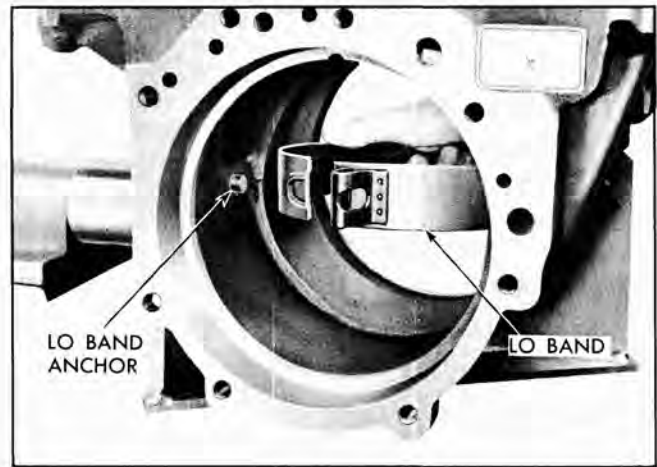


Fig. 149 Installing LO Band

2. Place detent lever in position against the detent roller so that the dowel pin on the parking brake bracket is between the lever and outside of case.
3. Insert the manual lever shaft through side of case, align serrations in detent lever with serrations on shaft and slide lever onto shaft.
4. Tighten set screw while holding lever as shown in Fig. 148.
5. Install a new "O" ring seal on TV lever shaft.
6. Insert the TV shaft through manual lever shaft.
7. Install inside TV lever on TV shaft with lever facing out.
8. Using .005"-.010" feeler gauge between inside TV lever and detent lever (Fig. 148) press TV lever onto TV shaft as far as possible and *tighten lock screw to 10-12 lb. ft. torque.*

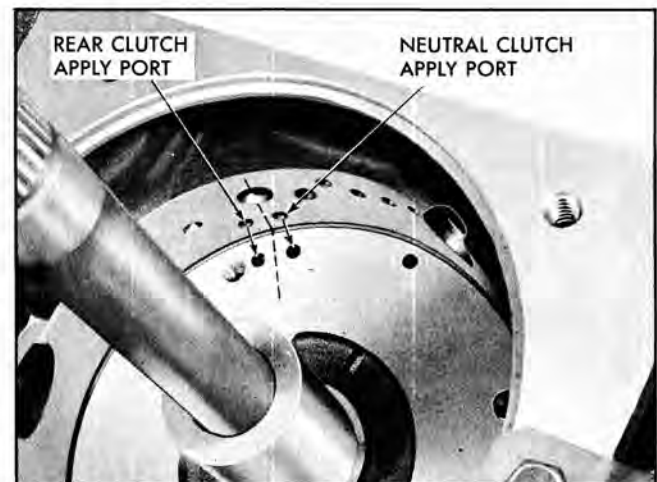


Fig. 150 Alignment of Case Center Support in Transmission Case

9. Pull on outside TV lever to be sure inside TV lever is secure on shaft.

INSTALL LO BAND

1. Install LO band through front end of transmission case with the band ends facing rearward in a horizontal position (Fig. 149). (Anchor support hole should face right hand side.)

2. When band is approximately half-way through transmission case, with band still horizontal, rotate band so that ends are in cavity in case above anchor pin and rotate band into position.

3. Position band end on anchor in the case.

INSTALL REAR UNIT, NEUTRAL CLUTCH, AND CASE SUPPORT

1. Install neutral clutch key in case using petrolatum to hold it in place. Position rounded side toward front to provide lead for guiding neutral clutch drum over key.

2. Install rear unit, neutral clutch, and case support assembly into case as follows:

a. Insert output shaft end of assembly part way into front of case and then rest rear unit drum on case, while holding intermediate shaft.

b. Rotate neutral clutch drum until groove for neutral clutch key is up.

c. With parts aligned, slide assembly into case, engaging neutral clutch drum key with slot in clutch drum. Parts must be aligned so that imaginary center lines through the neutral clutch apply and rear clutch apply ports in case center support intersect like ports in the transmission case (Fig. 150).

When properly installed, snap ring groove in case will be visible at front edge of case support. **NOTE:** If units fit tightly in case, assembly may be facilitated by pulling on output shaft. Also make sure low band does not cock on rear unit drum and hold unit.

d. With ring gap located opposite oil passages (to eliminate any chance of gap ends damaging bore area at passages), slide snap ring into transmission case against center support. Tap snap ring with screwdriver if necessary to ensure it is seated fully in groove.

INSTALL REVERSE PARTS

1. Install reverse planet carrier on output shaft, aligning splines and pinions (Fig. 151).

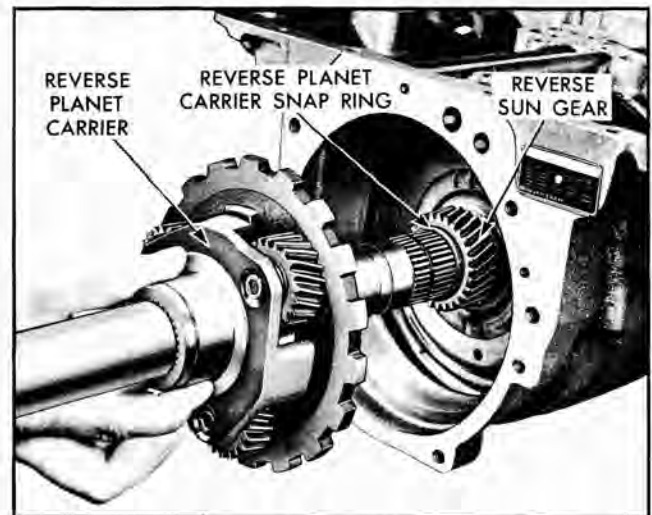


Fig. 151 Installing Reverse Planet Carrier

2. Install reverse stationary cone key in case with rounded side toward rear and retain with petrolatum.

3. Install stationary cone making sure that cone aligns with key. If cone sticks, *tap very gently* until seated.

4. Install reverse clutch release spring on carrier. Tangs must face away from carrier.

5. Install reverse internal gear on carrier (Fig. 152).

6. Place reverse internal gear to reverse clutch housing hub thrust washer against internal gear.

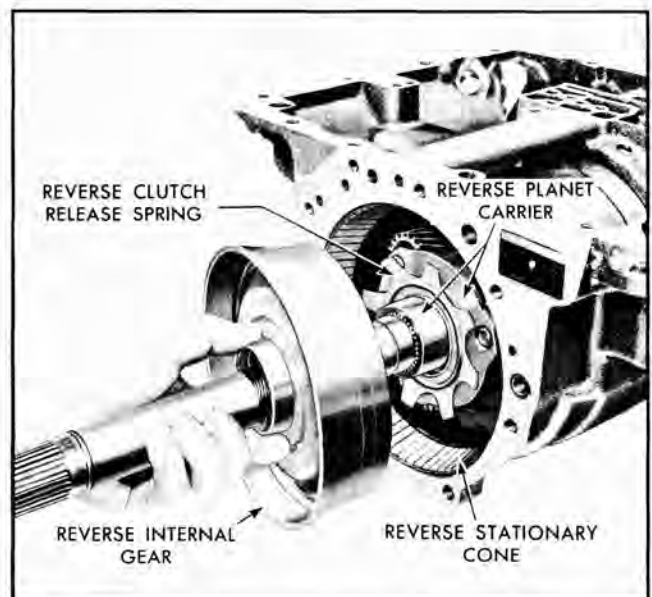


Fig. 152 Installing Reverse Internal Gear

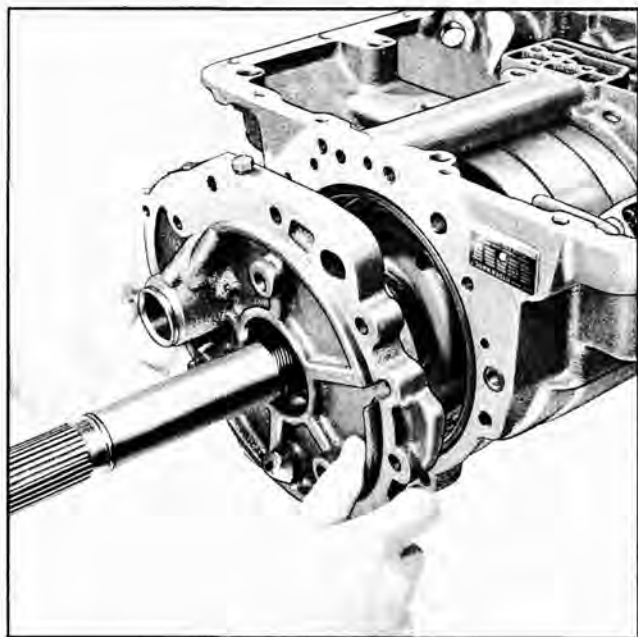


Fig. 153 Installing Reverse Clutch Housing

7. Affix a new gasket to the reverse clutch housing with petrolatum.

8. Install governor feed screen in reverse clutch housing governor feed line.

9. Slide housing over end of output shaft (Fig. 153) and secure to transmission case with one bolt as shown in Fig. 154.

10. Remove rear unit clutch retainer J-6135 from intermediate shaft.

11. Drive rear bearing over output shaft using

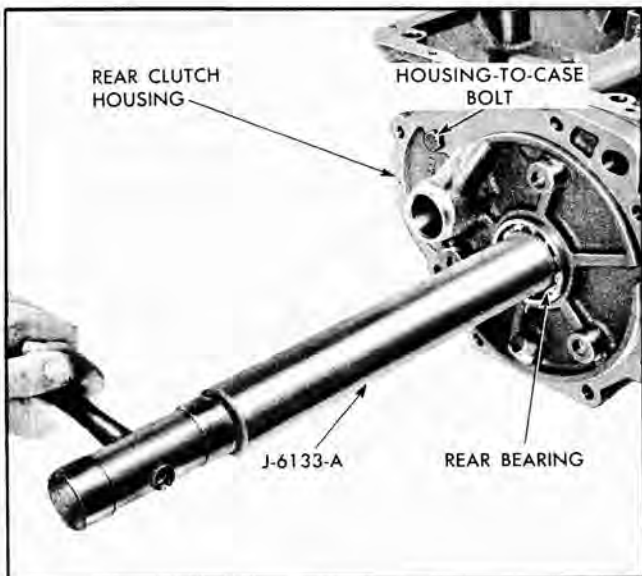


Fig. 154 Installing Rear Bearing

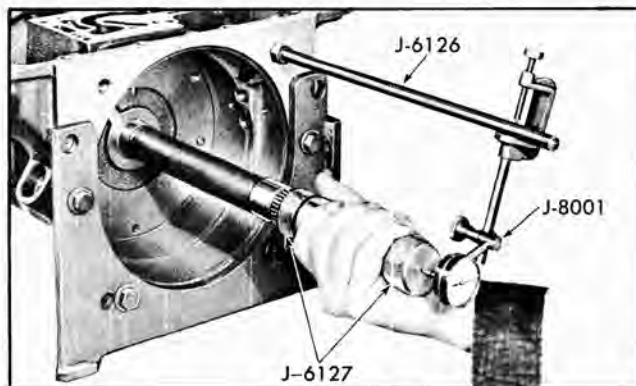


Fig. 155 Checking Mainshaft End Play

bearing installer J-6133-A (Fig. 154) until the snap ring groove on output shaft can be seen behind the rear bearing. If bearing is a slip fit on output shaft, slide snap ring over shaft against bearing, pull shaft rearward and push snap ring into groove (Fig. 156); however, if snap ring will not seat in groove, rotate unit to position output shaft down, then drive snap ring into place with installer J-6133-A.

12. After bearing retaining snap ring is installed in groove of output shaft, install bearing retaining snap ring in reverse clutch housing.

13. Attach extension housing to transmission case with bolt at each long ear.

14. Check main shaft end play as follows:

a. Install dial indicator support J-6126.

b. Install collar of end play checking fixture J-6127 on intermediate shaft and secure in position by in-

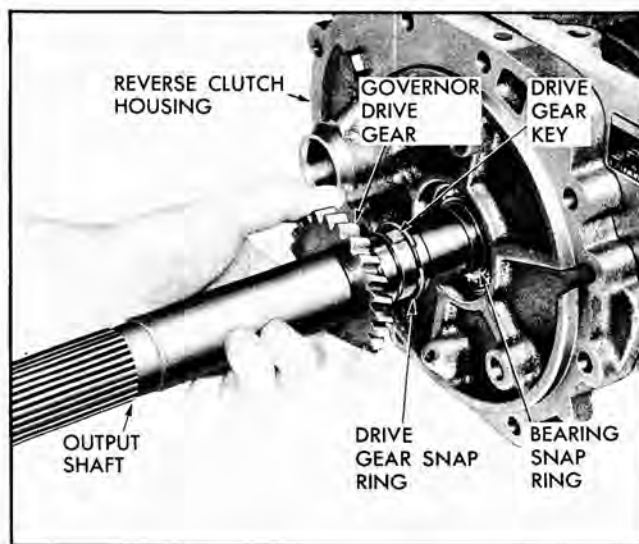


Fig. 156 Installing Governor Drive Gear

stalling Truarc snap ring on main shaft (Fig. 155). Attach fixture to collar by threading fixture securely onto collar.

c. Install J-8001 dial indicator (Fig. 155).

d. Move main shaft back and forth to check end play of main shaft. Be sure to get free main shaft end play. Forcing main shaft will give inaccurate reading.

Subtract end play of rear unit sun gear on mainshaft (page 43) from mainshaft end play. The difference is the actual end play of the rear unit and should be .004"-.013". If reading is outside these limits, it is necessary to remove and disassemble the clutch unit so that the correct thrust washer, as selected from table on page 85, can be installed between the rear unit planet carrier and the reverse drive flange.

e. Remove end play checking tool.

15. Remove extension housing.

16. Install governor drive gear front retaining snap ring.

17. Install governor drive gear key in output shaft.

18. Slide governor drive gear on output shaft, locating slot in gear over key (Fig. 156).

19. Install second snap ring to retain governor drive gear.

20. Install governor in reverse clutch housing as follows:

a. Align gaps of rings in up position.

b. Compress rings by hand and work governor into bore in reverse clutch housing.

21. Affix gasket to reverse clutch housing with



Fig. 157 Installing Rear Oil Seal

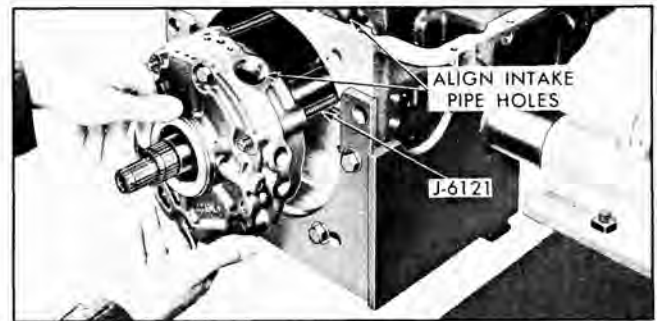


Fig. 158 Installing Pump

petrolatum and slide extension housing over output shaft against reverse clutch housing.

22. Thread seven extension housing bolts into case finger tight.

23. Tighten all bolts to 25 lb. ft. torque.

24. If rear oil seal was removed, coat outer casing of new seal with gasket sealing compound and drive seal into housing with installer J-5154-A (Fig. 157).

25. Install speedometer driven gear assembly.

INSTALL PUMP AND OVERRUN CLUTCH

1. Screw two studs from tool J-6121 into two of the three $\frac{3}{8}$ " x 16 tapped holes in case center support.

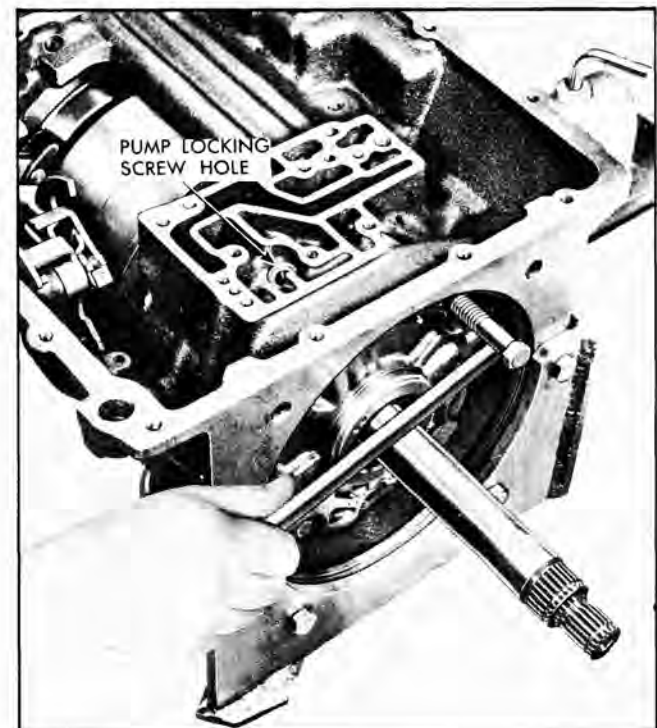


Fig. 159 Rotating Pump and Case Center Support

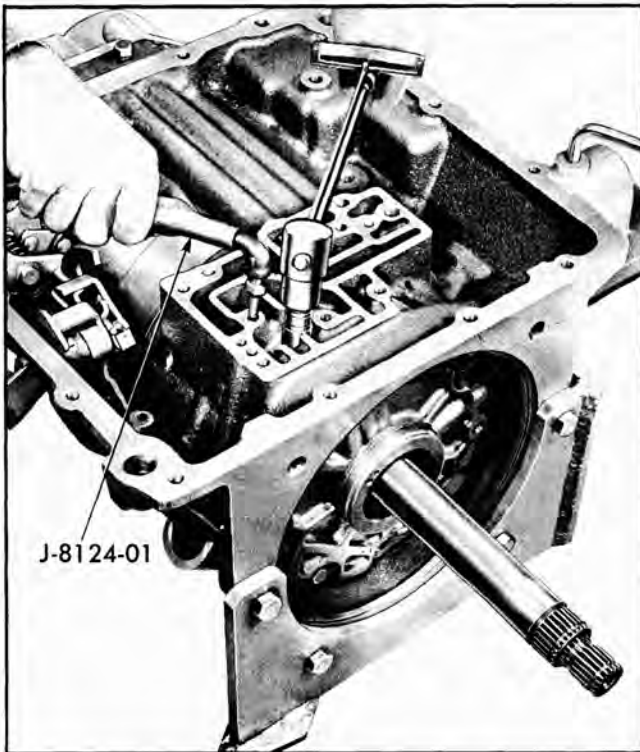


Fig. 160 Applying Air to Position Case Center Support

2. Install the small "O" ring in the rear clutch apply hole in the pump.

3. Pilot pump and overrun clutch assembly over intermediate shaft and studs (Fig. 158) making sure intake pipe holes in pump and case are aligned.

4. Secure pump to case with one screw; then remove two pilot studs and install remaining two screws.

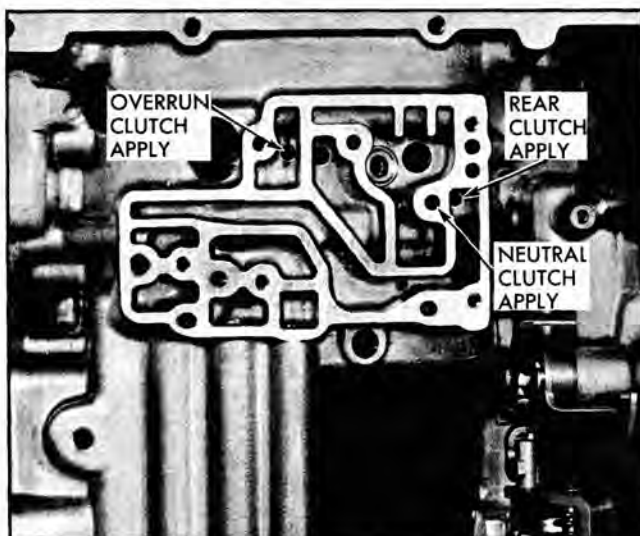


Fig. 161 Air Check Holes



Fig. 162 Installing Pressure Regulator

5. Tighten all three screws then back off $\frac{1}{4}$ turn.

NOTE: If pump locking screw cannot be installed through case and into pump, the pump and center support can be rotated together as required using one pump screw as illustrated in Fig. 159.

6. Apply air pressure in neutral clutch apply hole (Fig. 160) with blow-gun J-8124-01 to position case center support against snap ring. With air pressure applied, tighten pump locking screw to 25 lb. ft. torque. Then tighten pump to case support screws to 25 lb. ft. torque. **NOTE:** Pump locking screw must be tightened first to draw pump tightly against case to ensure there is no leak between pump and case.

7. Recheck pump cover screws to ensure they are tightened securely.

8. The overrun clutch, neutral clutch, and the rear clutch should be checked for proper operation by applying air pressure to their respective apply holes in the case (Fig. 161). If operating properly, a distinctive clunk will be heard when the air pressure is



Fig. 163 Measuring Wear of Coupling Thrust Washer

released and the springs return the clutch pistons to their released positions.

PRESSURE REGULATOR

1. With spring assembled to pressure regulator valve, install valve and spring in case (Fig. 162).

2. Install pressure regulator plug assembly (Fig. 162) and tighten to 5 lb. ft. torque. **CAUTION:** Over-tightening of pressure regulator may push pump away from side of case causing an oil leak between passages in pump and passages in case.

FRONT UNIT COUPLING

1. If front unit coupling has not been disassembled, the condition of the thrust washer between the drive and driven members should be checked. To make this check set the unit on a table, cover end down, so that all end play between the drive and driven members is taken up. Then measure the distance from hub of drive member to the end of splined shaft of the driven member (Fig. 163). If this distance is more than $1\frac{7}{64}$ " the thrust washer is worn and should be replaced.

2. Install front unit coupling in case, cover end first. Rock driven torus shaft to engage splines on shaft and front sprag inner race, and rock drive torus to make sure hub engages pump rotor. Check rotation of front coupling after installation; the driven torus must turn clockwise only, as viewed from the front.

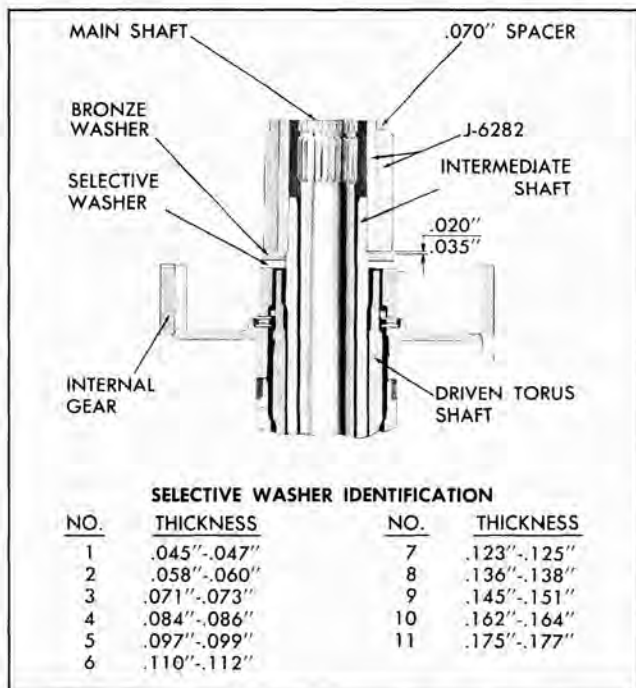


Fig. 164 Front Unit Selective Spacer Chart

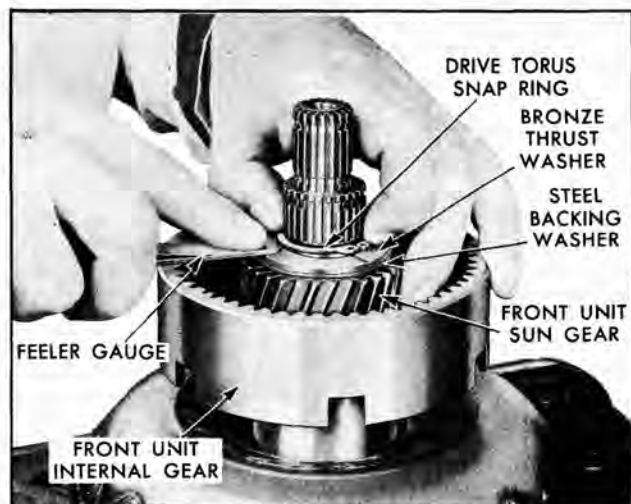


Fig. 165 Measuring Front Unit End Clearance

CAUTION: Install front coupling carefully so as not to break hook type oil rings on driven torus shaft, or on the pump cover neck.

MEASURE FRONT UNIT END CLEARANCE

To control front unit end play a selective spacer is used between the front unit sun gear and the bronze drive torus thrust washer.

Use one of the two methods outlined below to select the correct selective spacer to give a .020"-.035" front unit end clearance.

FEELER GAUGE METHOD

1. Rotate transmission to vertical position with mainshaft up.

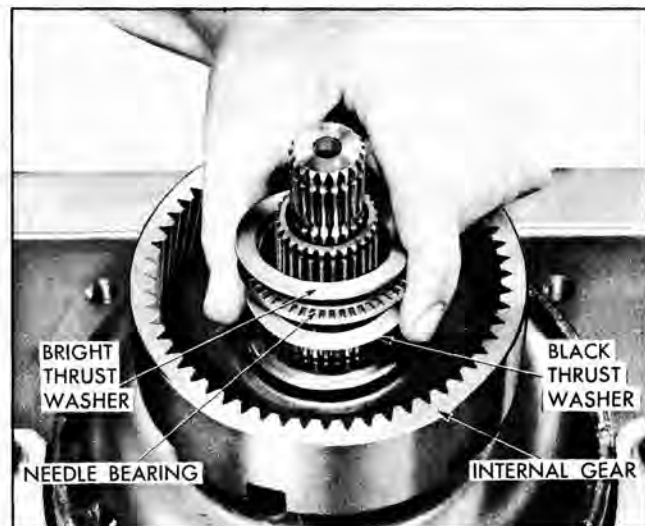


Fig. 166 Installing Internal Gear, Needle Bearing and Washers for Front Unit End Clearance Check

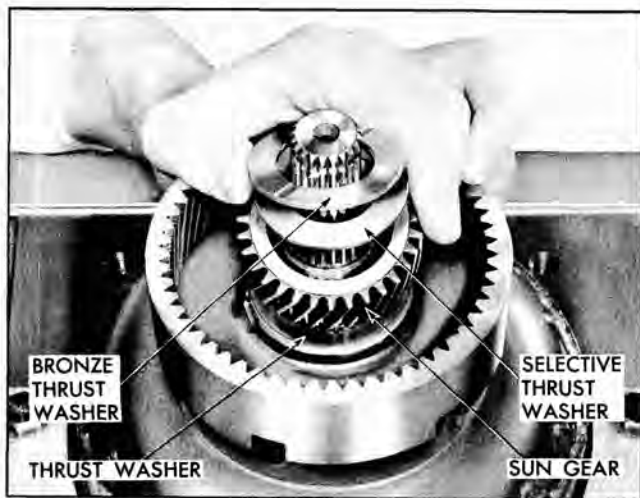


Fig. 167 Installing Sun Gear and Selective Washer for Front Unit End Clearance Check

2. Install front unit internal gear.
3. Install (black) steel thrust washer, needle bearing, and second (bright) steel thrust washer in recess of hub of internal gear.
4. Install snap ring in groove of driven torus shaft.
5. Slide front unit sun gear onto shaft of driven torus.
6. Lay a No. 1 (.046") steel selective washer (spacer) against sun gear followed by bronze thrust washer.
7. Install drive torus snap ring in groove on intermediate shaft next to bronze thrust washer.
8. Push intermediate shaft and sun gear firmly to rear of transmission (Fig. 165) to make sure all end play is taken up.

9. Push snap ring down against rear of groove and very carefully measure clearance between snap ring and bronze thrust washer using a set of feeler gauges (Fig. 165). **CAUTION:** The feeler gauge must be flat against the thrust washer to obtain an accurate reading.

10. Compare measurement found with feeler gauge with the chart in Fig. 164 to determine the correct selective spacer washer to use.

Example: If the feeler gauge measurement is .067", a No. 4 (.084"-.086") selective washer must be used to obtain the desired clearance of .020"-.035". This is determined by adding the mean thickness (.046") of No. 1 washer to gauge reading giving total thickness of .113". Then subtract thickness of No. 4 washer (.085"); this gives .028" which is within desirable clearance.

11. Remove snap ring, sun gear with bronze washer and steel selective spacer, snap ring, and internal gear with steel spacers and roller thrust bearing.

12. Remove front unit coupling.

SPECIAL TOOL METHOD

1. Rotate transmission to the vertical position with the intermediate shaft up.
2. Install front unit internal gear over coupling driven shaft (Fig. 166).
3. Install (black) steel washer needle bearing and second (bright) steel thrust washer over the coupling driven shaft and into recess in internal gear.
4. Install large snap ring over coupling driven shaft.
5. Install front unit sun gear with recessed side over snap ring (Fig. 167).

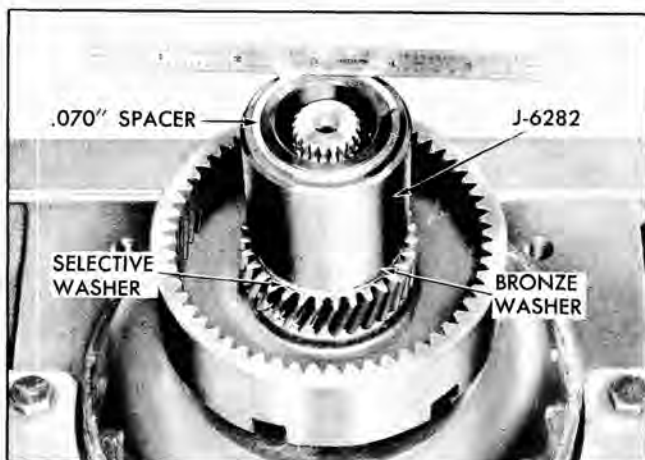


Fig. 168 Selecting Front Unit Spacer Using Special Tool

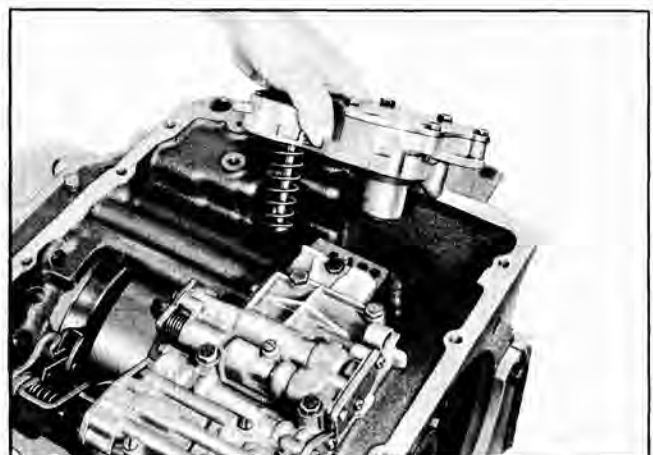


Fig. 169 Installing Servo and Accumulator Assembly

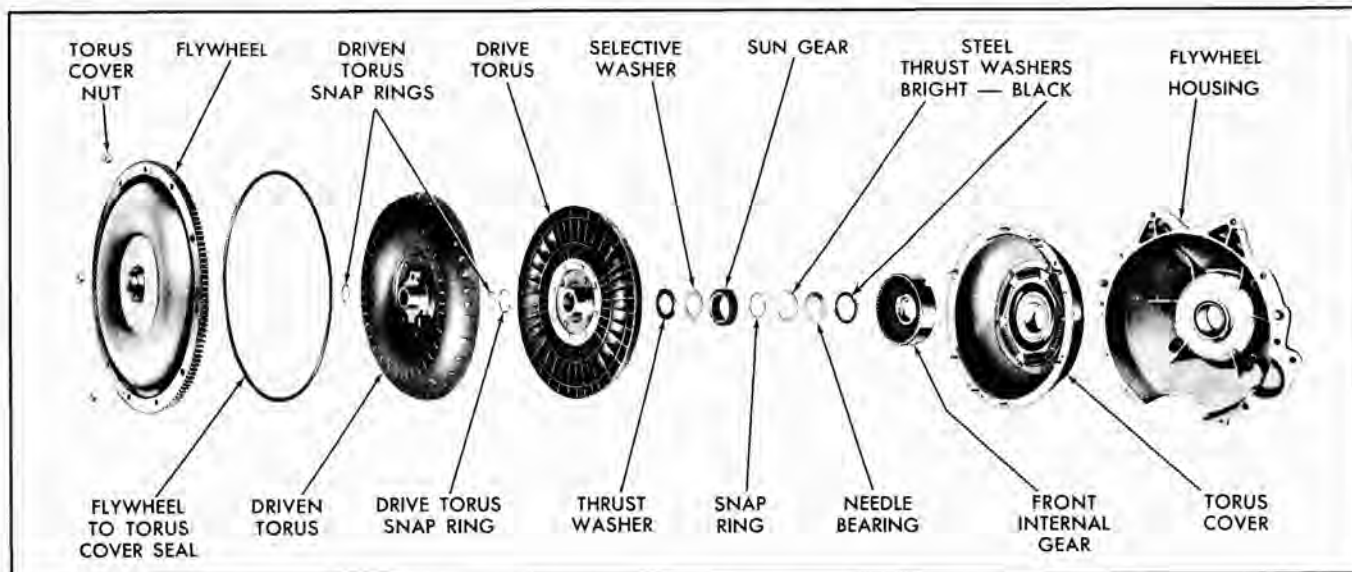


Fig. 170 Flywheel Housing and Torus Parts—Exploded

6. Install steel selective spacer and bronze thrust washer against sun gear.

7. Place end play gauge J-6282 over intermediate shaft (Fig. 168).

8. Place a No. 1 spacer (part number 8616703), on tool and check to see that spacer is flush with inner sleeve of tool. If spacer is not flush, remove tool and bronze thrust washer and replace selective spacer with one of proper size.

9. Remove tool, washers, sun gear, snap ring, and internal gear with washers and bearing.

10. Remove front unit coupling.

CONTROL VALVE ASSEMBLY AND SERVO AND ACCUMULATOR

1. Rotate transmission to horizontal position.
2. Attach control valve assembly to transmission with five attaching screws.

NOTE: Position the detent lever so that pin indexes with the manual valve. The dowel pin in manual body must index with hole provided in the transmission case.

3. Install new "O" rings in the screen and pump if they were not previously installed.

4. Lay the servo and accumulator assembly with servo release spring in position (Fig. 169) and attach to the case with two bolts. Do not tighten the long bolt which also retains the pump intake pipe clip.

5. Insert the intake pipe (dimple end) into the screen being careful not to cut the "O" ring.

6. Insert the other end of pipe in the pump and align the screen with the retaining clip on clutch valve body.

7. Rotate the pipe retaining clip over the pipe and tighten the long servo attaching bolt.

INSTALL INTAKE PIPE, OIL STRAINER, AND OIL PAN

1. Install pump intake pipe in case and secure with clip and valve body attaching screw.
2. Install oil screen on pump intake pipe and screen retaining clip.
3. Install oil pan with new gasket and tighten screws securely.

INSPECT FLYWHEEL HOUSING AND TORUS MEMBERS

1. Inspect torus cover hub bushing in center hole of flywheel housing (Fig. 170) to see that it is not worn excessively or damaged. Replace housing if bushing is damaged. Inspect seal and replace if cracked, hard, or damaged.

2. Inspect seal groove on back side of housing to see that it is not scratched or burred. Clean up any scratches or burrs to prevent possible leakage.

3. Inspect outer diameter of torus cover hub for score marks. Inspect beveled edge just inside flywheel attaching bolts. Carefully remove scratches or burrs to assure proper flywheel to torus cover seal.

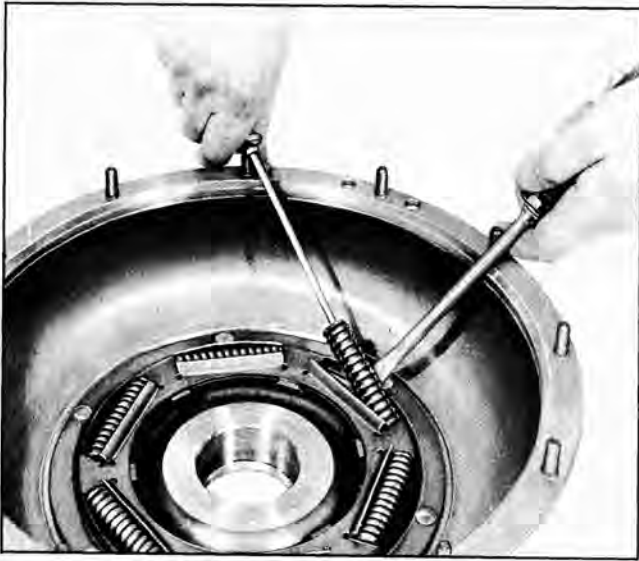


Fig. 171 Removing Torus Cover Damper Spring

4. Check torus cover for leaks.
5. Inspect face on flywheel against which flywheel to torus cover seal bears to make sure there are no scratches or burrs which could cause leakage. Inspect pilot bushing in center of flywheel and pilot on front of flywheel to see that they are not scored or damaged.
6. Inspect front unit internal gear for damaged gear teeth, worn drive lugs or broken welds.
7. Inspect steel spacer and bronze thrust washers for excessive wear.
8. Inspect front unit sun gear splines and gear teeth for excessive wear or damage.
9. Inspect drive torus member. Vanes must be tight



Fig. 172 Installing Torus Cover Damper Spring

and hub must be tight on shell. Check planet carrier for worn or damaged teeth or worn bearings.

10. Inspect driven torus member for loose vanes, worn splines, or damaged bushing.

11. Inspect torus check valve in its bore in driven torus to see that it operates freely. Inspect torus check valve spring for collapsed or distorted coils and proper free length (page 101).

12. Torus cover damper springs may be replaced, if necessary, in following manner:

a. Insert screwdriver in end of spring and twist to raise spring.

b. Place second screwdriver under spring and pry out of cover (Fig. 171).

c. Hook one end of new spring over tang of torus cover drive plate.

d. Using screwdriver, guide other end and press into place with thumb (Fig. 172).

INSTALL FLYWHEEL HOUSING AND TORUS MEMBERS

1. If holding fixture J-6115 is used, remove fixture from bench collet and place on jack or bench in horizontal position with pan down. Remove holding fixture.

If holding fixture J-8763 is used, transmission and fixture may be left in bench collet until entire re-assembly has been completed.

2. Install front unit coupling, rotating driven torus counterclockwise as required to engage shaft splines in splines of front sprag inner race. Also rotate coupling to permit lugs to engage pump rotor.

3. Place protector J-6119 over intermediate shaft (Fig. 173).

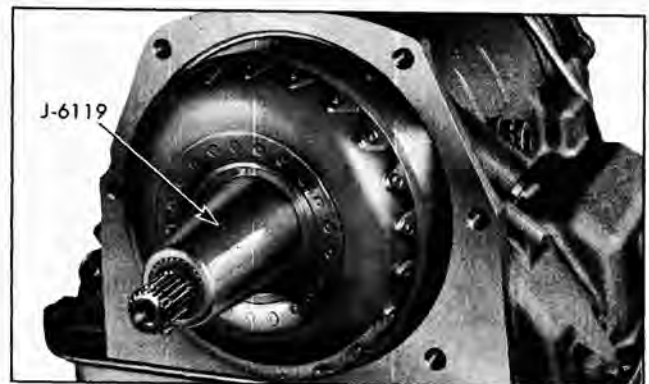


Fig. 173—Flywheel Housing Bushing and Seal Protector

4. Lay new flywheel housing to case "O" ring in groove provided in housing.

5. Pilot flywheel housing into position against case and secure with six bolts, torqued to 40-50 lb. ft.

6. Remove protector J-6119 and apply coat of Hydra-Matic oil to hub of torus cover.

7. Slide torus cover into place carefully so as not to injure flywheel housing oil seal.

8. Install front unit internal gear in torus cover making sure lugs of gear engage those of front coupling drive torus (Fig. 174).

9. Install (black) steel thrust washer, needle bearing and second (bright) steel thrust washer in internal gear (Fig. 174).

10. Secure needle bearing and washers by installing snap ring in groove of front coupling driven torus shaft (Fig. 175).

11. Install sun gear with recess side facing toward needle bearing.

12. Install selective washer as previously determined by front unit end clearance check.

13. Place bronze thrust washer against selective washer.

14. Install drive torus member on intermediate

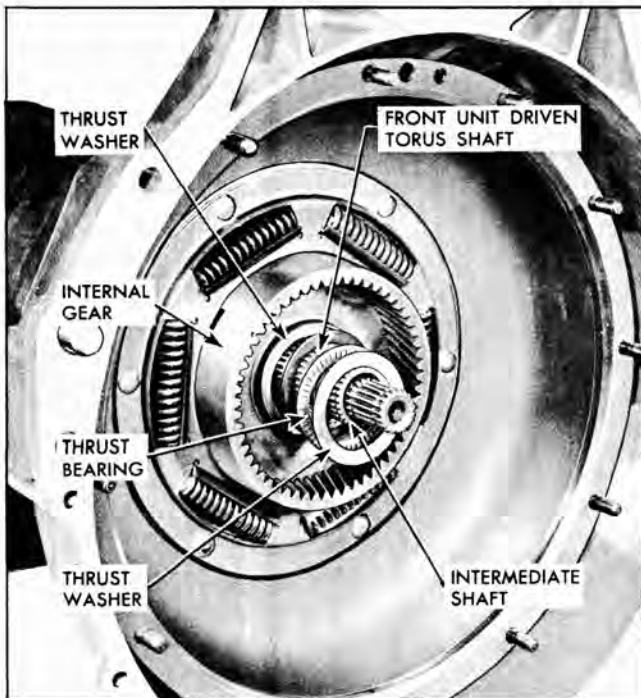


Fig. 174 Installing Front Unit Gear Needle Bearing and Thrust Washer

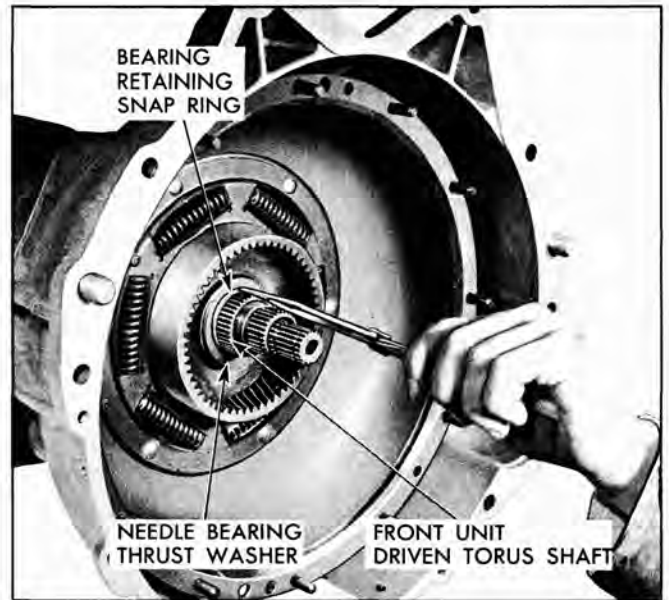


Fig. 175 Installing Bearing Retaining Snap Ring

shaft indexing front unit planet carrier with sun gear and internal gear.

15. Secure drive torus to intermediate shaft with snap ring.

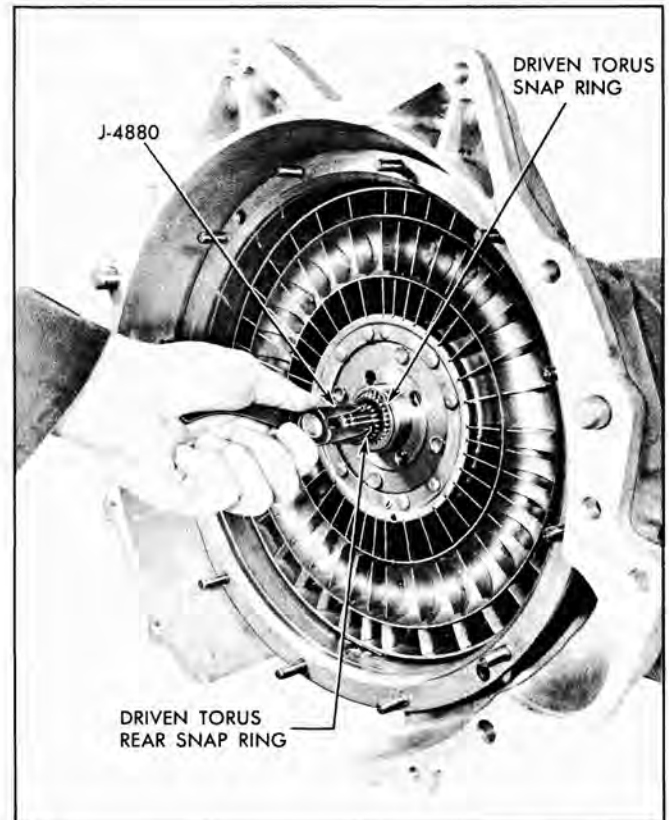


Fig. 176 Installing Driven Torus Rear Snap Ring

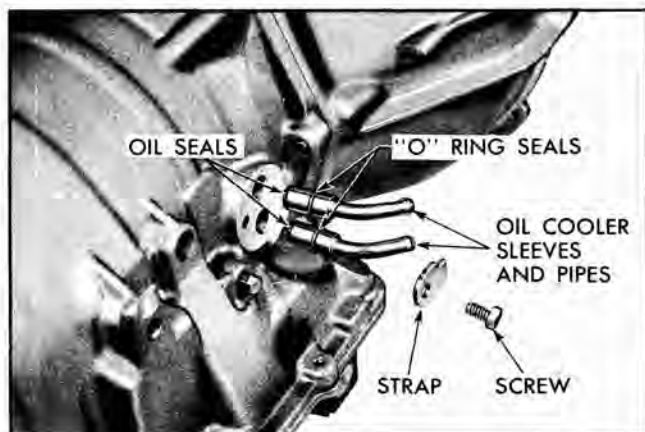


Fig. 177 Oil Cooler Sleeves and Seals

16. Install driven torus rear Truarc snap ring on main shaft (Fig. 176).
17. Install driven torus member on main shaft.
18. Secure driven torus on main shaft with Truarc snap ring.

19. Install "O" ring seal on flywheel and position flywheel against torus cover, indexing with dowels. **NOTE:** The flywheel can be installed in only one position since the dowels are of different sizes.

20. Install six flywheel to torus cover nuts leaving nuts off every second bolt. Tighten nuts to 15-20 lb. ft. torque. The remaining six bolts are used for attaching the flywheel and torus cover to the engine flex plate.

INSTALL OIL COOLER SLEEVES AND TV PIPE PLUG

1. Assemble sleeve seals and "O" rings on oil cooler sleeves (Fig. 177).
2. Insert sleeves in case, seal end first, and bolt strap to case.
3. Install pipe plug in TV pressure take-off tapped hole on right side of case if previously removed.

INSTALLATION OF TRANSMISSION

1. Install breather pipe and pipe clip attaching bolt.
2. Install rear mount on transmission.
3. Raise transmission on special automatic jack until engine flex plate and transmission flywheel and torus cover are at the same level.
4. Move transmission into position engaging flywheel housing dowels into engine and torus cover bolts into flex plate.

5. Install and tighten two flywheel housing attaching screws. **NOTE:** If pilot on flywheel has entered end of crankshaft properly, flywheel and torus cover should move back and forth slightly.

6. Rotate flywheel to bring one flex plate mounting pad down to lowest position. Push flywheel forward lightly to seat it against crankshaft.

7. Measure clearance between pad on flex plate and flywheel with feeler gauge. Clearance should be .015" minimum.

If clearance is less than .015", move transmission away from engine and install special spacer (Gr. 0.666) over flywheel pilot (Fig. 178) and move transmission back into place installing two attaching bolts to hold it forward.

8. Install control rod splash shield, starter, and the rest of the flywheel housing to engine attaching bolts.

9. If not previously done, tighten torus drain plug in flywheel to 6-7 lb. ft. torque using **SIX-POINT SOCKET**.

10. Install nuts which retain flex plate to flywheel and torus cover and tighten to 15 lb. ft. torque using torque wrench with extension J-6498 (Fig 179).

11. Install flywheel housing cover with three attaching bolts.

12. Install both wires on starter.

13. Raise transmission as far as necessary and install frame crossmember in the frame. Before locating crossmember in final position, install parking brake cable guide rod and parking brake return spring to frame crossmember. Brake cables go above crossmember.

14. Attach crossmember with two attaching bolts at each end.

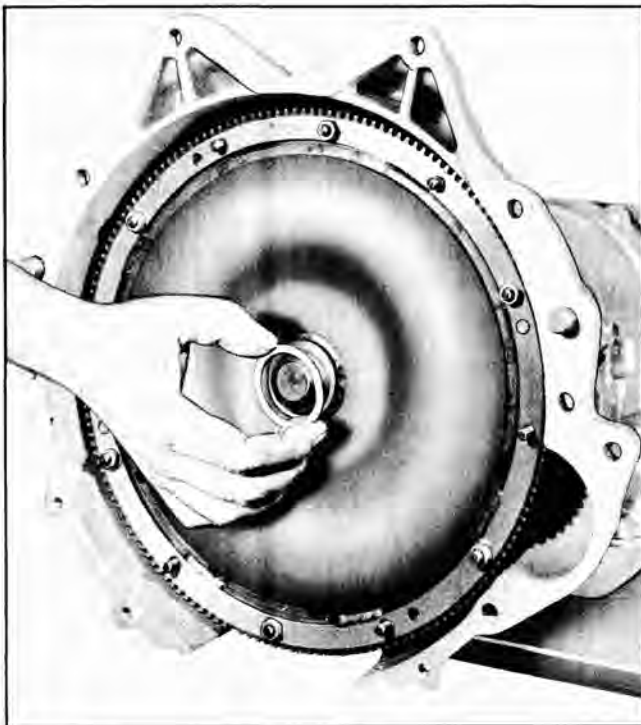


Fig. 178 Installing Spacer on Flywheel Pilot



Fig. 179 Using Torque Wrench Extension J-6498

15. Lower the transmission so that the two rear mount support studs go through the crossmember bracket. Install nuts. Remove transmission jack.

16. Slide propeller shaft onto transmission output shaft.

17. Remove tape or rubber band from U-joint bearings and assemble U-joint. Bend locking plate.

18. Attach oil cooler lines using new hoses if necessary.

19. Install throttle idler lever.

20. Install T.V. upper control rod and T.V. lower control rod.

21. Install gearshift cross shaft lever and its mounting bracket.

22. Install gearshift lower control rod.

23. Connect speedometer cable.

24. Connect filler pipe to oil pan.

After car has been lowered from hoist, connect the battery cable that was removed.

Refill transmission with fluid as described on page 41 and adjust T.V. linkage as described on page 36.

TESTING AND DIAGNOSIS

CONTENTS OF THIS SECTION

| SUBJECT | PAGE | SUBJECT | PAGE |
|-------------------------|------|-----------------------|------|
| Oil Pressure Test | 92 | Diagnosis Guide | 93 |
| Road Test | 92 | | |

TESTING AND DIAGNOSING OPERATING CONDITIONS

Before any testing or diagnosis is attempted, fluid level must be checked as outlined on page 38 and brought to the proper level. Insufficient fluid can cause slipping, jerking, erratic shifting, etc. Excessive fluid will promote leakage and foaming.

OIL PRESSURE TEST

1. Connect Oil Pressure Gauge J-5907 to take-off hole at bottom of reverse clutch housing (Fig. 180).
2. Start engine and operate for several minutes to warm transmission oil to normal operating temperature (approx. 175° F.).
3. When transmission is thoroughly warm, check pressure in all ranges. Pressure should be 50 lbs. minimum in P, N, both DR ranges and L (low) with a maximum variation of 10 lbs. between ranges, but may be higher in reverse.
4. Drive car on road and check pressure in DR right position at approximately 25 mph. Pressure should be 90-100 psi. NOTE: Pressure at any speed is constant regardless of throttle position.

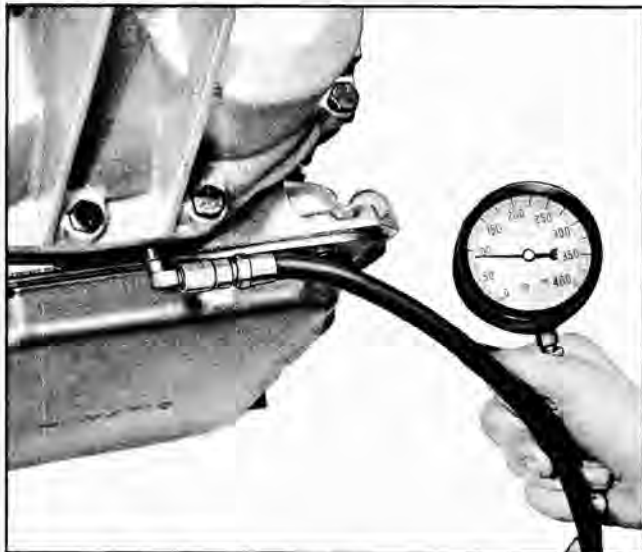


Fig. 180 Gauge Attached for Oil Pressure Test

5. While driving at 25 mph move selector back to DR left position so transmission will shift into fourth speed. Oil pressure should drop to 60-70 psi in fourth. NOTE: To reduce the amount of work done by the front pump, pressure is directed from the 3-4 shift valve to the pressure regulator to reduce line pressure in fourth speed when in the DR left position. In DR right position line pressure remains at 90-100 psi in fourth speed.

6. Check pressure in reverse as follows:
 - a. Stop car and set hand brake firmly.
 - b. Place selector lever in R (reverse), apply foot brake and open accelerator to half throttle. Pressure should increase to 150 to 200 lbs.

Diagnosis of malfunctions can frequently be aided by noting oil pressure under all operating conditions while driving on the road.

ROAD TEST FOR DIAGNOSIS OF MALFUNCTIONS

A predetermined test route should be established to save time and permit comparison of different cars over the same route. Where possible the route should be laid out to include a hilly section to test for full throttle upshift, slippage and throttle downshifts, a level section for testing upshift points and a quiet section for testing for noise. When a chassis dynamometer is available, it may be used as a substitute for the road test.

It will be observed that the closed throttle downshifts in DR left and the 3-2 downshift in DR right cannot be distinguished. The reason is that in DR left the sprags in both units free wheel when power input is from the rear wheels. The free wheeling of the front unit is eliminated in DR right by the use of the over-run clutch in order to provide engine braking on hills or whenever desirable. In L (low) range the Lo band applies to prevent free wheeling of the rear sprag and provide further engine braking.

If possible a pressure gauge should be installed and pressure should be checked in all speeds while car is being operated on road.

Shift speeds should be checked according to Fig. 181.

Abnormal operating conditions should be noted

during road test. Always write down the conditions noted or check them on the **Diagnosis Guide**. Diagnosis may be aided by referring to the schematic oil circuit diagram (Fig. 182).

INSTRUCTIONS FOR USING DIAGNOSIS GUIDE

1. Before testing the operation of the transmission, check fluid for proper level with transmission warm and engine operating at normal idle speed (see page 38). Fluid must be at proper level before testing.

2. Connect pressure gauge before road testing so that pressures can be observed during road test.

3. When checking shift points keep in mind that

there may be a slight variation from the speeds shown in the shift speed chart (Fig. 181). Slight variations are no cause for adjustment providing shifts are smooth.

4. During road test record conditions observed so that they can be diagnosed accurately using the **Diagnosis Guide**.

UPSHIFTS

| Shift | Left Drive Range | | Right Drive Range | | Lo Range | |
|-------|------------------|---------------|-------------------|---------------|------------------|---------------|
| | Minimum Throttle | Full Throttle | Minimum Throttle | Full Throttle | Minimum Throttle | Full Throttle |
| 1-2 | 5-9 | 11-15 | 5-9 | 11-15 | 4-9 | 11-15 |
| 2-3 | 11-15 | 39-43 | 11-15 | 39-43 | — | 47-54 |
| 3-4 | 21-25 | 65-75 | — | 74-80 | — | 74-80 |

DOWNSHIFTS

| Shift | Left Drive Range | | Right Drive Range | | Lo Range | |
|-------|------------------|----------------------|-------------------|----------------------|-----------------|----------------------|
| | Closed Throttle | Full Throttle Forced | Closed Throttle | Full Throttle Forced | Closed Throttle | Full Throttle Forced |
| 4-3 | 18-15* | 70-33 | 74-68 | 74-28 | 70-60 | 70-28 |
| 3-2 | 10-6* | 25-14 | 10-6 | 25-14 | 48-44 | 48-44 |
| 2-1 | 8-3* | 12-3 | 8-3* | 12-3 | 8-3 | 12-3 |

Fig. 181 Shift Speed Chart

The term "Minimum Throttle" denotes a fixed throttle opening only sufficient to provide acceleration enough to accomplish each of the shifts. The transmission should shift within the limits indicated in the columns under the heading "Minimum Throttle."

The conditions under which downshifts occur are as follows: (1) Closed throttle: When the accelerator pedal is in the released position and the car is coasting gradually losing speed. (2) Forced: When the

accelerator pedal is fully depressed through the detent to full throttle. NOTE: When driving in the left drive range in fourth speed at about 35 mph or less, partially depressing the accelerator pedal will cause the fourth to third downshift.

*When this shift occurs, the transmission will free-wheel; therefore, it is impossible to observe shift with throttle closed. To check for shift, decelerate, with throttle closed to specified speed, then accelerate to determine which speed transmission is in.

DIAGNOSIS GUIDE

A. *SLIPS IN 1ST AND 3RD*

1. Front sprag clutch slipping
2. Front sprag clutch broken

B. *SLIPS IN OR MISSES 2ND AND 4TH*

1. Front unit torus cover seals leaking
2. Front unit torus cover exhaust valves sticking or missing
3. Front unit torus cover feed restriction or leak
4. Front unit torus cover signal restriction or leak
5. Low oil pressure
6. Coupling valve sticking
7. Sticking valves or dirt in valve body
8. Coupling snap ring improperly installed, or missing
9. Limit valve
10. Coupling passage restricted or leaking
11. Front unit torus vanes damaged

C. *SLIPS IN ALL DR RANGES*

1. Manual linkage
2. Neutral clutch slipping or burned
3. Neutral clutch apply restricted or leaking (case support or valve body)
4. Incorrect number of neutral clutch plates
5. Low oil pressure
6. Control valve
7. Torus members (check valve)
8. Intake pipe "O" ring damaged or missing
9. Pressure regulator valve stuck in pump
10. Pump slide stuck

D. *SLIPS IN 1ST AND 2ND (DR RANGE)*

1. Rear sprag clutch slipping or improperly assembled
2. Rear sprag clutch broken
3. Neutral clutch
 - a. Burned
 - b. Restricted
 - c. Piston sticking

E. *SLIPS IN 3RD AND 4TH*

1. Rear unit clutch slipping or burned
2. Rear unit clutch apply restricted or "O" ring leaking
3. Incorrect number of clutch plates (rear)
4. Accumulator
5. Center support, leak at 2-3 passage
6. Low oil pressure
7. Accumulator valve stuck—3rd only

F. *SLIPS IN 3RD IN DR RIGHT ON COAST*

1. Overrun clutch slipping or burned
2. Overrun clutch apply restricted or leaking
3. Sticking valves or dirt in valve body
4. Overrun clutch passages restricted or leaking

G. *SLIPS IN 1ST AND 2ND IN LO RANGE ON COAST*

1. Low servo apply restricted or leaking
2. Lo band not anchored to case or broken
3. Low servo piston and rod binding in case or servo and accumulator body
4. Band facing worn or loose
5. Anchor dowel pin loose or missing in case

H. *NO DRIVE IN DR RANGE*

1. Manual linkage incorrectly adjusted
2. Manual valve not engaged with drive pin
3. Low oil pressure
4. Pressure regulator stuck
5. Pump intake pipe improperly installed
6. Front sprag broken
 - a. Pump bushing
 - b. Front unit drive torus shaft
7. Front and/or rear sprag incorrectly installed
8. Rear sprag broken
9. Front sprag inner race broken
10. Rear sprag outer race broken
11. Neutral clutch plates burned
12. Neutral clutch piston
13. Control valve
14. Pump

I. NO UPSHIFTS OR ERRATIC

1. Governor valves stuck
2. Broken governor rings
3. Sticking valves or dirt in valve body
4. G-2 bushing turned

J. MISSES 2ND

1. Governor boost valve stuck closed
2. Transition valve stuck away from plate
3. Sticking valves or dirt in valve body
4. Governor sticking

K. MISSES 3RD—OR 2-4-3

1. Transition valve sticking
2. Sticking valves or dirt in valve body
3. TV adjustment—too long
4. Rear clutch
5. Transition valve spring

L. LOCKS UP IN 2ND AND 4TH

1. Front sprag clutch broken or reversed.
2. Overrun clutch applied or sticking

M. LOCKS UP IN 3RD AND 4TH

1. Rear sprag clutch broken
2. Lo band not releasing

N. ROUGH 2-3

1. Accumulator valve stuck
2. Accumulator piston stuck
3. Accumulator gasket broken or leaking
4. Restricted or leaking oil passages
5. Broken accumulator spring
6. Broken or leaking piston oil seal rings
7. Control valve
8. TV adjusted incorrectly
9. Rear clutch pack
10. Case passages
 - a. TV oil
 - b. 2-3 oil
 - c. Leaks or restrictions

O. UPSHIFTS HIGH

1. Throttle linkage adjusted short
2. Governor valves sticking
3. Broken governor rings
4. Sticking valves or dirt in valve body
5. Leaking or restricted main line feed to governor

P. UPSHIFTS LOW

1. Throttle linkage adjusted long
2. Governor valves sticking
3. Broken governor rings
4. Sticking valves or dirt in valve body
5. Leaking TV oil

Q. NO REVERSE, SLIPS OR LOCKS UP

1. Manual linkage incorrectly adjusted
2. Manual valve not engaged with drive pin
3. Reverse piston apply restricted or leaking
4. Low oil pressure
5. Pressure regulator
6. Neutral clutch not released
7. Flash restricting neutral clutch exhaust port on manual body

R. SELECTOR LEVER WILL NOT GO INTO REVERSE

1. Governor valves sticking
2. Broken governor rings
3. Reverse blocker piston stuck
4. Manual linkage interference

S. REVERSE DRIVE IN NEUTRAL

1. Reverse stationary cone sticking

T. DELAYED 1-2

1. Coupling valve sticking
2. Governor boost valve sticking
3. G-1 valve sticking
4. Wrong spring on coupling valve

U. DRIVE IN LO RANGE ONLY

1. Rear sprag broken
2. Neutral clutch not applying

V. NO FORCED DOWNSHIFTS 4-3 OR 3-2

1. Control valve
2. Linkage

W. 2-3 RUNAWAY OR 2-1-3

1. 2-3 passage in center bearing support
2. Plug out of accumulator
3. Rear clutch burned
4. Valve body
 - a. Transition valve
 - b. Case passages—2-3 circuit

X. WILL NOT GO INTO PARK

1. Parking links broken
2. Interference—parking mechanical
3. Linkage—manual
4. Parking pawl

Y. STARTS IN 2ND SPEED

1. Valves sticking
2. Governor sticking
3. Governor boost valve stuck

Z-1 DRIVES FORWARD IN REVERSE AND NEUTRAL

1. Neutral clutch piston stuck in applied position

Z-2 LUNGES FORWARD BEFORE BACK UP WHEN PLACING SELECTOR IN REVERSE

1. G-2 plunger stuck in the outward position
2. Restricted neutral clutch release oil

NOISE DIAGNOSIS**Occurs Under Following Conditions**

1. P, N, R, DR 1st and 3rd
2. P, N, R, DR 1st and 2nd
3. All Ranges, especially during warm up
4. 1-2 and 3-4 with hot oil
5. All Ranges—loaded only in reverse
6. Clicking (Low speed forward)
7. Buzzing
8. Rattle or buzz under light load in 3rd and 4th
9. Squeak when engaging reverse
10. Vibration

Possible Cause

- Front unit planetary gears
- Rear unit planetary gears
- Pump noisy
 - Cut "O" Ring on intake pipe
 - Cut "O" Ring on cooler sleeves
- Front unit coupling leaks
- Reverse planetary gears
- Pressure regulator
- Low oil pressure or level
- Coupling valve
- Governor
- Pressure regulator
- Oil pressure
- TV valve
- Rear bearing (approx. 35 mph)
- Torus cover—damper spring
- Low oil pressure or leak in front clutch overrun piston, rear pump
- Flywheel balance
- Torus cover balance
- Front unit assembly balance
- Rear brake drum balance

OIL LEAKS

Before attempting to correct an oil leak, the actual source of the leak must be determined. In many cases the source of the leak can be deceiving due to "wind flow" around the engine and transmission. If any doubt exists as to the source of the leak there are two ways to determine it.

1. RED DYE

The addition of red dye to the transmission oil will indicate if the leak is from the transmission.

2. BLACK LIGHT

The use of a "Black Light"* to identify the oil from the leak is also suitable. Comparing the oil from the leak to that on the engine or transmission dip stick when viewed by black light will determine the source of the leak.

*A "Black Light" testing unit may be obtained from several different service tool suppliers.

Oil leaks around the engine and transmission are generally carried toward the rear of the car. For example, a transmission "oil filler tube to oil pan leak" will sometimes appear as a leak at the rear of the transmission.

1. OIL PAN

- a. Improperly installed or damaged gasket.
- b. Attaching bolts not torqued to specifications.
- c. Oil filler pipe not tight.
- d. Pan not flat.

2. EXTENSION HOUSING

- a. Rear seal not installed properly or damaged.
- b. Gasket (extension housing to rear clutch) improperly installed.
- c. Gasket (rear clutch housing to case) improperly installed.

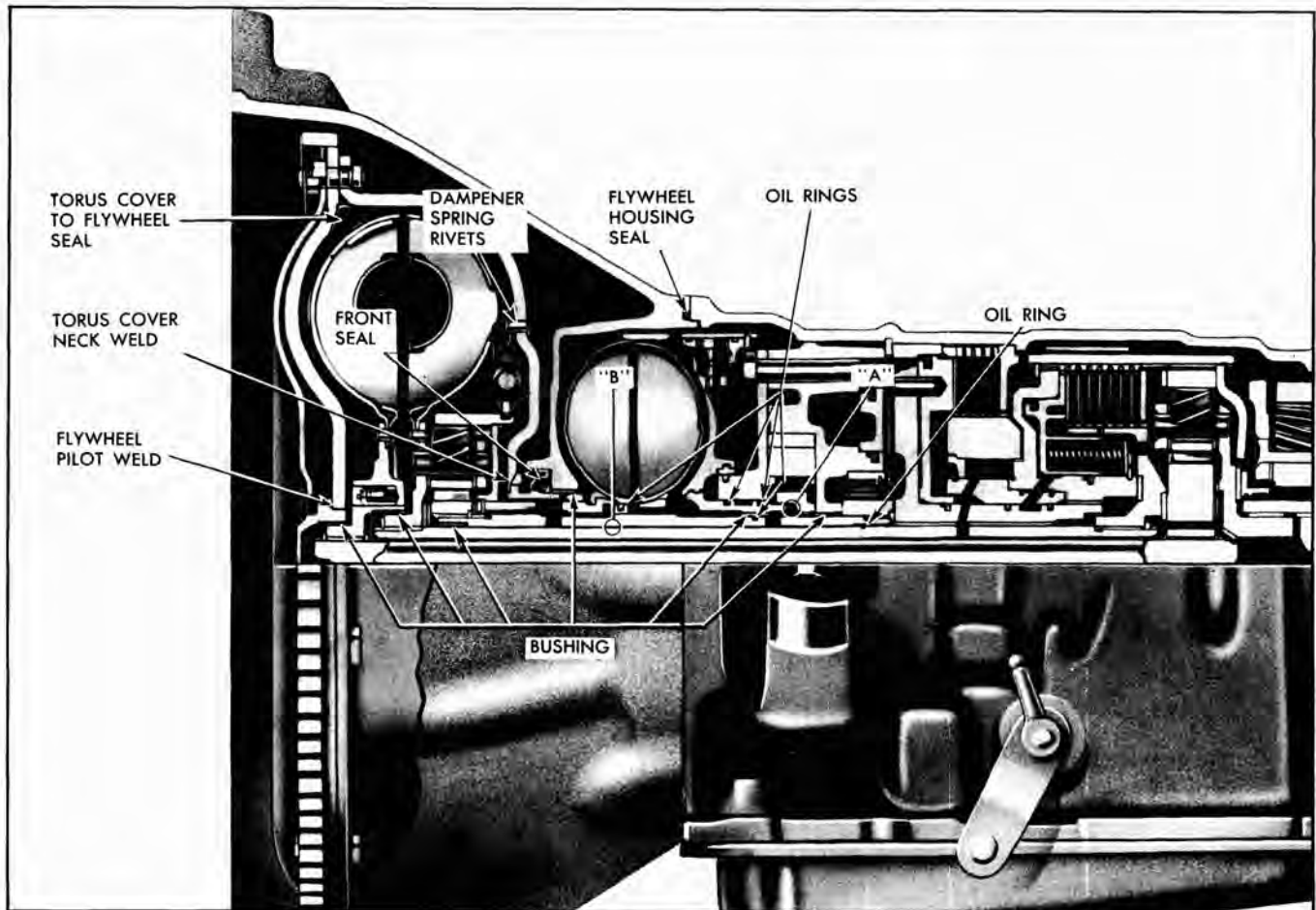


Fig. 183 Possible Points of Fluid Leak

- d. Rear clutch housing and extension housing attaching bolts not torqued to specifications.
- e. Breather pipe not tight.
- f. Speedometer driven gear not tight.
- g. Porous casting.
- h. Line pressure plug not tight.

3. INNER TV LEVER

Poor seal resulting from improper assembly of "O" rings and washers.

4. COOLER CONNECTION

- a. Sleeve seals.
- b. "O" rings on sleeves.

5. FRONT END

- a. Torus drain plug loose or improperly installed.
- b. Torus cover to flywheel seal improperly installed or damaged. Check for possible obstruction at the point where the flywheel seal retainer joins the flywheel.
- c. Flywheel bolts not torqued to specifications.

- d. Front seal incorrectly installed or damaged. When installing a new front seal, make sure the bore is free from staking material and that the garter spring on the seal is correctly positioned. Also check the torus cover neck finish and the bushing in flywheel housing.
- e. Inspect the flywheel housing for porosity or sand holes.
- f. Flywheel housing to case seal improperly installed or damaged. Seal groove depth too great.
- g. Loose flywheel housing bolts.
- h. Inspect weld at torus cover neck for possible leak. Check for possibility of leaks at damper spring rivets.
- i. Remove all sealer material from flywheel and torus cover faces.
- j. Engine rear main bearing, oil filter, rocker arm cover.
- k. Flywheel pilot weld leaking.
- l. Case cracked, porosity or loose support bolt.
- m. Cut "O" ring on pressure regulator.

DIAGNOSIS AND CORRECTION OF TORUS DRAIN BACK

Occasionally a Hydra-Matic transmission is encountered which will not drive the car for several seconds after the engine is started. This condition is usually noticed when the car has been parked for a considerable time, such as overnight.

The momentary failure to drive may be caused by the fact that a large portion of the fluid has drained back from the main fluid coupling. Since the points of leakage which have caused the fluid to drain back will also leak when the coupling is being filled, there will be a delay in refilling the coupling when the engine is started. As soon as the coupling is filled, it will function satisfactorily until it has again been parked for several hours.

To become familiar with the points at which leakage or drain back can occur, it is necessary to understand the flow of oil to the main fluid coupling. Actually the same bushings and oil rings which cause drain back are those which will cause leakage when the coupling is being filled.

TORUS FEED

Torus feed oil which originates at the pump passes

through the torus feed valve to the oil cooler and then back through the pump cover to emerge into the torus supply line at "A" in Fig. 183. The oil then passes around the rear end of the front unit coupling cover, through holes in the front unit driven torus shaft, and into space "B" around the intermediate shaft.

Oil passes forward along the outer diameter of the intermediate shaft to the holes near the front of the front unit coupling driven torus shaft. From there the oil passes up around the front end of the front unit coupling drive torus hub, between the hub of the internal gear and the hub of the torus cover, and into the main torus.

When the torus has filled completely and develops a pressure of approximately 30 lbs., the torus check valve opens, allowing oil to flow along the mainshaft for lubrication.

POSSIBLE POINTS OF DRAINBACK

Careful study of Fig. 183 will reveal the bushings and oil rings which control the flow of oil from the pump to the torus members. They are as follows:

AREA "A"

Oil is sealed from leaking out of area "A" by the rear oil ring on the hub of the front unit coupling cover and the bushing on the inside of the same hub, the hook type oil ring on the front unit driven torus shaft, and the bushings in the pump body and rotor.

AREA "B"

Area "B" is sealed at the rear by the hook type oil ring on the intermediate shaft just in front of the case center support. At the front it is sealed by the bushing inside the front of the front unit coupling driven torus shaft.

torus check valve, and by the bushing in the hub of the driven torus member.

PUMP AND OIL COOLER SLEEVE SEALS

Two additional areas of possible trouble which are not shown are the torus feed valve in the pump and the oil cooler sleeve seals. If the torus feed valve should stick closed, it would cut off the feed to the torus entirely. If it should stick open the torus oil will drain back very rapidly.

While it is considered that oil is sealed by the above mentioned bushings and oil rings, actually there are "controlled leaks" at all these points. If the clearances become excessive, however, due to wear or damage, the leaks can become great enough to impair the filling of the torus. The result will be excessive drain back, slow filling, and a delay in drive after starting the engine.

FLUID COUPLING

The fluid coupling is sealed (internally) by the pilot bushing inside the hub of the flywheel, by the

SPECIFICATIONS

GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS

| | |
|--|--------------|
| Rear Unit End Play (Mainshaft end play minus rear unit sun gear to mainshaft end play) | .004"- .013" |
| Front Unit End Play | .021"- .033" |

GEAR RATIOS

| | |
|-----------------|--------|
| 1st speed | 3.97:1 |
| 2nd speed | 2.55:1 |
| 3rd speed | 1.55:1 |
| 4th speed | 1.00:1 |
| Reverse | 3.74:1 |

FLUID

| | |
|---|--|
| Type | Automatic Transmission Fluid (Type A) bearing Armour Institute qualification no. "AQ-ATF." |
| Capacity—Refill (after drain) | Approx. 9 qts.* |
| —Refill (after overhaul) | Approx. 10½ qts.* |
| Change Transmission Oil and strainer screen every | 25,000 miles |

*Correct amount of fluid should always be determined by indication on oil level indicator with transmission warm, car level, and engine idling with control lever in P (park).

SPRING SPECIFICATIONS

| Name | Approx. Free Length | No. of Coils | Diameter | Color |
|------------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------|----------|-----------|
| Pump | | | | |
| Oil Cooler By-Pass Valve | .54 | 8 | .245 | Copper Fl |
| Priming (Inner) | .52 | 5 LH | .465 | Plain |
| Priming (Outer) | .86 | 6 $\frac{3}{4}$ RH | .605 | Plain |
| Torus Feed Valve | .63 | 8 | .310 | Plain |
| Rear Clutch Release | 1.58 | 14 | .440 | Plain |
| Servo and Accumulator | | | | |
| Accumulator Valve P, PB | .68 | 10 $\frac{1}{2}$ | .250 | Yellow |
| Accumulator Valve PE | .59 | 9 $\frac{1}{2}$ | .250 | Cad. Fl |
| Accumulator Valve PA | .70 | 12 $\frac{1}{2}$ | .220 | Plain |
| Accumulator P | 2.90 | 10 $\frac{1}{2}$ | 1.100 | Plain |
| Accumulator PB | 2.60 | 9 | 1.100 | Yellow |
| Accumulator PE, PA | 2.66 | 10 $\frac{1}{2}$ | 1.100 | Purple |
| Servo | 3.22 | 11 | 1.000 | Plain |
| Pressure Regulator P, PB, PE | 2.17 | 14 | .590 | Plain |
| Pressure Regulator PA | 2.19 | 14 | .590 | Copper Fl |
| Front Coupling Exhaust Valve | .72 | 7 | .340 | Plain |
| Torus Check Valve | .69 | 14 | .187 | Plain |
| Control Valve Assembly | | | | |
| Clutch Valve | | | | |
| Coupling Valve P, PB, PE | 1.32 | 12 | .380 | Copper Fl |
| Coupling Valve PA | 1.72 | 14 $\frac{1}{2}$ | .380 | Copper Fl |
| Limit Valve (Inner) | 2.03 | 23 $\frac{1}{2}$ | .350 | Plain |
| Limit Valve (Outer) | 2.79 | 19 | .590 | Plain |
| Transition Valve | .98 | 15 $\frac{1}{2}$ | .260 | Plain |
| Shift Valve | | | | |
| Neutral Clutch Valve | 1.04 | 17 | .250 | Red |
| 2-3 TV Valve (Inner) P, PB | .87 | 11 $\frac{1}{2}$ | .300 | Plain |
| 2-3 TV Valve (Inner) PE | .80 | 10 $\frac{1}{2}$ | .310 | Red |
| 2-3 TV Valve (Inner) PA | .85 | 11 $\frac{1}{2}$ | .260 | Green |
| 2-3 Shift (Outer) P, PB | 1.17 | 9 | .580 | Copper Fl |
| 2-3 Shift (Outer) PE | 1.49 | 9 | .580 | Copper Fl |
| 2-3 Shift (Outer) PA | 1.70 | 9 | .590 | Red |
| 3-4 TV Valve P, PB, PE | 1.10 | 9 $\frac{1}{2}$ | .390 | Grey |
| 3-4 TV Valve PA | 1.03 | 9 $\frac{1}{2}$ | .390 | Copper Fl |
| 3-4 Shift Valve PA | 1.18 | 12 | .500 | Plain |
| Manual Valve | | | | |
| Throttle Valve | 1.68 | 17 | .390 | Plain |
| Detent Valve | .80 | 8 $\frac{1}{2}$ | .350 | Copper Fl |
| Reverse Blocker Piston | 1.44 | 16 | .320 | Plain |
| Torus Cover Damper (Red) | 2.54 | 14 | .638 | Red |
| Torus Cover Damper (Black) | 2.60 | 14 | .638 | Plain |
| Pressure Drop Signal | .65 | 8 $\frac{1}{2}$ | .290 | Copper Fl |

THRUST WASHER SPECIFICATIONS

| <u>Key</u> | <u>Location</u> | <u>Part No.</u> | <u>O.D.</u> | <u>I.D.</u> | <u>Thickness</u> | <u>Material</u> | <u>Finish or Ident. No.</u> |
|------------|---|-----------------|-----------------------|--------------|------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 | Front Sun Gear to Carrier Thrust Washer | 8616091 | 2.020 | 1.258 | .089 | Bronze | |
| | | 8618319 | 2.040 | 1.258 | .046 | Steel | 1 |
| | | 8618320 | 2.040 | 1.258 | .059 | | 2 |
| | | 8618321 | 2.040 | 1.258 | .072 | | 3 |
| | | 8618322 | 2.040 | 1.258 | .085 | | 4 |
| | | 8618323 | 2.040 | 1.258 | .098 | | 5 |
| 2 | Front Unit Selective Washer | 8618324 | 2.040 | 1.258 | .111 | | 6 |
| | | 8618325 | 2.040 | 1.258 | .124 | | 7 |
| | | 8618326 | 2.040 | 1.258 | .137 | | 8 |
| | | 8618327 | 2.040 | 1.258 | .150 | | 9 |
| | | 8618328 | 2.040 | 1.258 | .161 | | 10 |
| | | 8618329 | 2.040 | 1.258 | .176 | | 11 |
| 3 | Front Unit Sun Gear Needle Bearing | 457197 | | | | | |
| 4 | Front Sun Gear to Internal Gear Front Thrust Washer | 8618524 | <u>2.255</u> | 1.667 | .031 | Steel | |
| 5 | Front Sun Gear to Internal Gear Rear Thrust Washer | 8618523 | <u>2.227</u> | <u>1.710</u> | .031 | Steel | Black |
| 6 | Front Unit Drive Torus Thrust Washer | 8616107 | 1.993 | 1.680 | .089 | Bronze | |
| 7 | Front Unit Drive Torus Thrust Backing Washer | 8616646 | 1.990 | 1.680 | .050 | Steel | Bright |
| 8 | Front Sprag Overrun Clutch Inner Race Washer | 8616097 | 1.785 | 1.410 | .089 | Bronze | |
| 9 | Rear Unit Clutch Drum to Clutch Hub Thrust Washer | 8620567 | 2.940 | 2.118 | .062 | Bronze | |
| 10 | Rear Unit Clutch Drum to Clutch Hub Backing Washer | 8620568 | 2.940 | 2.160 | .031 | Steel | |
| 11 | Rear Unit Sun Gear Thrust Washer | 8616433 | <u>2.377</u> 2.383 | 1.440 | .089 | Bronze | |
| 12 | Rear Unit Sun Gear Needle Bearing Retainer | 8617949 | <u>2.370</u> 2.380 | | | Steel | |
| 13 | Rear Unit Sun Gear Needle Bearing | 457209 | | | | | |
| | | 8617821 | 3.150 | 2.060 | .057 | Bronze | 1 |
| | | 8617822 | 3.150 | 2.060 | .062 | | 2 |
| | | 8617823 | 3.150 | 2.060 | .067 | | 3 |
| | | 8617824 | 3.150 | 2.060 | .072 | | 4 |
| 14 | Output Shaft Selective Washer | 8617825 | 3.150 | 2.060 | .077 | | 5 |
| | | 8617826 | 3.150 | 2.060 | .082 | | 6 |
| | | 8617827 | 3.150 | 2.060 | .087 | | 7 |
| | | 8617828 | 3.150 | 2.060 | .092 | | 8 |
| | | 8617829 | 3.150 | 2.060 | .097 | 9 | |
| 15 | Reverse Internal Gear to Reverse Clutch Housing Thrust Washer | 8618398 | 2.730 | 2.180 | .089 | Fibre | |

TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

| LOCATION | LB. FT. | LOCATION | LB. FT. |
|-------------------------------------|---------|---|---------|
| Case to Pump Body | 25 | Oil Pressure Take-Off Plug in Reverse Clutch Housing | 6-7 |
| Control Valve Assembly | 2-3 | Pressure Regulator Plug | 5 |
| Control Valve to Case | 6-8 | Pump Cover to Body | 15-18 |
| Cooler Sleeve Strap | 15-18 | Pump to Center Support | 25 |
| Cover to Accumulator Body | 6-8 | Rear Extension Housing to Reverse Housing and Case | 25 |
| Detent Roller and Spring Bolt | 15-18 | Reverse Clutch Housing to Case | 25 |
| Flywheel Drain Plug | 6-7 | Servo to Case | 25 |
| Case Cover to Case | 45 | Torus Cover to Flywheel (Nut) | 15-20 |
| Governor Cover to Body | 6-8 | TV Pressure Take-Off in Case | 6-7 |
| Oil Pan to Case | 10-13 | TV Lever Lock Screw | 10-12 |

REAR AXLE RATIOS

| | Ratio | |
|------------------------------------|-------|---------|
| Standard—All except Catalina | 2.87 | (43:15) |
| Standard—Catalina | 2.69 | (43:16) |
| Economy—All except Catalina | 2.69 | (43:16) |
| Economy—Catalina | 2.56 | (41:16) |
| Performance—All Series | 3.08 | (40:13) |
| 425-A Engine | 3.08 | (40:13) |
| 425-E Engine | 2.56 | (41:16) |
| Air Conditioning—All Series | 2.87 | (43:15) |

SPEEDOMETER GEAR USAGE CHART

| Rear Axle Ratio | Speedometer Ratio | Sleeve Assembly Color |
|--------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 40:13 (3.08) | 18:8 | Yellow |
| 43:15 (2.87) | 17:8 | Orange |
| 43:16 (2.69) | 16:8 | Red |
| 41:16 (2.56) | 17:9 | Orange |

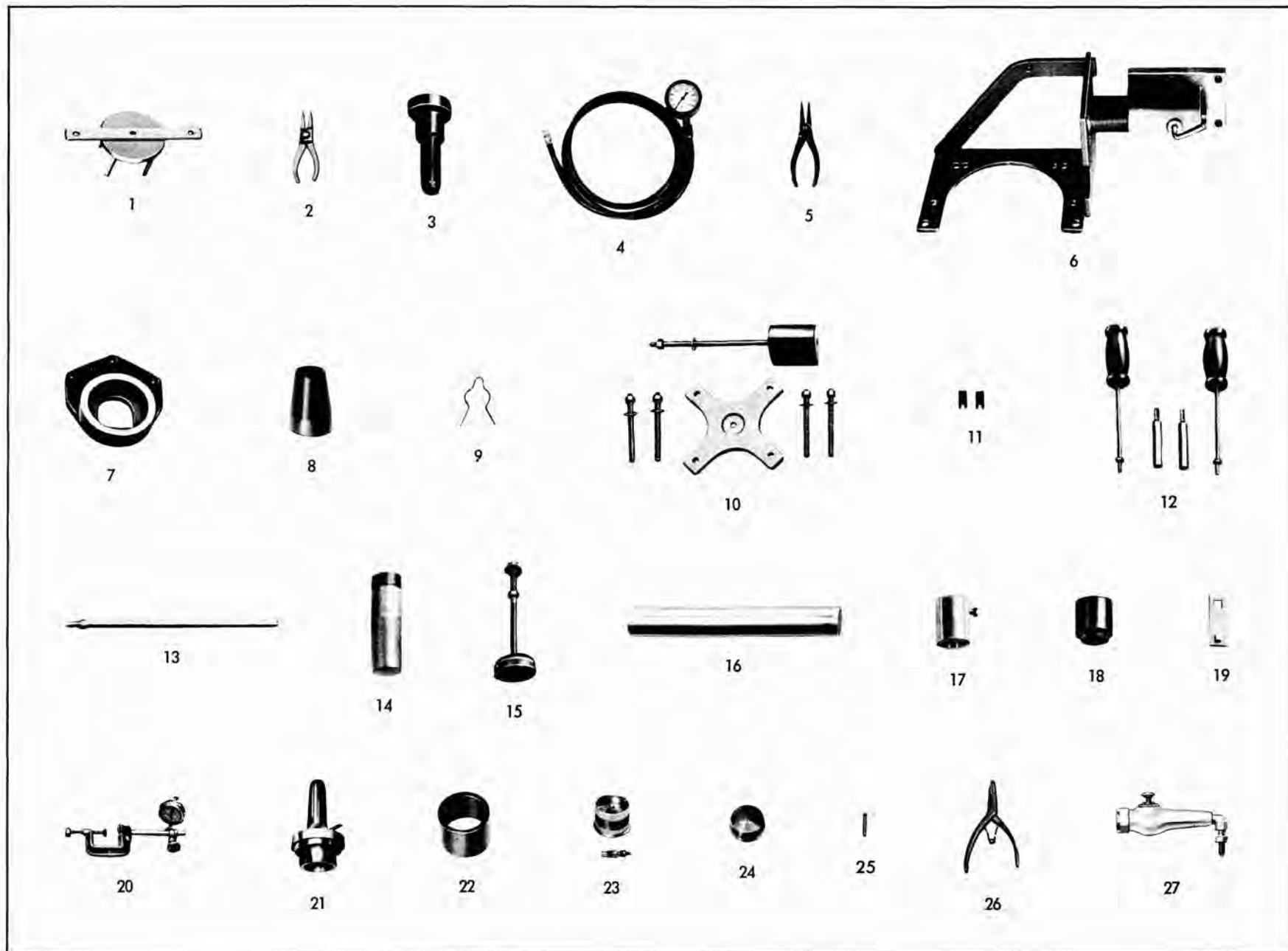


Fig. 184 Special Hydra-Matic Tools

SPECIAL HYDRA-MATIC TOOLS

| No. on Fig. 184 | Tool No. | Tool Name | No. on Fig. 184 | Tool No. | Tool Name |
|--------------------|-----------------------|---|--------------------|---------------------|---|
| 1 | J-4670-C | Clutch Spring Compressor | 14 | J-6127 | Mainshaft End Play Checking Fixture |
| 2 | J-4880 | Snap Ring Pliers (Truarc No. 2) | 15 | J-6129 | Rear Clutch Spring Compressor (Use with J-4670-C) |
| 3 | J-5154-A or J-5154 | Extension Housing Oil Seal Installer | 16 | J-6133-A | Rear Bearing Installer |
| 4 | J-5907 | Pressure Checking Gauge (with hose) | 17 | J-6135 | Rear Unit Clutch Retainer |
| 5 | J-6083 | Snap Ring Pliers (Truarc No. 4) | 18 | J-6282 | Front Unit End Play Checking Gauge |
| 6 | J-6115 | Transmission Holding Fixture | 19 | J-6498 | Torque Wrench Extension |
| 7 | J-6116 | Clutch Unit Holding Fixture | 20 | KMO-30 or J-8001 | Dial Indicator Set |
| 8 | J-6119 | Flywheel Housing Oil Seal and Bushing Protector | 21 | J-7026 | Flywheel Housing Oil Seal Installer and Staker |
| 9 | J-6120 | Reverse Drive Flange Retainer | 22 | J-7027 | Flywheel Housing Support |
| 10 | J-6121 | Front Unit Coupling Cover Remover | 23 | J-7073 | Torus Cover Leak Check Set |
| 11 | J-6122 | Front Unit Coupling Valve Retainers (2) | 24 | J-7577 | Reverse Piston Inner Seal Protector |
| 12 | J-6125 | Slide Hammers | 25 | J-7687 | Linkage Gauge Pin |
| 13 | J-6126 | Dial Indicator Support | 26 | J-8059 | Snap Ring Pliers |
| | | | 27 | J-8124-01 | Blow Gun Assembly |

INDEX

| SUBJECT | PAGE | SUBJECT | PAGE |
|--|------------|-------------------------------------|-------|
| Accumulator | | Downshift | |
| Inspection | 70 | Forced 4-3 | 31 |
| Installation | 87 | Forced 3-2 | 33 |
| Removal | 43 | Forced 2-1 | 32 |
| Replacement | 39 | Part Throttle 4-3 | 32 |
| Valve Operation | 21 | Draining and Refilling Transmission | 39 |
| Adjustments In Car | | First Speed | |
| Neutralizer Switch | 37 | Hydraulic Action | 24 |
| Selector Lever Linkage | 37 | Power Flow | 13 |
| Throttle Control Linkage | 36 | Fluid | |
| Case | | Capacity | 38 |
| Inspection | 49 | Coupling Fundamentals | 7 |
| Case Support | | Draining and Refilling | 38 |
| Inspection | 53 | Service Recommendations | 35 |
| Installation | 81 | Type Used | 4, 38 |
| Removal | 45 | Fluid Coupling | |
| Control Valve | | Hydraulic Operation | 7 |
| Inspection | 74, 75, 76 | Flywheel Housing | |
| Installation | 87 | Inspection | 87 |
| Removal | 43 | Installation | 88 |
| Replacement | 39 | Oil Seal Replacement | 77 |
| Description and Operating Instructions | 3 | Oil Seal Removal | 77 |
| Operating the Four-Speed Hydra-Matic | 3 | Removal | 41 |
| Fluid | 4 | Fourth Speed | |
| Serial Number | 5 | Hydraulic Action | 27 |
| Detent Levers, Spring and Roller | | Power Flow | 16 |
| Installation | 79 | Front Unit Coupling | |
| Removal | 47, 48 | Inspection | 66 |
| Diagnosis | | Installation | 85 |
| Guide | 95 | Removal | 43 |
| Instructions | 93 | Front Unit End Clearance Check | |
| Noise | 97 | Feeler Gauge Method | 85 |
| Disassembly, Inspection, Assembly of Units | | Special Tool Method | 86 |
| Accumulator | 70 | Fundamental Principles | |
| Case Support | 49 | Drive Torus Reduction | 9 |
| Control Valve | 73 | Fluid Coupling | 7 |
| Flywheel Housing Oil Seal | 77 | Front Pump | 19 |
| Front Unit Coupling | 65 | Governor | 19 |
| Governor | 69 | Hydraulic Action in Hydra-Matic | 12-18 |
| Neutral Clutch | 49 | Location of Units | 8 |
| Overrun Clutch | 60 | Operating Principles | 9 |
| Pump | 60 | Planetary Gear Train | 6 |
| Pressure Regulator | 77 | Power Flow | 11 |
| Rear Unit | 49 | Sprag Clutch | 8 |
| Reverse Clutch Housing | 67 | | |
| Servo | 70 | | |
| Torus Check Valve | 78 | | |

| SUBJECT | PAGE | SUBJECT | PAGE |
|-----------------------------------|--------|---|------|
| Governor | | Intake Pipe | |
| Booster Valve | 20 | Installation | 87 |
| Inspection | 69 | Removal | 43 |
| Installation | 83 | Limit Valve | |
| Operation | 19 | Hydraulic Operation | 21 |
| Removal | 45 | Linkage Adjustment | |
| Replacement | 39 | Neutralizer Switch | 37 |
| Hydraulic Action | | Selector Lever | 37 |
| 1st Speed | 24 | Throttle Control | 36 |
| 2nd Speed | 25, 29 | Lo Band | |
| 3rd Speed | 26, 28 | Inspection | 49 |
| 4th Speed | 27 | Installation | 81 |
| Forced 4-3 Downshift | 31 | Removal | 47 |
| Forced 3-2 Downshift | 33 | L Range | |
| Forced 2-1 Downshift | 34 | Hydraulic Action | 29 |
| LO Range | 29 | Lubrication | |
| Neutral or Park | 23 | Checking Oil Level | 38 |
| Part Throttle 4-3 Downshift | 32 | Mainshaft | |
| Reverse | 30 | End Play Check | 43 |
| Inspection | | Minor Services and Repairs | |
| 2000 Mile | 35 | Accumulator Replacement | 39 |
| New Car | 35 | Checking Oil Level | 38 |
| Oil Level | 35, 38 | Control Valve Replacement | 39 |
| Inspection of Parts | | Detent and Throttle Control Lever | |
| Case | 49 | Replacement | 39 |
| Flywheel Housing | 87 | Fluid | |
| Lo Band | 49 | Capacity | 38 |
| Parking Brake | 49 | Draining | 38 |
| Torus Member | 87 | Refilling | 38 |
| Installation, Transmission | 90 | Governor | 39 |
| Installation of Units into Case | | Parking Brake Linkage Replacement | 39 |
| Accumulator | 87 | Pressure Regulator Valve | 39 |
| Case Support | 81 | Rear Bearing Oil Seal Replacement | 39 |
| Control Valve | 87 | Servo Replacement | 39 |
| Flywheel Housing | 88 | Throttle Control Lever | 39 |
| Front Unit Coupling | 85 | Neutral | |
| Lo Band | 81 | Hydraulic Action | 23 |
| Neutral Clutch | 81 | Power Flow | 12 |
| Oil Cooler Sleeves | 90 | Neutral Clutch | |
| Oil Pan | 87 | Inspection | 53 |
| Overrun Clutch | 83 | Installation | 81 |
| Parking Linkage | 80 | Regulator Valve | 21 |
| Pressure Regulator | 85 | Removal | 45 |
| Pump | 83 | Neutralizer Switch | 37 |
| Rear Unit | 81 | | |
| Reverse Parts | 81 | | |
| Servo | 87 | | |
| Throttle Lever | 80 | | |
| Torus Members | 88 | | |

| SUBJECT | PAGE | SUBJECT | PAGE |
|----------------------------------|--------|------------------------------|------|
| New Car Inspection | 35 | Planetary Gear Train | 6 |
| Oil Circuit Diagram | 94 | Power Flow | |
| Oil Cooler Adapter Sleeves | | 1st Speed | 13 |
| Installation | 90 | 2nd Speed | 14 |
| Removal | 41 | 3rd Speed | 15 |
| Oil Leaks | 98 | 4th Speed | 16 |
| Oil Level Indicator | 35 | Neutral | 12 |
| Oil Pan | | Reverse | 17 |
| Installation | 87 | Review Action of Units | 18 |
| Removal | 43 | Pressure Regulator | |
| Oil Pressure Test | 92 | Inspection | 77 |
| Oil Pump | | Installation | 85 |
| Operation | 19 | Removal | 44 |
| Oil Seal | | Replacement | 39 |
| Rear Bearing Retainer | | Pump | |
| Installation | 39, 83 | Inspection | 61 |
| Removal | 39, 45 | Installation | 83 |
| Flywheel Housing | | Operation | 19 |
| Installation | 77 | Removal | 44 |
| Removal | 77 | Rear Bearing Retainer | |
| Oil Strainer | | Installation | 88 |
| Installation | 87 | Removal | 46 |
| Removal | 43 | Rear Seal Replacement | 39 |
| Operating Instructions | | Rear Unit | |
| Cold Weather | 3 | End Play Check | 54 |
| Drive Range (DR) | 3 | Inspection | 53 |
| Low Range (L) | 3 | Installation | 81 |
| Parking (P) | 4 | Removal | 45 |
| Reverse (R) | 4 | Removal, Transmission | 40 |
| Starting Engine | 3 | Removal of Units from Case | |
| Towing | 4 | Accumulator | 43 |
| Overrun Clutch | | Case Support | 45 |
| Inspection | 63 | Control Valve | 43 |
| Installation | 83 | Flywheel Housing | 41 |
| Removal | 44 | Lo Band | 47 |
| Park | | Neutral Clutch | 45 |
| Hydraulic Action (Neutral) | 23 | Oil Pan | 43 |
| Power Flow | 12 | Overrun Clutch | 44 |
| Parking Brake Linkage | | Parking Linkage | 48 |
| Inspection | 49 | Pump | 44 |
| Installation | 39, 80 | Rear Unit | 45 |
| Removal | 39, 48 | Reverse Parts | 46 |
| | | Servo | 43 |
| | | Throttle Levers | 47 |
| | | Torus Members | 41 |

| SUBJECT | PAGE | SUBJECT | PAGE |
|-----------------------------------|--------|--------------------------------------|------|
| Repairs, Minor | | Sprag Clutch | |
| Accumulator | 39 | Operation | 8 |
| Control Valve Assembly | 39 | | |
| Detent and Throttle Control Lever | 39 | Spring Specifications | 101 |
| Governor | 39 | | |
| Parking Brake Linkage | 39 | Testing | |
| Pressure Regulator Valve | 39 | Oil Pressure | 92 |
| Rear Oil Seal Replacement | 39 | Road Test | 92 |
| Servo Replacement | 39 | | |
| Throttle Control Lever | 39 | Thermostatic TV Controls | 22 |
| Reverse | | | |
| Hydraulic Action | 30 | Third Speed | |
| Power Flow | 17 | Hydraulic Action—Drive Left | 26 |
| Removal | 46 | Hydraulic Action—Drive Right | 30 |
| Unit | 22 | Power Flow | 15 |
| Reverse Blocker | | | |
| Inspection | 67 | Throttle Control Linkage | |
| Reverse Clutch Piston and Housing | | Adjustment | 36 |
| Inspection | 68 | Inspection | 49 |
| Installation | 81 | Lever Installation | 85 |
| Removal | 46 | Lever Removal | 47 |
| Road Test | 92 | | |
| Second Speed | | Thrust Washer Specifications | 102 |
| Hydraulic Action—Drive Left | 25 | | |
| Hydraulic Action—Drive Right | 29 | Tools, Special | 105 |
| Power Flow | 14 | | |
| Selector Lever Linkage Adjustment | 37 | Towing | 4 |
| Serial Number | 5 | | |
| Service Recommendations | | Torque Specifications | 103 |
| New Car Inspection | 35 | | |
| Oil Level Indicator | 35 | Torus Check Valve | |
| Transmission Fluid | 35, 38 | Disassembly From Driven Torus Member | 78 |
| Minor Repairs | 38 | Installation in Driven Torus | 78 |
| Servo | | | |
| Inspection | 70 | Torus Members | |
| Installation | 87 | Inspection | 87 |
| Removal | 43 | Installation | 88 |
| Replacement | 39 | Removal | 41 |
| Schematic Circuit Diagram | 94 | Transmission | |
| Shift Speed Chart | 93 | Description | 3 |
| | | Installation | 90 |
| Specifications | | Removal | 40 |
| General | 100 | T.V. Pressure | 20 |
| Springs | 101 | | |
| Thrust Washers | 102 | Valve | |
| Torque | 103 | Accumulator | 21 |
| | | Coupling | 21 |
| | | Governor Booster | 20 |
| | | Limit | 21 |
| | | Neutral Clutch Regulator | 21 |